

**3**







**AMERICAN**  
**Headway**  
Proven success beyond the classroom

**THIRD EDITION**

Liz and John Soars

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# Scope and Sequence LANGUAGE INPUT







UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
 <b>1</b> A world of difference p. 2	<b>Naming tenses</b> Present, Past, Present Perfect <b>Auxiliary verbs</b> <i>do, be, have</i> p. 2 <b>Questions and negatives</b> <i>Where were you born?</i> <i>They didn't run fast enough.</i> p. 2 <b>Short answers</b> <i>Yes, I have. No, he didn't.</i> p. 4 <b>Spoken English</b> – sounding polite <i>"Did you have a good day?"</i> <i>"Yes, I did. I went shopping."</i> p. 4	<b>What's in a word?</b> Parts of speech and meaning <i>verb, adjective, noun, or adverb?</i> Spelling and pronunciation <i>vowel sounds</i> Word formation <i>active, actor, action</i> Words that go together <i>fall in love</i> <b>Keeping vocabulary records</b> p. 9	<b>Everyday conversations</b> <i>I need to make an appointment.</i> <i>A medium latte, please.</i> <i>For here or to go?</i> p. 9
 <b>2</b> The work week p. 10	<b>Present tenses</b> Simple and continuous <i>What does she do?</i> <i>What's she doing?</i> p. 10 <b>Stative verbs</b> <i>like, know, understand</i> p. 11 <b>Passive</b> <i>People are employed ...</i> <i>I'm being helped.</i> p. 13 <b>How often ...?</b> <i>hardly ever twice a year</i> p. 11	<b>Positive and negative adjectives</b> <i>hardworking</i> <i>bad-annoying</i> <i>successful</i> p. 15 <b>Free time activities</b> <i>go for a run</i> <i>staying fit</i> <i>a recipe, to chop</i> p. 16	<b>Making small talk</b> <i>It's such a great city, isn't it?</i> <i>I was born in ..., but I live in ...</i> <i>Oh, good.</i> <i>Really?</i> <i>Have you?</i> <i>Who do you work for?</i> <b>Spoken English</b> – softening a negative comment <i>a bit late not very big</i> p. 17
 <b>3</b> Good times, bad times! p. 18	<b>Past tenses</b> Simple and continuous <i>He studied history.</i> <i>He was working in Chicago.</i> <b>Past Perfect</b> <i>They'd liked his blog.</i> <i>He'd been traveling.</i> p. 19 <b>used to</b> <i>He used to take pictures.</i> p. 19	<b>Spelling and pronunciation</b> <i>good /god/, food /fud/</i> <i>male, mail</i> <i>/u/ tooth truth juice</i> p. 21 <b>Lost sounds</b> <i>chocolate</i> <i>foreign</i> p. 21	<b>Giving opinions</b> <i>He's really great, isn't he?</i> <i>Definitely! Mmm!</i> <i>That's not true!</i> <b>Spoken English</b> – making an opinion stronger <i>just awful</i> <i>absolutely adore</i> p. 25
 <b>4</b> Getting it right p. 26	<b>Advice, obligation, and permission</b> <b>Modal and related verbs</b> <i>You should check online.</i> <i>You must tell your neighbors.</i> <i>They can get married at 18.</i> <i>You are allowed to go.</i> <i>Children had to go to school.</i> <i>They didn't have to work.</i> pp. 26–28	<b>Phrasal verbs (1)</b> Literal or idiomatic? <i>She took her boots off.</i> <i>His business has taken off.</i> <i>The flight took off on time.</i> Separable or inseparable? <i>He turned it on.</i> <i>She takes after him.</i> p. 32	<b>Polite requests and offers</b> <i>I'll give you a ride.</i> <i>Do you think you could ...?</i> <i>Can you tell me ...?</i> <i>Would you mind ...?</i> p. 33
 <b>5</b> Our changing world p. 34	<b>Future forms</b> <b>Will, going to, or Present Continuous?</b> <i>What will the world be like?</i> <i>Things are going to change.</i> <i>We're meeting James at 11:00.</i> <b>Future possibilities – may, might, could</b> <i>The earth may get warmer.</i> <i>Temperatures might rise.</i> <i>What could happen?</i> p. 34	<b>Word building</b> <b>Suffixes</b> <i>prediction, excitement</i> <b>Prefixes</b> <i>impossible, disagree, react</i> <b>Changing word stress</b> <i>i'magine / imagi'nation</i> p. 40	<b>Arranging to meet</b> <i>I was wondering if we could meet.</i> <i>I'll pull up my calendar.</i> <i>We could have coffee.</i> <i>Why don't we ...?</i> <i>Let's ...</i> p. 41
 <b>6</b> What matters to me p. 42	<b>Information questions</b> <i>What's she like?</i> <i>What does she look like?</i> <i>How is she?</i> p. 42 <i>How tall/big ...?</i> <i>What color/size/brand ...?</i> <i>Which floor/part of town ...?</i> <i>How far/long ...?</i> <i>How much/many ...?</i> p. 42	<b>Describing people, places, and things</b> <i>He's a lot of fun/very sociable.</i> p. 42 <i>It's cozy/on the fourth floor.</i> p. 43 <i>What brand is it?</i> p. 43 <b>Adjectives</b> <i>-ed / -ing: amazing, amazed</i> <i>Adjective + noun: sandy beach</i> <i>Compound adjectives: well-dressed</i> p. 44 <b>Adverbs</b> <i>-ly and not -ly: simply, fully, just, too</i> <i>verb + adverb: wait patiently</i> p. 45	<b>In a department store</b> <i>Toys and babywear</i> <i>Ladies' fashions</i> <i>Stationery</i> <i>What size do you wear?</i> <i>Keep your receipt.</i> <b>Signs</b> <i>Buy two, get one free</i> <i>Final clearance</i> p. 49



## SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	SPEAKING	LISTENING	WRITING
<b>Worlds apart</b> <i>Welcome to our world</i> The lives of two families from different parts of the world (jigsaw) p. 6	<b>A world in one family</b> Ana from Spain and her son, Xavier, talk about living in the U.S. p. 8	<b>A class survey</b> Lifestyles p. 5 <b>Exchanging information</b> Comparing two families from different parts of the world p. 6 <b>What do you think?</b> Discussing the pros and cons of bringing up a family in another country p. 8 <b>Role play</b> Acting out everyday situations p. 9	<b>A blog</b> Correcting mistakes (1) Finding and correcting mistakes in a sample blog post <i>I do mistakes WW</i> <b>Writing a blog post, correcting a partner's blog post</b> p. 99
<b>Routines of Successful People</b> <i>8 Unusual Things 8 Successful People Do Every Day</i> p. 14	<b>Who earns how much?</b> How much do different jobs pay? p. 13 <b>Spoken English</b> – giving opinions <i>I guess ... I'd say ...</i> <i>I think so, too. Actually ...</i> p. 13	<b>Talking about you</b> How often do you do things? p. 11 <b>Project</b> Interviewing someone about his/her job p. 12 <b>Discussion</b> Which job deserves most money? p. 13 Strategies for success p. 15 <b>Exchanging information</b> Talking about your free time activities p. 16	<b>Letters and e-mails</b> Differences in formal and informal writing Beginnings and endings of letters and e-mails <i>I am writing in response ...</i> <i>Give my regards to Robert.</i> <b>E-mailing an old friend with news</b> p. 100
<b>A Shakespearean Tragedy</b> <i>Romeo and Juliet</i> The love story in cartoons p. 22	<b>The first time I fell in love</b> Three people talk about their experiences of early love p. 24 <b>Dictation</b> Transcribing a summary of an interview p. 20	<b>A Shakespearean Tragedy</b> Retelling the story of Romeo and Juliet from pictures p. 22 <b>What do you think?</b> Shakespeare and his plays p. 22 Falling in love – Who do we fall in love with? Which couples are a good match? p. 24	<b>Telling a story (I)</b> Two stories: “The farmer and his sons” “The Emperor and his daughters” Linking ideas <i>as soon as</i> <i>However</i> <b>Writing a folk tale or fairy tale</b> p. 101
<b>Jake's solution</b> <i>How one man changed his life</i> A man makes his phone distraction-free p. 30	<b>Rules for life</b> Three people talk about their personal philosophies p. 29 <b>Spoken English</b> – <i>have got to</i> <i>I've got to go now. Bye!</i> p. 29 <b>Song</b> <i>I Believe</i> by Ian Dury p. 29	<b>Discussion</b> Laws in the U.S. and your country p. 28 What's important to you in life p. 29 <b>What do you think?</b> Phone habits Cell phone distraction p. 30	<b>A biography</b> Mother Teresa of Calcutta Combining sentences <i>Her father, who was Albanian, died, leaving her mother ...</i> <b>Researching facts about a famous person and writing a biography</b> p. 102
<b>Life fifty years from now</b> <i>Life in 2065</i> An international group of scientists make their predictions p. 38	<b>World weather warnings</b> Five weather forecasts from around the world p. 36 <b>Rocket man</b> Steve Bennett, scientist and space traveler p. 37 <b>Spoken English</b> – <i>pretty</i> <i>The weather was pretty bad.</i> p. 37	<b>Discussion</b> Talking about changes in the environment p. 35 <b>What do you think?</b> Space tourism p. 37 Predictions about the future p. 38 <b>Role play</b> Making arrangements to meet p. 41	<b>Writing for talking</b> – my cause for concern A speech by a teenager about the influence of video games on children <i>The thing I'm concerned about ...</i> <i>Let me explain why.</i> <b>Writing a talk about an issue that concerns you</b> p. 103
<b>The heart of the home</b> <i>My Kitchen</i> Three women's kitchens in three different countries (jigsaw) p. 46	<b>My closest relative</b> Five people talk about who they feel closest to in their family p. 48 <b>Spoken English</b> – adding emphasis <i>My father I don't get along with.</i> <i>What I like about her is ...</i> <i>The thing I love about him is ...</i> p. 48	<b>Project</b> Your most treasured possession p. 45 <b>Talking about you</b> Your kitchen p. 46 <b>Discussion</b> <b>First-born/second-born children</b> Who do you feel closest to in your family? p. 48	<b>Describing a place</b> – a description of a room <b>Relative pronouns</b> <i>who / that / which</i> <b>Participles</b> <i>I spend hours listening to music.</i> <b>Writing about your favorite room</b> p. 104

# Scope and Sequence **LANGUAGE INPUT**

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
 <b>7</b> Passions and fashions p. 50	<b>Present Perfect</b> Simple and continuous <i>She's lived in Scotland.</i> <i>She's been writing since 1990.</i> p. 50 <b>Passive</b> <i>Millions have been sold.</i> p. 51 <b>Adverbs</b> <i>just yet already</i> p. 52 <b>Time expressions</b> <i>for 10 years, since the 1970s</i> p. 53 <b>Spoken English – How long ...?</b> <i>How long are you here for?</i> <i>How long have you been here?</i> p. 53	<b>Likes and dislikes</b> <i>adore, loathe,</i> <i>into, crazy about,</i> <i>fond of</i> p. 56	<b>Making the right noises</b> <i>Agreement, sympathy,</i> <i>pleasure, and surprise</i> <i>Wonderful!</i> <i>That makes sense.</i> <i>You're kidding!</i> <i>You didn't!</i> p. 57
 <b>8</b> No fear! p. 58	<b>Verb patterns</b> verb + -ing <i>enjoy swimming, thinking of</i> <i>staying</i> p. 58 verb + infinitive <i>need to warn, make them feel</i> p. 58 adjective + infinitive <i>impossible to see</i> p. 58 <b>Spoken English – the reduced infinitive</b> <i>I'd love to!</i> <i>You promised to.</i> p. 60	<b>Body language</b> <i>bite, clap, hug, lick</i> <i>point</i> <i>kneel down</i> <b>Idioms</b> <i>see eye to eye</i> <i>You're pulling my leg!</i> p. 64	<b>Travel and numbers</b> Commas and decimal points <i>5,000 6.5</i> Time <i>12:45</i> Numbers one by one <i>6356 5055</i> Percentages <i>30%</i> Fractions <i><math>\frac{2}{3}</math></i> p. 65
 <b>9</b> It depends how you look at it p. 66	<b>Conditionals</b> Second conditionals <i>If I were him, I'd tell the teacher.</i> Third conditionals <i>If they'd listened, he wouldn't have run</i> <i>away.</i> p. 67 <i>might have done/could have done</i> <i>You might/could have had an</i> <i>accident.</i> p. 68 <i>should have done</i> <i>He should have asked for help.</i> p. 68	<b>Words with similar meaning</b> <i>shocked / stunned</i> <i>delighted / over the moon</i> <i>alone / lonely</i> <i>win / beat</i> p. 72	<b>Dealing with money</b> <i>Is the tip included?</i> <i>Can you sign here?</i> <i>The current cleared balance ...</i> <i>I gave you a \$20 bill.</i> <i>What's the exchange rate?</i> p. 73
 <b>10</b> All things high tech p. 74	<b>Noun phrases</b> Articles: <i>a / the / no article</i> p. 75 Possessives <i>their equipment / theirs</i> p. 76 <i>all/everything</i> <i>Microchips control everything.</i> p. 76 <i>all digital devices</i> Reflexive pronouns and <i>each other</i> <i>I cut myself. We love each other.</i> p. 76	<b>Compound nouns</b> <i>shopping mall</i> <i>headlight</i> <i>tea bag teacup</i> <i>handcuffs footprint</i> p. 80	<b>I need one of those things ...</b> <i>It's one of those things you</i> <i>use ...</i> <i>I need some of that stuff ...</i> <i>It's used for ...</i> <i>It's made of ...</i> <i>It's a kind of ...</i> p. 81
 <b>11</b> Seeing is believing p. 82	<b>Modals of probability</b> Present <i>must/can't/might/could be</i> p. 82 Past <i>must/can't/might have been</i> p. 84 <i>looks like / looks</i> <i>It looks like a man.</i> <i>It looks red to me.</i> p. 82 <b>Spoken English – expressing disbelief</b> <i>What on earth has happened?</i> p. 85	<b>Phrasal verbs (2) with out and up</b> <i>work sth out / work out</i> <i>make sth up</i> <i>make up with sb</i> <i>find out / break up</i> p. 88	<b>Expressing attitude</b> <i>apparently</i> <i>actually</i> <i>personally</i> <i>to be honest</i> p. 89
 <b>12</b> Telling it like it is p. 90	<b>Reported speech</b> <i>She said she was a student.</i> p. 90 <b>Reported thoughts</b> <i>I thought she was pretty.</i> p. 90 <b>Reported questions</b> <i>I wondered if there'd been an accident.</i> <i>I asked her what was happening</i> p. 91	<b>Reporting verbs</b> <i>invite, persuade, explain</i> p. 92 <b>Ways of speaking</b> <i>suggest, advise, shout, whisper,</i> <i>admit, deny</i> p. 93	<b>You know what they say ...</b> Clichés <i>It's not the end of the world.</i> <i>Better late than never.</i> <i>Better you than me.</i> <i>It could be worse.</i> p. 97

Audio Scripts p. 114

Grammar Reference p. 129

Word List p. 148



## SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	SPEAKING	LISTENING	WRITING
<b>Soccer – a global passion</b> <i>The Beautiful Game</i> Soccer past and present p. 54	<b>An interview</b> Jack, aged 10, talks about Harry Potter p. 51 <b>Things I'm passionate about</b> Five people talk about their passions p. 56	<b>Role play</b> Interviewing Jason Wu p. 53 <b>Have you ever ...?</b> Conversations about your life experiences p. 53 <b>What do you think?</b> Your feelings about soccer and its place in the world p. 54 Things you feel passionate about p. 56	<b>Describing a person</b> – Facts and opinions My crazy uncle Joe <i>in his mid 20s</i> <i>He's more like a big brother.</i> <b>Writing a description of someone in your family</b> p. 105
<b>Dangerous trips in history</b> <i>Hannibal crosses the Alps</i> <i>Mao Zedong and the Long March</i> Remarkable trips made by two famous leaders (jigsaw) p. 62	<b>Fears and phobias</b> Three people talk about what they're afraid of p. 61 <b>The psychologist's view</b> A psychologist explains phobias and their treatment p. 61	<b>Talking about you</b> True and false facts about your life p. 60 <b>What do you think?</b> People and their phobias p. 61 <b>Exchanging information</b> Comparing the trips of Hannibal and Mao Zedong p. 62	<b>Telling a story (2)</b> – “ <i>The Titanic</i> ” Organization, information, creating interest, and descriptive language <b>Writing the story of <i>The Trojan Horse</i></b> p. 106
<b>The victim meets the burglar</b> <i>I'm sorry</i> How restorative justice can help criminals and their victims (jigsaw) p. 70	<b>A social conscience</b> Five people describe a difficult situation – what did they do? p. 69 <b>Spoken English – just</b> <i>I just read a great book.</i> <i>I'm just tired, that's all.</i> <i>I just love your coat!</i> p. 69	<b>Talking about you</b> What would you have done in the same situation? p. 69 <b>Exchanging information</b> Comparing the stories – a burglar and his victim p. 70 <b>What do you think?</b> Forms of punishment and goals of imprisonment p. 70	<b>Pros and cons</b> – Is childhood the best time of your life? Arguing for and against <i>In my opinion ...</i> <i>Another point is that ...</i> <b>Writing a discursive essay</b> p. 108
<b>21st century city</b> <i>Singapore—City of the Future</i> p. 78	<b>What do you do on the Internet?</b> Five people talk about their favorite things to do online p. 77 <b>Descriptions</b> Identifying objects p. 81 <b>Spoken English – also, as well, too</b> <i>I'm also selling some of my old stuff.</i> <i>We gossip quite a bit as well.</i> <i>I watch the news, too.</i> p. 77	<b>Talking about you</b> Websites you like, and what the Internet represents p. 77 <b>What do you think?</b> Advice for a tourist visiting your city Your city's biggest problem and possible solutions p. 79	<b>A famous town or city</b> – From notes to writing Completing a description of New York City from notes History – <i>Dutch 1614</i> <b>Researching a city and writing a description</b> p. 110
<b>The adventures of Sherlock Holmes</b> <i>The Three Students</i> A detective story p. 86	<b>A discussion of optical illusions</b> Two people talk about a set of optical illusions p. 82 <b>What on earth has happened?</b> A telephone conversation about a burglary p. 84 <b>A radio drama</b> Part 3 of the Sherlock Holmes detective story p. 86	<b>What do you think?</b> Modern methods of crime detection p. 87 <b>Telling the story</b> Retelling a story to the class p. 87	<b>Expressing attitude</b> – An informal letter Linking ideas <i>anyway, naturally</i> <i>fortunately, nevertheless</i> p. 112
<b>People who changed the world</b> <i>Movers and shakers</i> Famous people, their ideas, and their impact on how people think (jigsaw) p. 94	<b>She didn't say that!</b> Spotting inaccuracies in five conversations p. 92 <b>What the papers say</b> An interview with the singer Jamie Seabrook p. 96	<b>What do you think?</b> People who changed ideas p. 94 News sources in your country p. 96 Talking about a current news story p. 96 <b>Spoken English – don't mind/don't care</b> <i>I don't care what people think.</i> p. 96	<b>A thank-you e-mail</b> Correcting mistakes (2) in a sample e-mail <b>Writing a thank-you e-mail</b> p. 113
Extra Materials p. 143	Verb Patterns p. 154	Irregular Verbs and Phonetic Symbols p. 155	





# 1

# A world of difference

Tenses: Auxiliary verbs • What's in a word? • Everyday situations



## STARTER

1 Each question has one word missing. Write it in.

*come*

- 1 Where do you *come* from?
- 2 When and where you born?
- 3 You live in a house or an apartment?
- 4 Why you studying English?
- 5 Which foreign countries have you been?
- 6 What you do last night?
- 7 What are you going do after this class?

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Where do you come from?

Mexico.

3 Tell the class about your partner.

*Susana comes from Mexico. She's studying English because ...*

## I DIDN'T KNOW THAT!

Tenses and auxiliary verbs

- 1 Answer the questions in the *One World Quiz*. Discuss your answers with a partner.
- 2 **CD1 2** Listen and check your answers. Make notes about the extra information you hear for each one. Discuss this as a class.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Read the questions in the quiz again. Identify the tense in each one. Which two are passive?
- 2 Answer these questions. Give examples from the quiz.
  - Which tenses use the auxiliary verbs *do/does/did* to form questions and negatives?
  - Which tenses use the verb *to be (is/are/was/were)*?
  - Which use *have/has*?

► Grammar Reference 1.1–1.5 p. 129

### Write your own quiz

- 3 Work in two groups.
  - Do some research and write six questions about the world, past and present.
  - Ask and answer the questions with the other group. Which group is the winner?

## One World Quiz

- 1 In which country **do** men and women **live** the longest?  
a Japan b Germany c The U.S.
- 2 In which year **did** the world population **reach** 7 billion?  
a 1999 b 2005 c 2012
- 3 If you **are standing** on the equator, how many hours of daylight do you have?  
a 12 b 16 c 24
- 4 Where **does** most of the world's oil **come** from?  
a Russia b Saudi Arabia c The U.S.





- 5** Which of the seven wonders of the world **is** still **standing**?
- a The Lighthouse of Alexandria  
b The pyramids of Egypt  
c The Colossus of Rhodes
- 6** Why **didn't** dinosaurs **attack** humans?
- a Because they were vegetarian.  
b Because they became extinct before humans were on the earth.  
c Because they didn't run fast enough.
- 7** Where **was** the Titanic **sailing** to when it sank?
- a Southampton   b Rio de Janeiro   c New York
- 8** How long **has** Hawaii **been** a U.S. state?
- a since 1952   b since 1959   c since 1963
- 9** How many people **have won** the Nobel Peace prize since it started in 1901?
- a 58   b 94   c 103
- 10** How long **have** people **been using** the Internet?
- a since 1969   b since 1976   c since 1984
- 11** Which language **is spoken** by the most people in the world?
- a Spanish   b Chinese   c English
- 12** In which country **were** women first **given** the vote?
- a Canada   b Paraguay  
c New Zealand

## PRACTICE

### You're so wrong!

- 1** Correct the information in the sentences.
- Chichen Itza is in Costa Rica.  
*No, it's not. It's in Mexico.*
  - Shakespeare didn't write poems.  
*You're wrong! He wrote hundreds of poems.*
  - Vegetarians eat meat.
  - The Internet doesn't provide much information.
  - The world is getting colder.
  - John F. Kennedy was traveling by plane when he was killed.
  - Brazil has never won the World Cup.
  - The 2012 Summer Olympics were held in Tokyo.
- 2** **CD1 3** Listen and check. Notice the stress and intonation. Practice making the corrections with a partner.

### 's = is or has?

- 3** Is 's in these sentences the auxiliary *is* or *has*?
- Who's making that noise? *is*
  - She's done really well.
  - My sister's a teacher.
  - Who's been to Thailand?
  - He's leaving early.
  - What's produced in your country?
- 4** **CD1 4** Listen to some more sentences with 's. After each one say if it is *is* or *has*.

### Talking about you

- 5** Complete the questions with the correct auxiliary verb and name the tense.
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ you usually get up on weekends?
  - What time \_\_\_\_\_ you get up this morning?
  - How long \_\_\_\_\_ it usually take you to get from home to school?
  - Who \_\_\_\_\_ sitting next to you? What \_\_\_\_\_ he/she wearing?
  - How long \_\_\_\_\_ you known the teacher?
  - What \_\_\_\_\_ you doing when your teacher came into the room?
  - What \_\_\_\_\_ (not) you like doing in English class?
  - Which school subjects \_\_\_\_\_ (not) you like when you were younger?
  - Which other foreign languages \_\_\_\_\_ you studied?
  - What presents \_\_\_\_\_ you given on your last birthday?
- Ask and answer the questions with a partner.



## MAKING CONVERSATION

### Short answers

- 1 **CD1 5** Ruth is picking up her children, Nick and Lily, from school. Listen and complete the conversation. Which child is more polite? In what way?

**Ruth** So kids, \_\_\_\_\_ you have a good day at school?

**Nick** No.

**Lily** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. We \_\_\_\_\_ practicing for the school concert.

**Ruth** Oh, wonderful! \_\_\_\_\_ you have a lot of homework?

**Lily** Ugh! Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I have Geography, Spanish, and Math! \_\_\_\_\_ you have a lot, Nick?

**Nick** Yeah.

**Ruth** Nick, \_\_\_\_\_ you remember your soccer uniform?

**Nick** Um ...

**Lily** No, he \_\_\_\_\_. He forgot it again.

**Ruth** Oh, Nick, you know we need to wash it. \_\_\_\_\_ you playing soccer tomorrow?

**Nick** No.

**Ruth** Lily, \_\_\_\_\_ you need *your* uniform tomorrow?

**Lily** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I have a softball game after school. We're playing our rival team.

**Ruth** \_\_\_\_\_ they beat you last time?

**Lily** Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_. But we'll beat them tomorrow.

**Nick** No, you \_\_\_\_\_! Your team's terrible.

**Ruth** OK, that's enough, children. Put on your seatbelts! Let's go!



### SPOKEN ENGLISH Sounding polite

- 1 In English conversation it can sound impolite to reply with just *yes* or *no*. We use short answers with auxiliaries.

*"Did you have a good day?" "Yes, I did/No, I didn't."*

- 2 It also helps if you add some more information.

*"Do you have a lot of homework?" "Yes, I do. I have Geography, Spanish, and Math."*

- 3 Reply to these questions. Use short answers and add some information.

- 1 Did you have a good day?
- 2 Do you like pizza?
- 3 Did you enjoy the movie?
- 4 Has it stopped raining?

►► Grammar Reference 1.6 p. 129

- 2 Rewrite Nick's lines in exercise 1 to make him sound more polite.

**CD1 6** Listen and compare the conversations.

- 3 Work in groups of three. Look at CD1 5 and CD1 6 on page 114. Practice them, sounding polite and impolite.



## PRACTICE

- 1 Match a line in **A** with a short answer in **B** and a line in **C**.

A	B	C
1 Did you hear that noise?	No, I haven't.	They didn't have my size.
2 Are you doing anything tonight?	No, I'm not.	I think it was thunder.
3 Have you seen my cell phone anywhere?	Yes, it is.	Thank goodness!
4 Did you get those shoes you liked?	Yes, I did.	Do you want to come over?
5 Is it time for a break?	No, I didn't.	Did you lose it again?

**CDI 7** Listen and check. Practice with a partner.  
Pay attention to stress and intonation.

### A class survey

Find out about the students in your class.

- Read the class survey and answer the questions about you. Add two more questions.
- Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions in the survey. Give short answers in your replies and add some information.

Are you interested in any sports?

Yes, I am. I often go skiing in the winter and I like playing tennis.

- Tell the class about your partner.

Milo's interested in two sports—skiing and tennis. He often ...

- What can you say about your class?

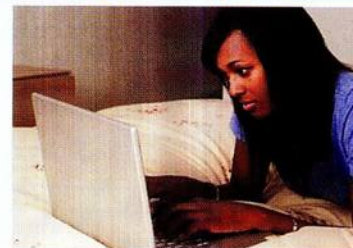
Almost everyone is interested in at least one sport. Most of the boys love soccer. Some of us like skiing.

### Check it

- There is one mistake in each sentence. Find it and correct it.
  - Rae comes from Canada and he speak French and English.
  - Which subjects Susan is studying in school?
  - "Do you like soccer?" "Yes, I like."
  - Did you watched the game last night?
  - What does your parents do on the weekend?
  - I think is going to rain.
  - What was you talking to the teacher about?
  - I don't think John's arrive yet.

### ✓ CLASS SURVEY

- |   | YES                      | NO                       |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Are you interested in any sports?               | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Do you have a pet?                              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Does music play an important part in your life? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Do you watch a lot of movies?                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Does anyone in your family speak English?       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 Did you study English in elementary school?     | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 Have you ever been to the U.S.?                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 Are you studying any other foreign languages?   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 .....   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 .....  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |





## READING AND SPEAKING

### Worlds apart

1 Discuss these questions about your family.

- Who is in your immediate family?
- Name some people in your extended family.
- Who are you close to?
- Who do you live with now?
- Who did you grow up with?

2 Read the profiles of two families from very different parts of the world. Who is in the family? Where do they come from? What do you know about their countries?

3 Divide into two groups.

**Group A** Read about the **Kamau family** from Kenya.

**Group B** Read about the **Qu family** from China.

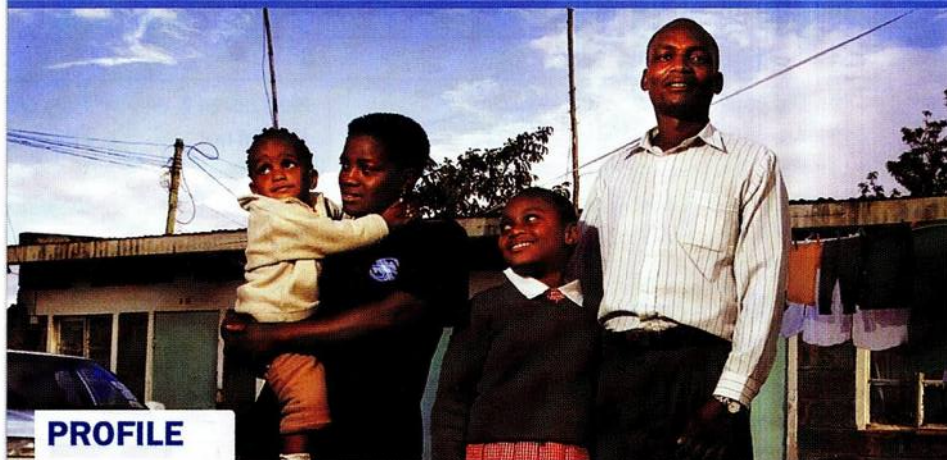
4 In your groups answer these questions about the Kamaus or the Qus.

- 1 Where do they live? What are their homes like?
- 2 How long have they lived there?
- 3 What jobs do the parents do? Do they earn much money?
- 4 What do they spend their money on?
- 5 What do you learn about the children? What do they do?
- 6 How long have the parents known each other?
- 7 What do you learn about other members of the family?
- 8 What hopes and ambitions do the parents have for themselves and their children?

5 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare and swap information about the families and their mottos.

- 1 What similarities and differences can you find?
- 2 How have their lives changed over the years?
- 3 What regrets or worries do they have now?

# Welcome to



## PROFILE

### The Kamaus from KENYA

**FATHER:** Boniface Kigotho Kamau, 35

**MOTHER:** Pauline Wanjiku, approximately 29 (exact age unknown)

**DAUGHTER:** Joyce Muthoni, 8

**DAUGHTER:** Sharon Wanjiru, 16 months

**Boniface and his wife, Pauline**, live in Ongata Rongai, a small town near the capital, Nairobi. They have two daughters: Joyce, who is in her third year of school, and 16-month-old Sharon.

Their home is a two-bedroom apartment, one of 20 in a single-story block. Boniface works as a taxi driver at the international airport in Nairobi. Each morning he leaves home at 4:30 A.M. in his white Toyota—cracked windshield, 200,000 miles on the odometer—and is back by 10 P.M. On a good day he finds two clients. In a typical month he takes home about \$215.

"It's a hard job, but I like it," he says. "I meet new people, so I get some experience of the world—even though I have never been outside Kenya."

Pauline is a dressmaker but isn't working right now. She stays at home to take care of the kids. The weekend is often the only time Boniface sees Joyce and Sharon. Boniface and Pauline met 12 years ago: "We liked each other immediately," says Boniface. "I didn't want a woman from the city, so when I learned that Pauline was from the country, I was pleased."

They married a year later, and at first they lived in a slum. They often didn't have a lot to eat, just sukuma wiki (a green vegetable). Then, Boniface won \$90 in a bicycle race. The money helped them move to a better area and paid for driving lessons so that Boniface could become a taxi driver.

His salary doesn't go far. Rent is \$45 a month, and he gives the same amount to his parents, who don't work. Also, as the most successful of six brothers and sisters, Boniface is expected to help their families, too. He says, "I am always so stressed about money." Joyce's school fees cost another \$40 a month.

"We are trying to give our children the best education," says Pauline, who, like her husband, never finished school. "Joyce wants to be a doctor."

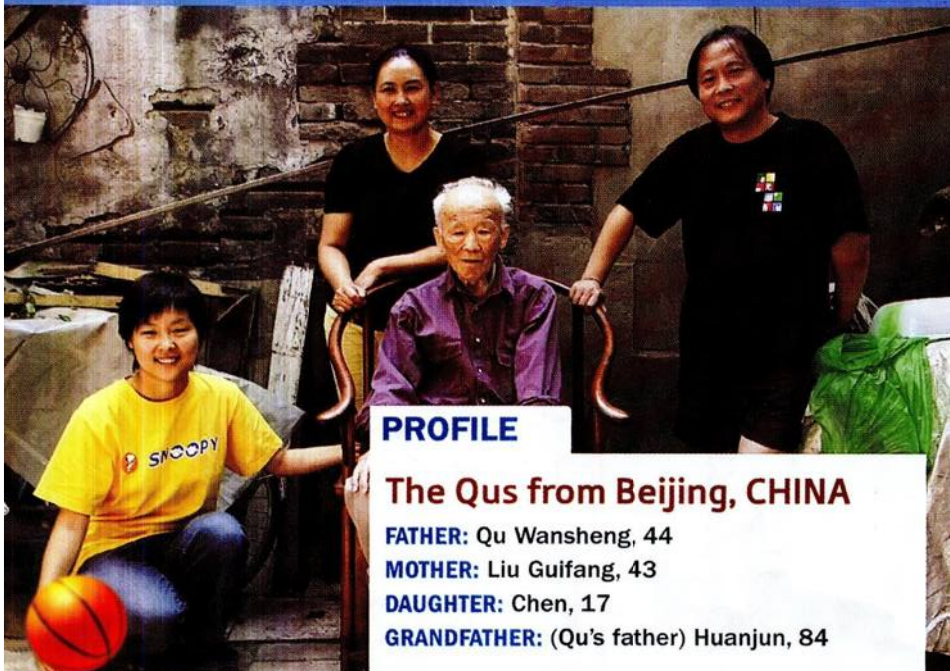
Next year, Sharon is going to preschool, so Pauline will have more time to start her own dressmaking business. By then, the family might have a new home. "This apartment is not a good place to raise a family," says Boniface. "The bathrooms are communal—one for every four families." Boniface plans to build a three-bedroom house in the suburbs of Nairobi.

**THE FAMILY IS HAPPIEST WHEN:** they have some spare money: Boniface takes them to see the wild animals at Nairobi National Park.

**FAMILY MOTTO:** Try to do your best at all times.



# our world



## PROFILE

### The Qus from Beijing, CHINA

**FATHER:** Qu Wansheng, 44

**MOTHER:** Liu Guifang, 43

**DAUGHTER:** Chen, 17

**GRANDFATHER:** (Qu's father) Huanjun, 84

**Qu and Liu** have known each other since childhood. The most noticeable change in China since then is the size of families. Qu was the youngest of six. Liu grew up as one of five children. But they have only one daughter.

Qu and Liu are happy to have a girl. Like most parents in China, they put the needs of their only child, Chen, first. She is applying to study at the prestigious Beijing University. Qu, a propaganda officer at the municipal services bureau, and Liu, who works at the No. 3 computer factory, are saving every last yuan for their daughter's education.

The family has lived in their house in central Beijing for 70 years. It is in one of the capital's ancient Hutong alleyways. These areas are known for their close-knit families and warm hospitality. The elderly sit outside and chat. People wander to the stores in their pajamas. It is a way of life cherished by Qu, but he can see that this relaxed routine is increasingly out of step with a nation experiencing one of the most amazingly quick changes in human history.

"We are not in a hurry to get rich," says Qu. "I don't want to rush around trying to make money—I am not a machine. I put my family first."

Tens of thousands of alleyways have been knocked down in the past few years, and their house is said to be next for demolition. And when the old communities go, the traditional family structure, in which children take care of their elderly parents at home, goes, too.

But for now, the Qus keep the old ways. The grandfather, Qu Huanjun, 84 and frail, is the center of the family. "My father lives here, so this is the headquarters of the family," says his son. "My brothers and their families come to visit most weekends. We are very close."

They are sad that their daughter has grown up alone because she has no brothers or sisters. "Our daughter is lonely," says Liu. "I always wanted to have two children."

Qu and Liu are proud of their daughter. Chen is bright and well-balanced. She wants to study archaeology. "College will cost a great deal of money," says her father. "So we try to live frugally and save for our daughter."

**THE FAMILY IS HAPPIEST WHEN:** they are all together in the evening.

**FAMILY MOTTO:** Save money, live simply, care for your friends, tell the truth.

## Vocabulary work

**6** Find the six highlighted words in your text. Work out the meanings from the contexts.

Match the words to the meanings in the chart.

### The Kamaus

- 1 someone who makes clothes
- 2 with only one floor
- 3 an area of old houses in bad condition
- 4 shared by a group of people
- 5 broken
- 6 worried

### The Qus

- 1 loved and treasured
- 2 weak and unhealthy
- 3 narrow lanes between buildings
- 4 knocking down buildings
- 5 close and caring
- 6 economically

**7** Work with a partner from the other group. Teach them your words.

## What do you think?

- In what ways are these families typical of their country?
- What is a typical family in your country? Is there such a thing?
- Is your family typical? Why/Why not?





## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### A world in one family



- 1 Do you know anyone who has married someone of another nationality? Do they have any children? Tell the class.
- 2 Look at the photo of the family. There are *three* nationalities in the family. How can this be?



- 3 **CD1 8** Listen to Xavier talking about his family. Read and answer the questions. Underline any you cannot answer.
  - 1 What nationality are Xavier and his parents, Ana and Teo? Which city do they live in?
  - 2 How did Xavier's parents meet? Give details. Why did they decide to live in the U.S.?
  - 3 When and why did Xavier first notice his nationality?
  - 4 Why weren't Xavier and James bilingual as children?
  - 5 How many times has Xavier been to Spain? How old was he? How many times has James been?
  - 6 What contact does Xavier have with his father's family? How long did Xavier and his family stay in Peru every summer?
  - 7 What is Xavier studying? What is James going to study?
  - 8 What is Xavier hoping to do in the future? Where is he planning to live?
  - 9 What is James doing right now? What's he going to do?
  - 10 What does Ana think are the pros and cons of bringing up a family in another country?
- 4 **CD1 9** Now listen to Xavier's mother, Ana. Answer the questions that you underlined in exercise 3.

### What do you think?

- What are the pros and cons of bringing up a family in another country? Make two lists.
  - + You get the best from two cultures
  - You don't feel completely at home in either of them
- Discuss your lists as a class.

## VOCABULARY

### What's in a word?

These exercises will help you to think about how you learn vocabulary.

### Meaning

- 1 These sentences all contain the nonsense word *uggy*. Is *uggy* used as a verb, an adjective, a noun, or an adverb?
  - 1 My grandmother's very old and *uggy* now so she can't get out much.
  - 2 She gave me my grandfather's gold watch. I'll *uggy* it forever.
  - 3 The poor people lived crowded together in *uggies* in the old part of the city.
  - 4 They can't afford to buy meat and fish. They live very *uggily* on rice and potatoes.

Can you guess what *uggy* means in the four sentences?

Which real English word goes into each sentence?

• cherish • frail • slums • frugally

### Pronunciation

- 2 Say these words aloud. Underline the word with the different vowel sound.
  - 1 /OU/ or /Λ/ rose goes does toes
  - 2 /i/ or /eɪ/ meat beat great street
  - 3 /eɪ/ or /ε/ paid made played said
  - 4 /Λ/ or /OU/ done phone son won

**CD1 10** Listen and check.

Phonetic Symbols p. 155

- 3 Say these words aloud. Which syllable is stressed?

mother enjoy apartment  
holiday population

**CD1 11** Listen and check.



## Word formation

- 4 Complete the word *act* in the sentences using the suffixes from the box.

-or -ion -ing -ive -ivities

- 1 My grandfather is 84, but he's still very *act* **ive**.
- 2 My sister's an *act* \_\_\_\_\_. She's often on TV.
- 3 *Act* \_\_\_\_\_ is not always a well-paid job.
- 4 This is not a time to do nothing. It is a time for *act* \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We do a lot of *act* \_\_\_\_\_ in class to learn English.

## Words that go together

- 5 Match a word in A with a line in B.

A	B
cosmopolitan	carelessly
well-paid	city
close-knit	in love
drive	a race
fall	family
win	job

## Keeping vocabulary records

- 6 Discuss how you can keep vocabulary records.
- Do you have a special notebook or do you record your vocabulary electronically?
  - Do you write a sentence with the new word?
  - Do you write the translation? What about pronunciation?



### My notes

**records** /ˈrekərdz/ *noun*

a written note of something

- I keep vocabulary records.

**record** /rɪˈkɔrd/ *verb*

to write down or keep information electronically

- I record my vocabulary electronically.

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Everyday situations

- 1 Work with a partner. Where could you hear the following lines of conversation? Who is talking to who?

- 1 How many bags are you checking in?
- 2 A medium latte and a muffin, please.
- 3 I can't make the meeting. I'm stuck in traffic.
- 4 Can you put in your PIN number and press "Enter"?
- 5 Bottled or tap? And do you want ice and lemon in it?
- 6 I don't think you've met Greg. He's joining us from our New York office.
- 7 I need to make an appointment. It's pretty urgent. I've lost a filling.
- 8 The elevator's on your right. Would you like someone to help you with your luggage?
- 9 Please hold. Your call is important to us. All our operators are busy at the moment, but one of them will be with you shortly (*music*) ...
- 10 There are still tickets for the 5:45 performance, but the 8:45 performance is sold out, I'm afraid.



- 2 Match a line from exercise 1 with a reply.

- a ☒ For here or to go?
- b ☐ Don't worry. We'll start without you and brief you later.
- c ☐ Hello. Good to meet you. I've heard a lot about you.
- d ☐ No, thank you. I'll manage.
- e ☐ That's fine. We'll have two, please, one adult, one child.
- f ☐ Just the one.
- g ☐ Oh, no! I can't remember my number for this card. Oh, what is it?
- h ☐ If I have to listen to that again, I'll go crazy!
- i ☐ Bottled, please. Ice but no lemon.
- j ☐ We have a cancellation this afternoon. 2:45, if that's OK?

**CD1 12** Listen and check. How does each conversation end?

- 3 Listen again. Pay attention to the stress and intonation. Practice some of the conversations with your partner.

### Role play

- 4 Work with a partner. Turn to page 143 and act out the situations.

**CD1 13** Listen and compare.



# 2

## The work week

Present tenses • Passive • Free time activities • Making small talk

### STARTER

**CD1 14** Listen to the song called “Blue Monday.”

- What is the singer's favorite day of the week?
- What's wrong with the other days?
- Which days are OK?

### MY FAVORITE DAY OF THE WEEK

Present tenses – states and activities

1 Look at the photos.

What do the people do? What are they doing?  
In pairs, ask and answer questions.

*What does Vicky do? She's a student.*  
*What's she doing? She's doing her homework.*

2 **CD1 15** Listen to them talking about their favorite day of the week. What is it? Why?

*Vicky's favorite day of the week is ... because she ...*

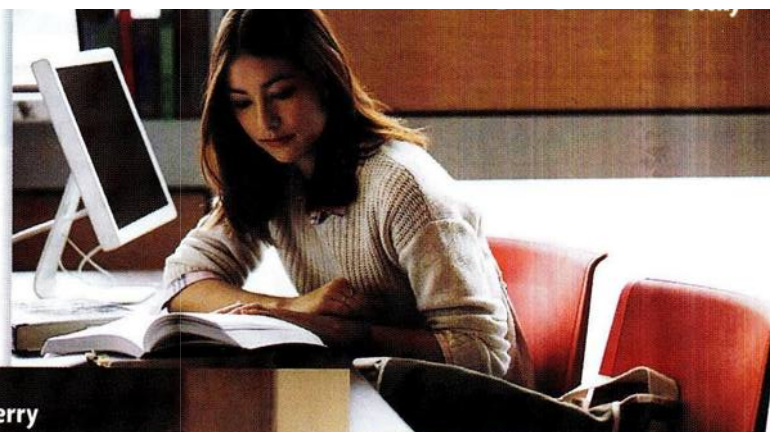
3 Listen again and complete the sentences.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ with my parents during the semester.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ day today.
- ... it \_\_\_\_\_ work at all. Time \_\_\_\_\_ by.
- The restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ redecorated right now ...
- I \_\_\_\_\_ because it's challenging, but I \_\_\_\_\_ surfing.
- The boards \_\_\_\_\_ here in the U.S.
- We never \_\_\_\_\_ on weekends or holidays ...
- Now we're harvesting, so we \_\_\_\_\_ at all.

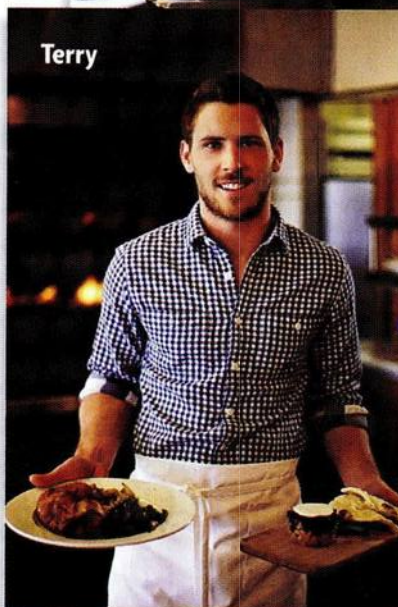
What else can you remember about each person?

*Vicky likes being with her friends all the time.*

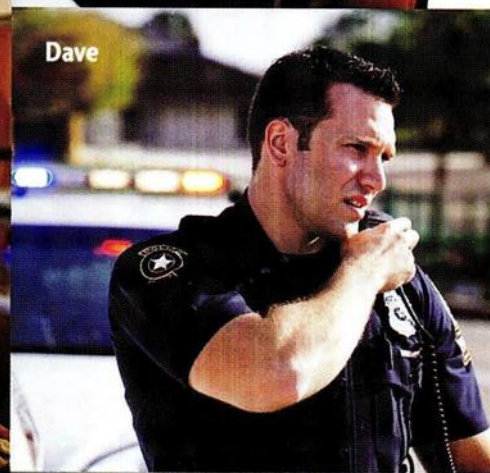
4 Work with a partner. What is your favorite and least favorite day of the week? Why?



Terry



Dave



Jenny and Mike



## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 What are the tenses in these sentences? Why are they used?

I **have** two classes on Monday.

I'm **having** a bad day today.

Find more examples, active and passive, in **CDI 15** on p. 115.

- 2 Which of these verb forms is right? Why is the other wrong?

I **like**

my job.

I **know**

we're very lucky.

I'm **liking**

I'm **knowing**

Some verbs are rarely used in Continuous tenses. These are called stative verbs. Underline the five stative verbs in the box.

love understand work want enjoy cost need learn

- 3 Adverbs of frequency (*always, never*) answer the question *How often?* Find examples in **CDI 15** on p. 115.

► Grammar Reference 2.1–2.4 pp. 130–131



## Dave Telford

### police officer and surfer

- 1 What's your background?

I'm 35, and I'm single. I live in Los Angeles, California. I'm a police officer. I've been on the police force for over ten years. I love my job, but my passion is surfing.

2

I work different shifts. The morning shift starts at 5:00, and I can't stand that because I have to get up at 4:30. My favorite shift is 2:00 in the afternoon until midnight because I get home about 12:30. What's good is that I work ten hours a day for four days, then have three days off.

3

My job is extremely busy and very hard. But I like it because it's challenging, and I never know what's going to happen. I like working in a team. We look after each other and work together.

4

My work is very stressful, so I surf to get away from it all. It's just me and the sea, and my mind switches off. I concentrate so hard on what I'm doing that I don't think about anything else.

5

I go surfing whenever I'm not working. Sometimes I'm on the beach before 7:00 in the morning. I go all over the world surfing. Next month I'm going to Costa Rica, and in the fall I'm going to Thailand.

6

I have a surfing school. I teach all ages, from kids to seniors. The business is doing well. I'm also opening two shops that sell surfboards. The boards are made here in the U.S.

7

I like Sundays best of all. I work as a lifeguard all day, then around 6:00 me and my friends barbecue some burgers and relax. Awesome! I've been all around the world, but when I look around me, I think there's nowhere else I'd rather be.

## PRACTICE

### Questions and answers

- 1 Read about Dave, the police officer from page 10. Which question goes with which paragraph?

How often do you go surfing? What do you think of your job?

What's your background? Do you have a business?

Why do you like surfing? What hours do you work?

What is your favorite day of the week?

**CDI 16** Listen and check.

- 2 Complete the questions about Dave. Then ask and answer them with a partner.

Where does he live? In Los Angeles, California.

1 Where ... he live? 6 What ... think ... while ... surfing?

2 ... he married? 7 Where ... next month?

3 Why ... morning shift? 8 ... business doing well?

4 How many hours ...? 9 What ... on Sunday evenings?

5 What ... like about his job?

**CDI 17** Listen and check.

### Talking about you

- 3 Make sentences about *you* using the prompts in the box. I visit friends as often as I can.

... as often as I can.

Sometimes I ...

... eight hours a day.

... one night a week.

... when I'm on vacation.

... twice a year.

... on Sunday.

I hardly ever ...

I always ...

... whenever I'm not working.

- 4 Talk to a partner about you. Tell the class about your partner.



## Simple and continuous

- 1 **CD1 18** Listen to two people talking about who's who in "The Office." What are their names? What are their jobs?

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> d	Nate	Accountant
<input type="checkbox"/>	Alex	Human Resources (HR) Manager
<input type="checkbox"/>	Anna	Chief Executive Officer (CEO)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Jenny	Personal Assistant (PA)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Matthew	Information Technology (IT) Manager
<input type="checkbox"/>	Christina	Sales Director

- 2 What are the people doing? What are they wearing?

Nate is sitting at the head of the table reading something.  
He's wearing a sweater.

- CD1 18** Listen again. What comment is made about each person?

Nate yells a lot, but he listens, too.

- 3 Match a job from exercise 1 with a job description and a current project.

The CEO is responsible for running the whole company.  
Currently, he is ...

Job description	Current project
is responsible for running the whole company	buying new hardware
makes appointments and arrangements	making bookings for a conference
negotiates prices and contracts	visiting new customers in China
runs an IT support team	recruiting new staff
is in charge of budget and cash flow	discussing plans and targets with the Board
deals with employees	preparing a financial report

- 4 Work with a partner. Read the conversation aloud.

- A What's your job?  
B I'm a Human Resources Manager.  
A So what do you do exactly?  
B I deal with employees and their training.  
A And what are you working on right now?  
B I'm recruiting and interviewing. We're trying to find new staff for our office in Hong Kong.

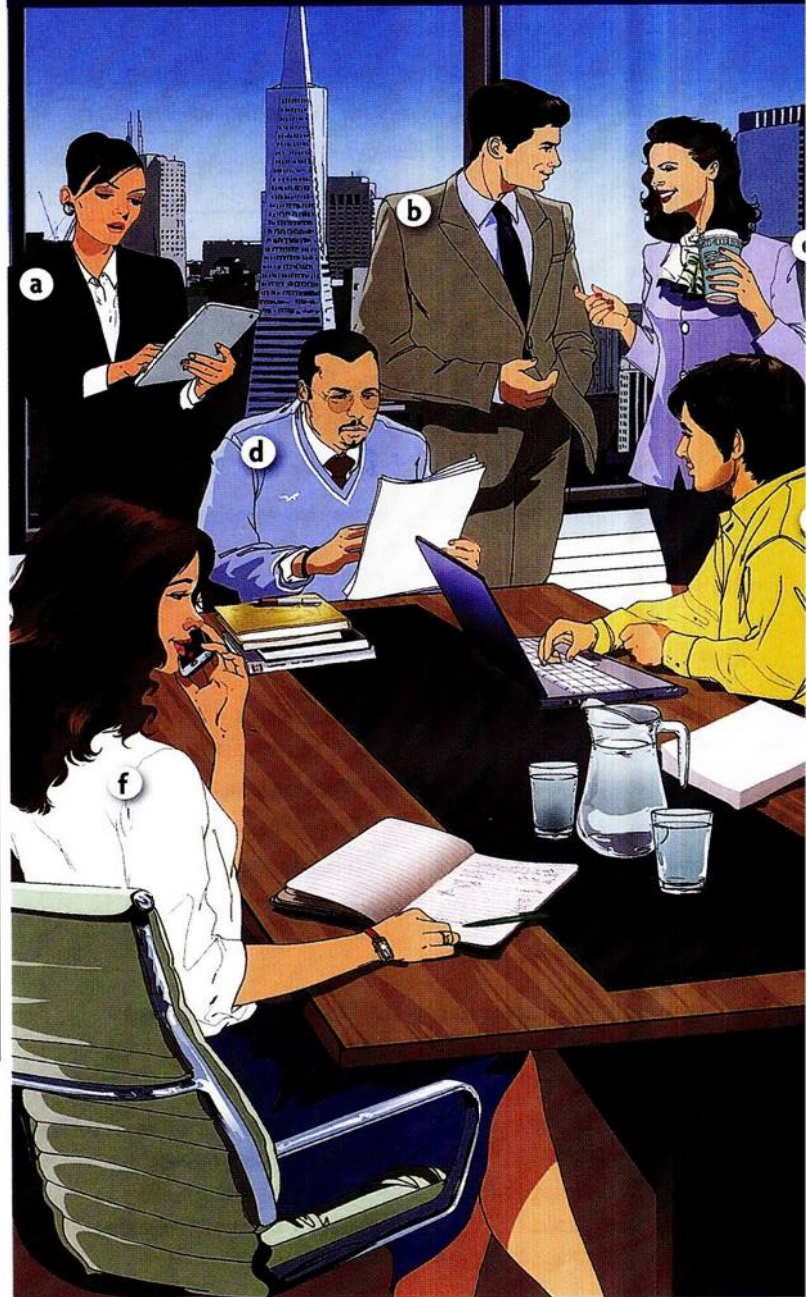
- 5 Make similar conversations using the jobs in exercise 1.  
Choose another job, for example, movie director, journalist ...

### Project

Interview someone you know about his/her job. Tell the class about this person.

I talked to ..., who's a ... He ..., and he starts work at ... He has to ...  
He likes his job because ... On his days off he ...

# THE OFFICE



### State and activity verbs

- 6 Are these sentences right (✓) or wrong (X)?  
Correct the wrong sentences.

- I'm not wanting an ice cream.
- Are you understanding what I'm saying?
- I'm enjoying the class. It's great.
- I'm thinking you're really nice.
- What are you thinking about?
- I'm not believing you. You're telling lies.
- I'm knowing you're not agreeing with me.
- She's having a lot of money.



## Active and passive

- 7 Read the statistics. Choose the correct form, active or passive. Do any of the statistics surprise you?

## STATISTICS ABOUT JOBS AND MONEY IN THE U.S.

- Almost half the population (159m) **involve / is involved** in some form of employment.
- More than 2.7 million people **employed / are employed** by the government.
- The average worker **pays / is paid** \$45,000 a year.
- The average single worker **pays / is paid** 31.3% of his salary in taxes.
- Women **earn / are earned** on average 22% less than men for full-time work.
- Children **give / are given** on average \$15 a week allowance money.
- The average person **spends / is spent** \$175 per week on transportation.
- The average household **owns / are owned** two cars.

### ► Grammar Reference 2.5–2.6 p. 131

- 8 Put the verbs in the present passive, simple or continuous.
- "Can I help you?" "I'm **being helped** (help), thank you."
  - A lot of manufactured goods \_\_\_\_\_ (make) in Asia.
  - "Why are you taking the bus?" "My car \_\_\_\_\_ (service)."
  - A large percentage of the food we buy \_\_\_\_\_ (import).
  - The banking industry in the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ (situate) in New York.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ the tip \_\_\_\_\_ (include) in the bill?
  - The hotel is closed while the bedrooms \_\_\_\_\_ (remodel).
  - Basketball players \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) far too much money.

## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### Who earns how much?

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the chart. Discuss which job you think goes with which salary.

Who earns how much in the U.S.? *	
Doctor	\$180,000
Basketball player	\$30,000
CEO	\$20,000
Nurse	\$1 million
Teacher	\$200,000
Supermarket cashier	\$50,000
Police officer	\$115,000
Pilot	\$60,000
Lawyer	\$750,000
Farmer	\$70,000

\* The average annual salary is \$45,000.

- 2 You are going to hear two people discussing the chart.

**CD1 19** Listen to Part 1. Answer the questions.

- Which jobs do they discuss?  
Which salaries do they agree on?
- Complete the sentences.  
They think a doctor earns either \$ \_\_\_\_\_ or \$ \_\_\_\_\_.  
They think either a \_\_\_\_\_ or a \_\_\_\_\_ earns \$750,000.  
They think a \_\_\_\_\_ earns about \$115,000.
- What comment do they make about ... ?  
• doctors • basketball players • CEOs • pilots

- 3 **CD1 20** Listen to Part 2. Answer the questions.

- Who do they think are the lowest earners?
- How much do they think farmers earn?
- Do they agree about a teacher's and a police officer's salary?
- What is the woman's final point?

### SPOKEN ENGLISH Giving opinions

- Notice the ways of expressing an opinion.  
*I guess ... I'd say ... I suppose ...*  
Find three more in CD1 19 and CD1 20 on p. 116.
- Are these ways of agreeing or disagreeing?  
*I think so, too. Definitely. I know what you mean, but ...*  
*I'm not so sure. Actually, ... Absolutely.*
- What do we mean when we say ... ?  
*Could be. Maybe, maybe not. Possibly.*
- Discuss the salary chart again using some of these expressions.

- 4 Work in small groups. Turn to page 143. Which salaries do you think are unfair? Are any surprising?



## Secrets of Success

- 1 What is an entrepreneur?
- 2 Work with a partner. Write the answers to these questions:
  - Who are some famous entrepreneurs?
  - What do you know about each entrepreneur?
  - Why do you think each entrepreneur is successful?

Compare your ideas as a class.

- 3 Which of these things do you think successful people do every day? Check them.

- ☐ get up late
- ☐ exercise
- ☐ make to-do lists
- ☐ work all the time
- ☐ follow the same routine
- ☐ take breaks
- ☐ stay up late at night

- 4 Work in two groups.

**Group A** Read texts 1–4 from the article.

**Group B** Read texts 5–8 from the article.

Answer the questions.

- 1 Why does Sally Krawcheck get up early?
  - 2 What is Marla Gottschalk's strategy for success?
  - 3 What are two reasons that Tania Burke likes to ride her bike to work?
  - 4 Why does Dave Kerpen write thank you cards?
  - 5 What does Edward Wimmer do before work every day? Why?
  - 6 How does Liz Ryan stay energized?
  - 7 What are two unusual things that Leo Widrich does every day?
  - 8 How does Joel Basgall keep track of his priorities?
- 5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare and exchange your answers to exercise 4.



# 8 Unusual Things Successful People Do Every Day

Where success is concerned, sometimes the smallest things make the biggest difference.

Most successful people have at least one thing they do every day that they feel contributes greatly to their success.

A few of these people shared their secrets for success:

- 1 I shift my day. I'm most creative and productive early in the morning. I used to lose this time in the rush of getting the kids out the door and getting ready for work, and then I found myself trying to remember the great idea I had as I was putting on my makeup. So now I go to sleep earlier and wake up earlier — I'm up by 4am — which gives me a few hours of super-productive time before the craziness of the day starts.

~ **Sally Krawcheck**, CEO of Ellevest

- 2 When a topic intrigues me I become almost obsessed. If I don't fully indulge my desire to search for information, my work suffers. So even though a lot of people feel it's most productive to have a predictable schedule, I try to vary my daily routine. This approach may not work for everyone, but it definitely works for me.

~ **Dr. Marla Gottschalk**, Industrial & Organizational Psychologist

- 3 I ride my bike to work because it creates a stress-free time. I get my best ideas on my bike, especially in the morning on my way in to the office. Unlike driving, it creates a space for me to be creative. Riding is relaxing, and it gives me time to decompress on my way home.

~ **Tania Burke**, President of Trek Travel

- 4 I hand write three thank-you cards every day on the train ride to work. That's totally old-fashioned, I know, but how do you feel about your email volume? If you're like me, even getting a thank you email can be annoying.

When my staff and customers get my cards, it makes them happy, and it improves my relationships with them. But most importantly, it always puts me in a good mood. You can't be upset and grateful at the same time!

~ **Dave Kerpen**, CEO of Likeable Local





- 5 We have a very casual “jeans and t-shirt” environment at my company, but I still never leave for work without ironing my t-shirt.

Yes, I iron my t-shirts.

I use this simple routine to help me remember that every company needs a leader. Even in a super-casual environment, the boss should look his best!

~ **Edward Wimmer**, co-founder of *Road ID*

- 6 I write for hours every day, and I also spend a lot of time talking with stressed-out CEOs. Those things are important, but they tire me out. If I’m exhausted by noon, I can’t help the people who rely on me in the afternoon.

So I take a break every day and poke around on YouTube, listening to old songs I love and new ones I haven’t heard. Then I post a new song every day, usually jazz or rock or funk.

Ten minutes spent indulging my inner DJ refuels me.

~ **Liz Ryan**, founder and CEO of *Human Workplace*

- 7 Every day I wear the same outfit and eat the same dinner. As an entrepreneur I have to make hundreds of little decisions every day, so I try to eliminate any decisions I don’t have to make.

For example, I only own five white t-shirts. In the morning I never need to think about what I’ll wear: it’s going to be a white t-shirt. I also only own two pairs of pants.

I do the same thing with meals. I have the same dinner six times a week. That way, I don’t have to think about what to buy or cook. The fewer decisions you have to make, the better decisions you can make.

~ **Leo Widrich**, co-founder of *Buffer*

- 8 I update my journal to help me keep track of priorities. Journaling is easy. First, identify what’s important in the various roles you play: at work, as a parent, as a spouse, and as a friend. Then track how you’re doing. I use colors to indicate how I’m doing. If I feel great about something, it’s green. Yellow, it’s so-so. Terrible, it’s red.

The key is to determine why something goes from green to yellow or red. If that happens, I think about why I had an off day, and what I can do differently next time.

~ **Joel Basgall**, co-founder and CEO of *Geneca*

- 6 Which person do you think made each statement?

- 1 At the end of the day, I evaluate my own performance.
- 2 For me, it’s not productive to follow the same routine every day.
- 3 I find traffic really stressful.
- 4 I don’t think very clearly at night.
- 5 It’s important to show people that you appreciate them.
- 6 Taking a break in the middle of the day gives me energy.
- 7 A manager should set a good example for his or her employees.
- 8 I’m very predictable.

### Vocabulary work

Which of these adjectives and expressions do you think are positive? Negative? Both?

*creative – positive*

annoying	casual	<b>creative</b>
exhausted	grateful	had an off day
in a good mood	obsessed	old-fashioned
predictable	productive	relaxing
stressed-out	upset	

Find the adjectives in the article. What does each word describe?

*annoying – getting a thank-you email*

### Discussion

- Do you do any of the things that these entrepreneurs do? Which things?
- Do you think the people’s strategies for success would work well for you? Why or why not?
- Do you know anyone with an unusual daily routine? What do they do?



# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Free time activities



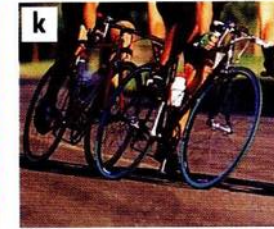
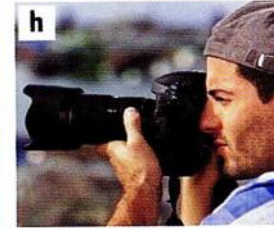
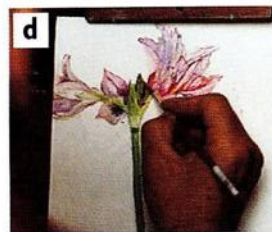
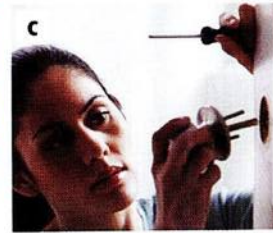
- 1 What do you do when you aren't working?  
Make a list of what you do in your free time.  
*play video games    play golf    go for a run*  
Who do you do it with? Where? Tell the class.

- 2 What activities can you see in the photos?  
Which of them ...?

- do you do alone, or with another person
- do you do at home, or in a special place
- needs special clothes or equipment

- 3 Which of these things go with the activities?

a drill	a recipe
planting	serving an ace
sales	a sleeping bag
a racket	a screwdriver
a concert	a bargain
zoom	staying fit
sweating	gardening
wearing a helmet	a flashlight
sketching	weeding



- 4 Complete the diagram about cooking with words from the box.

boiling	to chop
to mix	a baking dish
herbs and spices	ground beef
an oven	baking
roasting	a food processor
olive oil	to weigh

### equipment

*a saucepan*

### food preparation

*to peel*

## cooking

### ingredients

*eggs*

### ways of cooking

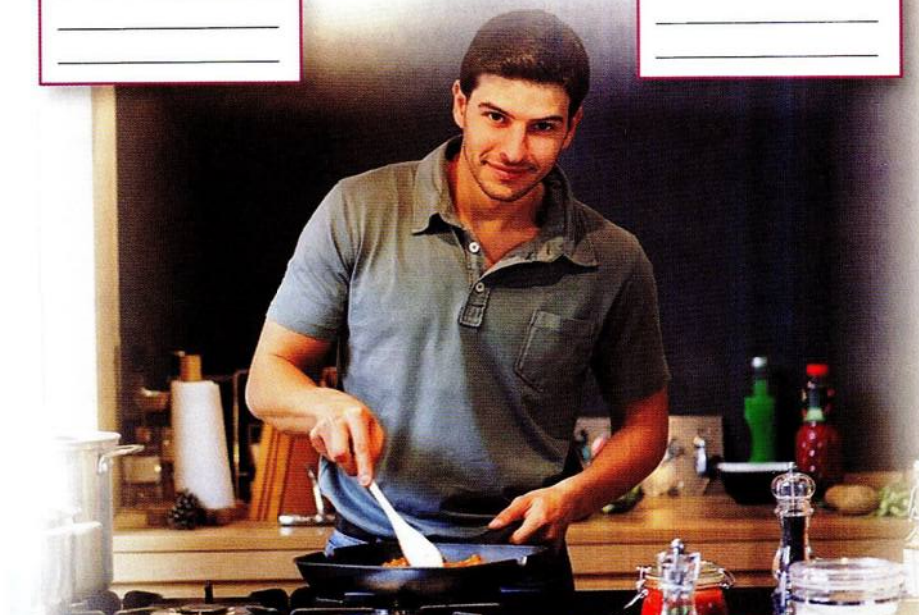
*frying*

- 5 Choose an activity that you are interested in. Draw a similar diagram and choose the categories. Fill it in.

- 6 **CD1 21** Listen to John talking about his hobby. Make notes under these headings.

- Favorite hobby
- Where and when he does it
- Clothes and equipment
- What he likes about it
- The best part

- 7 Work in small groups. Use the headings from exercise 6 and your diagram to talk about what you like doing in your free time.





## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Making small talk

1 When do we make small talk? Who with? What about?

2 **CD1 22** Read and listen to the conversation between Ann and Joaquim. Where are they? What is Joaquim doing there?

**Ann** So, what do you think of Chicago, Joaquim?

**Joaquim** *really interesting/great city/beautiful buildings/people so friendly*

*It's really interesting. Chicago's such a great city. There are some beautiful buildings, and the people are so friendly!*

**Ann** Yes, they are! When did you get here?

**Joaquim** *... ago/flight from Miami/a bit late/didn't matter*

**Ann** Oh, good. Where are you staying in Chicago?

**Joaquim** *... Avenue Hotel/convenient for the office/room not very big/OK*

**Ann** That's too bad! Don't worry. Where are you from?

**Joaquim** *Brazil/born in São Paulo/live in a suburb of Rio de Janeiro/pretty/sea*

**Ann** Really? It sounds beautiful. Your English is very good. Where did you learn it?

**Joaquim** *... very kind/a lot of mistakes/school for years/been to the U.S. many times*

**Ann** Oh, have you? How interesting! And what are you doing here in Chicago, Joaquim?

**Joaquim** *... attending a conference/here for five days/home on the 17th*

**Ann** Oh, so soon! And have you managed to get around our city yet?

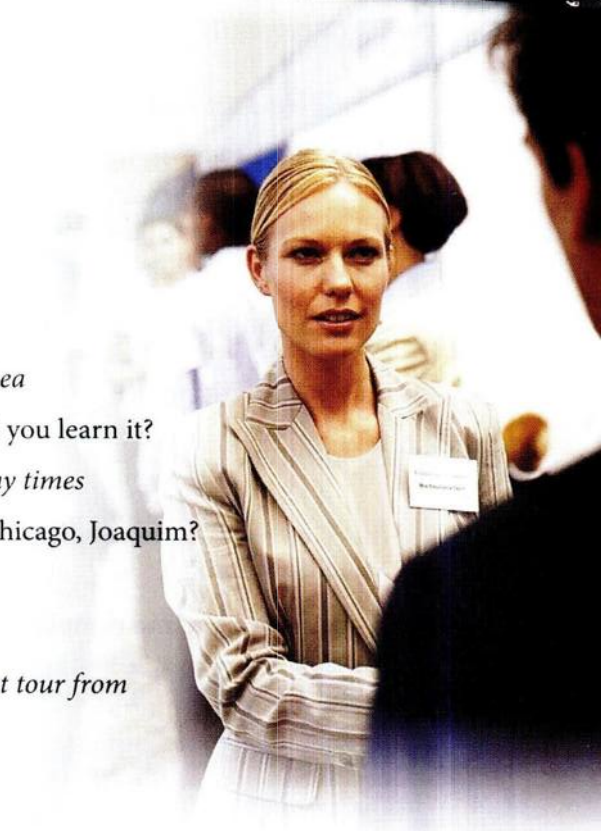
**Joaquim** *... not seen very much/a walk along the lakefront path/taken a boat tour from the Navy Pier/not seen the John Hancock Observatory yet*

**Ann** Well, I hope you enjoy it. Don't work too hard!

**Joaquim** *... try to enjoy myself/bye/nice to talk*

3 What information does Joaquim add to keep the conversation going? How does Ann show she's interested? Find examples.

4 Work with a partner. Use the prompts to practice the conversation.  
**CD1 22** Listen again. How well did you do?



5 **CD1 23** Listen to the questions and answer them. Make a comment and add some information. Add a question if you can.

Who do you work for?

Siemens. I've been with them for four years. They're a good company. How about you?

**CD1 24** Listen and compare.

6 You are abroad on a business trip. Invent a name and a background for yourself. You are at a social event. Stand up and socialize! Ask and answer questions.

▶▶ **WRITING LETTERS AND E-MAILS p. 100**

### SPOKEN ENGLISH Softening a negative comment

1 In conversation, we sometimes don't want to sound too negative. We soften negative comments.

We were late landing. *We were **a bit** late landing.*

My room is tiny. *My room **isn't very big**, but it's OK.*

2 Make these comments softer. Use the words in parentheses.

1 It's expensive. (*bit*)

4 They're rude. (*friendly*)

2 It's hard. (*quite*)

5 I earn very little. (*much*)

3 It's cold. (*warm*)

6 There's nothing to do. (*very much*)

**Oxford Online Skills Program**  
Log in for additional online learning





# 3

## Good times, bad times

Past tenses • Spelling and pronunciation • Giving opinions

### STARTER

Play the *Fortunately, Unfortunately* game as a class.

Start: *I woke up very early this morning.*

Student A *Fortunately, it was a beautiful day.*

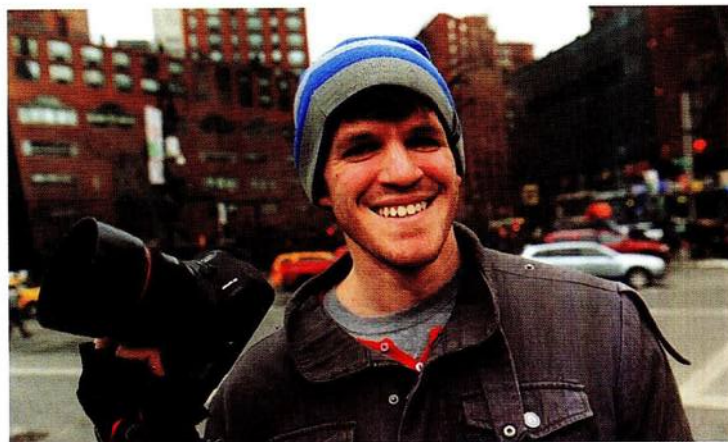
Student B *Unfortunately, I had to go to school.*

### BEHIND THE LENS: BRANDON STANTON

Past tenses and *used to*

- 1 Look at the photos of Brandon Stanton. What do they tell you about his work?
- 2 Read about Brandon's life and complete the questions.

- 1 When *was he* born?
- 2 Where ... up?
- 3 Where ... to college?
- 4 What ... in college?
- 5 What ... first job?
- 6 Where ... first job?
- 7 When ... from his job?
- 8 What ... hobby?
- 9 Where ... after he left Chicago?
- 10 Why ... to New York?
- 11 What problems ... there?
- 12 What ... pictures of in the beginning?
- 13 What ... pictures of later?
- 14 When ... his book ... ?





- 3 Read the text about Brandon Stanton more closely. With a partner, ask and answer the questions from exercise 2.

**CD1 25** Listen and check.

# BRANDON STANTON

## HUMANS OF NEW YORK PHOTOBLOGGER

Brandon Stanton is a popular American photoblogger. He was born in 1984, and grew up outside of Atlanta, Georgia. He studied history at the University of Georgia. After college, he got a good job in finance in Chicago. This went well for a while. However, after he had worked there for three years he was fired.

While Stanton was living in Chicago, he used to spend his free time taking photographs, so after getting fired, he decided to try to turn his hobby into a job. He traveled around the United States – first to New Orleans, then Pittsburgh, then Philadelphia. He took almost a thousand photos a day, and posted 30 or 40 of his favorites on Facebook.

In 2010, he moved to New York City. His friends and family thought he was crazy. He'd only had six months of photography experience, yet he was moving across the country to be a photographer. As people had predicted, Stanton had some hard times. When he arrived in New York, he was completely broke. He didn't know anyone, was often lonely, but he was confident that he could be a success.

At first Stanton used to take pictures mainly of objects – bridges, buildings, and street signs, but after a while, he started taking pictures of people, asking them about their lives, and posting their quotes along with the photos. Before long, his blog – called *Humans of New York*, or *HONY* – became wildly popular. Within several months, he had hundreds of thousands of "likes." Five years later, he had 12 million. People loved his photos and personal stories.

In 2012, he was featured in *Vogue* magazine and on ABC News. His *Humans of New York* book was published in October 2013, and it quickly became a bestseller.

Despite his success, Stanton is modest. He says, "*Humans of New York* is an amazing story, and it's a story that could not have happened without social media. I'd probably just be a quirky, amateur photographer ... I may have even quit by now."

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- In these sentences, which verb form is ... ?  
Simple Past   Past Continuous   Simple Past passive  
He **studied** history.  
He **was fired**.  
He **was living** in Chicago.  
Find more examples of the three verb forms in the text.
- In this sentence, what happened first?  
After he **had worked** there for three years he was fired.  
*had worked* is an example of the Past Perfect tense.  
How is this tense formed? Find more examples in the text.
- Look at the sentence.  
Stanton **used to** take pictures mainly of objects.  
Do you think this happened once or many times?  
Find another example of *used to* in the text.

►► Grammar Reference 3.1–3.7 pp. 131–133

### Pronunciation

- 4 **CD1 26** Listen and repeat the weak forms and contracted forms.

/wʌz/	/wʌz/
What <b>was</b> he doing?	He <b>was</b> working.
/wɜr/	/hɪd/
They <b>were</b> photographed.	He'd had a hard time.
/ðeɪd/	/hɪd bɪn/
They'd liked his blog.	He'd been traveling.

- 5 Write the verbs from the box in the chart according to the pronunciation of *-ed*.

<del>worked</del>	studied	decided
posted	traveled	arrived
published	loved	moved

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/
worked		

**CD1 27** Listen and check.



## PRACTICE

### I didn't do much

1 **CD1 28** Listen to four people saying what they did last night. Who said these lines? Write a number from 1–4.

- I went out to eat with a couple of friends.
- We talked for a while.
- I didn't do much.
- I got home about nine.
- I had an early night.
- I didn't get home until about midnight.
- I did some stuff on the computer.
- It was a very late night for me!

2 What did *you* do last night? Discuss in small groups.

### Discussing grammar

3 Compare the use of tenses in these sentences. Say which tense is used and why.

- 1 It 

rained	all day yesterday.
was raining	when I woke up.
- 2 I *wore* a suit for my interview.  
She looked great. She *was wearing* a black top and new jeans.
- 3 "What *were* you *doing* when you lost your phone?"  
"Shopping."  
"What *did* you *do* when you lost your phone?"  
"Bought a new one."
- 4 When Bill arrived, 

we <i>were having</i> lunch.	
we <i>had</i> lunch.	
we'd <i>had</i> lunch.	
- 5 I got to the theater. The movie 

<i>started</i> .	
<i>had started</i> .	
- 6 When I was a kid I *used to play* football with my dad.  
I *played* football with my kids last Saturday.

### A news story

4 Read the news story. Put the verbs in parentheses in the correct past tense, active or passive.

**CD1 29** Listen and check.

5 **CD1 30** Listen to the detective's interview with the tenant. What do you learn that wasn't in the newspaper article?



## Careless criminal leaves cell phone at crime scene, calls detective

**Wayne Wade should have stayed home.** On July 30, the Florida man (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (rob) an apartment in the town of Hollywood, only to encounter the apartment's tenant on his way out the door. "Uh-oh, now she knows what I look like. I need to get out of here!" Wade (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (think). So he (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (run) out the door. As he (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) home, he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (realize) that he (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) his cell phone in the home he had robbed. "Uh-oh, now the cops have my fingerprints and lots of other information about me. I have to get that phone back!"

So he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (call) his phone. Maybe he (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (hope) that the person who answered would return the phone to him. Instead, the phone (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (answer) by a detective who was in the house. The detective (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (investigate) the robbery. Wade (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) the detective his name and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (say) he needed his phone back. Instead, he (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (arrest), and the fingerprints from his phone (14) \_\_\_\_\_ (use) to tie Wade to five other unsolved robberies.

In court later that week, Wade (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) a judge that his phone (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (steal). But the judge (17) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/believe) him!





# VOCABULARY

## Spelling and pronunciation

- 1 **CD1 31** Listen and repeat these words. What do they tell you about English spelling and pronunciation?

good /gʊd/    food /fud/    blood /blʌd/  
road /rəʊd/    rode /rəʊd/    rowed /rəʊd/

### Words that sound the same

- 2 **CD1 32** Listen and write the words you hear. What do they have in common? Compare with a partner. Did you write the same words?

- 3 Read these words aloud. Write another word with the same pronunciation.

1 male <u>mail</u>	6 week _____
2 blew _____	7 hole _____
3 piece _____	8 pair _____
4 where _____	9 allowed _____
5 sun _____	10 weight _____

- 4 Write the correct spelling of the words in phonemic script.

1 /pɪs/ Peace is the opposite of /wɔːr/ \_\_\_\_\_.  
2 I'm not /ə'laʊd/ \_\_\_\_\_ to /wɛr/ \_\_\_\_\_ makeup.  
3 I'd like a /pɛr/ \_\_\_\_\_ of /blu/ \_\_\_\_\_ jeans, please.  
4 I /wɔːr/ \_\_\_\_\_ the same socks for a /hoʊl/ \_\_\_\_\_ /wɪk/ \_\_\_\_\_.  
5 I had to /wɛɪt/ \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain and I caught the /flu/ \_\_\_\_\_.

### Spelling

- 5 Read these words aloud. Which two words rhyme?

1 <u>love</u>	move	<u>glove</u>
2 some	home	come
3 dear	fear	pear
4 lost	most	post
5 meat	cheat	great
6 boot	shoot	foot
7 eight	weight	height
8 blood	wood	flood
9 flower	power	lower

**CD1 33** Listen and check.

- 6 These words have the same vowel sound but different spellings. Spell the words.

/u/ tooth    truth    juce    thru\_\_\_\_  
/ɔː/ cot    don    wor    flo\_\_\_\_  
/əːr/ oth    wold    bon    fo\_\_\_\_  
/ɛr/ to    fo    squu    thu\_\_\_\_

### Lost sounds

- 7 In some words we lose sounds.

~~choc~~plate /tʃəklət/ has two syllables, not three.

~~comf~~table /kəmftəbl/ has three syllables, not four.

Read these words aloud. Cross out the lost sounds.

~~diff~~erent    ~~se~~veral

~~busi~~ness    ~~resta~~urant

~~mar~~riage    ~~inter~~esting

~~vegeta~~ble    ~~tempe~~rature

**CD1 34** Listen and check.

- 8 Some words have silent letters. Cross out the silent letters in these pairs of words.

1 <del>fore</del> ign	<del>sign</del>
2 <del>clim</del> b	<del>bomb</del>
3 <del>neigh</del> bor	<del>weigh</del>
4 <del>honest</del>	<del>hour</del>
5 <del>knee</del>	<del>knock</del>
6 <del>psych</del> ology	<del>psych</del> iatrist

**CD1 35** Listen and check.





## READING

### A Shakespearean tragedy

- 1 What do you know about William Shakespeare?
- 2 Look at the list of characters in the story of *Romeo and Juliet*. What do you know about the story? How did people at that time decide who to marry? Who made the decision?
- 3 Read 1–5 in the story. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Why did the Montagues and the Capulets hate each other?
  - 2 Why wasn't it a good idea for Romeo to go to the Capulets' party?
  - 3 What happened when Romeo and Juliet first met?
  - 4 "Wherefore art thou Romeo?" (= *Why are you Romeo?*) Why was Juliet upset about Romeo's name?
  - 5 How long had they known each other when they decided to get married?
  - 6 Why did Friar Laurence agree to marry them?
  - 7 Why did Romeo try to stop the fight?
- 4 Read 6–9 in the story. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Who did Juliet go to for help?
  - 2 What was the Friar's plan?
  - 3 Which part of the plan worked?
  - 4 What went wrong with the plan?
  - 5 Why did Romeo kill himself?
  - 6 Why did Juliet kill herself?
  - 7 How did their families feel at the end?
- 5 **CD1 36** Listen to actors speaking Shakespeare's lines, and follow them in the story. Read the lines in more modern English on page 144.
- 6 Retell the story using the pictures.

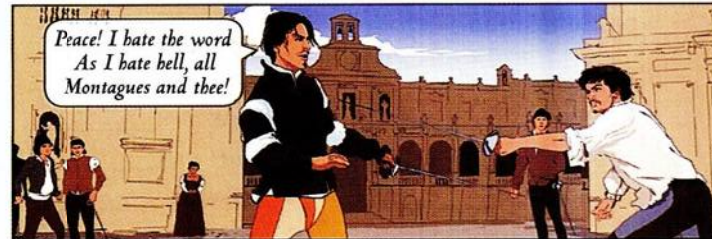
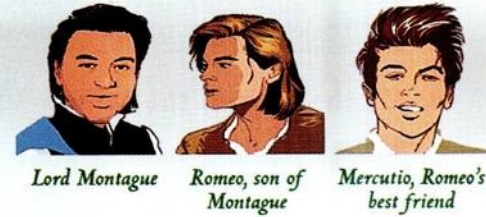
### What do you think?

- Whose fault was the tragedy?
- In the play, Romeo and Juliet fall in love at first sight. Do you think this is too soon to fall in love?
- Shakespeare wrote comedies, tragedies, and history plays. What titles do you know? Do you know any of the stories?

### WRITING TELLING A STORY (1) p. 101

# Romeo

## The Montagues



**I** Many years ago, in the ancient Italian city of Verona, there were two very rich but warring families, the Montagues and the Capulets. They had hated each other for so long that no one could remember how the feud had started. Fights often used to break out in the streets.



**4** The next morning, Romeo raced to Friar Laurence and begged him to marry them. The Friar agreed, hoping this would unite the families. That afternoon, Juliet joined Romeo, and they were wed. They parted, but planned to meet again that night.



**7** Juliet returned home and took the drug. The next day, everyone thought she was dead. She was carried to the family tomb, from where, according to the Friar's plan, Romeo would rescue her.



# AND Juliet

by William Shakespeare



Benvolio,  
Romeo's cousin

Friar Laurence,  
a priest

The Prince

Paris, a nobleman  
suitor of Juliet

Juliet's nurse

Tybalt, Juliet's  
cousin

Juliet, daughter  
of Capulet

Lord Capulet

The  
Capulets

Did my heart love till  
now? For I ne'er saw  
true beauty till this night.

My only love sprung  
from my only hate, ...

O Romeo, Romeo, wherefore art thou  
Romeo? Deny thy father, and refuse thy  
name ... What's Montague? ... A rose  
by any other name would smell as sweet.

**2** Lord Capulet was planning a celebration for his daughter, Juliet. Romeo, Lord Montague's son, went to the party uninvited. He saw Juliet and fell instantly in love! They touched hands. They talked. Only then did they discover their families were enemies!

**3** That night, Juliet stood on her balcony and declared her love for Romeo. Romeo had climbed up a wall and was listening. They swore eternal love to each other, and promised to marry in secret the next day.

Now, Tybalt, ... Mercutio's soul  
is ... above our heads, either thou  
or I, or both, must go with him.

Thou wretched boy ...  
shalt with him hence.

Take thou this vial, ...  
and this liquor drink ...  
no pulse ... no breath  
shall testify thou livest ...  
two and forty hours ...

Give me! ...  
Love give me  
strength.

**5** Returning to Verona, Romeo found Benvolio and Mercutio being attacked by Tybalt. Romeo tried to stop the fight. He failed, and Mercutio was killed. Romeo had to take revenge! He fought Tybalt and killed him. The Prince, hearing of the deaths, banished Romeo from Verona.

**6** More disaster was to come. Juliet's father had decided she should marry a nobleman, Paris. How could she tell her father she had already married Romeo? Juliet ran to Friar Laurence for help. The Friar gave her a sleeping potion to make her appear dead. The Friar would tell Romeo to arrive as she was waking up. They could then escape together.

Eyes, look your last. Arms, take your  
last embrace ... Here's to my love!  
O true Apothecary, thy drugs are  
quick. Thus with a kiss I die.

What's here? A cup closed in my true love's hand? Poison, I see  
... I will kiss thy lips ... some poison doth hang on them to make  
me die ... Thy lips are warm! Oh, happy dagger! Let me die!

For never was a story of more woe  
than this of Juliet and her Romeo.

**8** But Romeo never received the Friar's letter. Thinking that his beloved Juliet had died, he bought poison and went to the tomb. He kissed her and drank the poison. Juliet woke up to see Romeo lying dead beside her. She wept and kissed him, hoping that the poison would kill her, too. Finally, she took his dagger and stabbed herself.

**9** The families of the Montagues and the Capulets arrived at the tragic scene. They were overwhelmed with grief, and horrified at the pain that their families' hatred had caused. Thus they buried their feud, along with their precious children, Romeo and his sweet Juliet.



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### The first time I fell in love

1 What do you think these quotations mean?

**"Love is a kind of madness."**

**"Love is the most beautiful of dreams and the worst of nightmares."**

**"When you're in love, 1 + 1 = everything, and 2 - 1 = nothing."**

**"Love is what is left when being in love has burned away."**

**"People ask what love is. If you have to ask, you don't know."**

**"Love is blind."**

2 **CD1 37** Listen to three people talking about the first time they fell in love. Take notes and complete the chart.

	Sarah	Tommy	James
1 How old was he/she?			
2 Who did he/she fall in love with?			
3 Was it a pleasant experience?			
4 Was the love reciprocated?			
5 How did it end?			

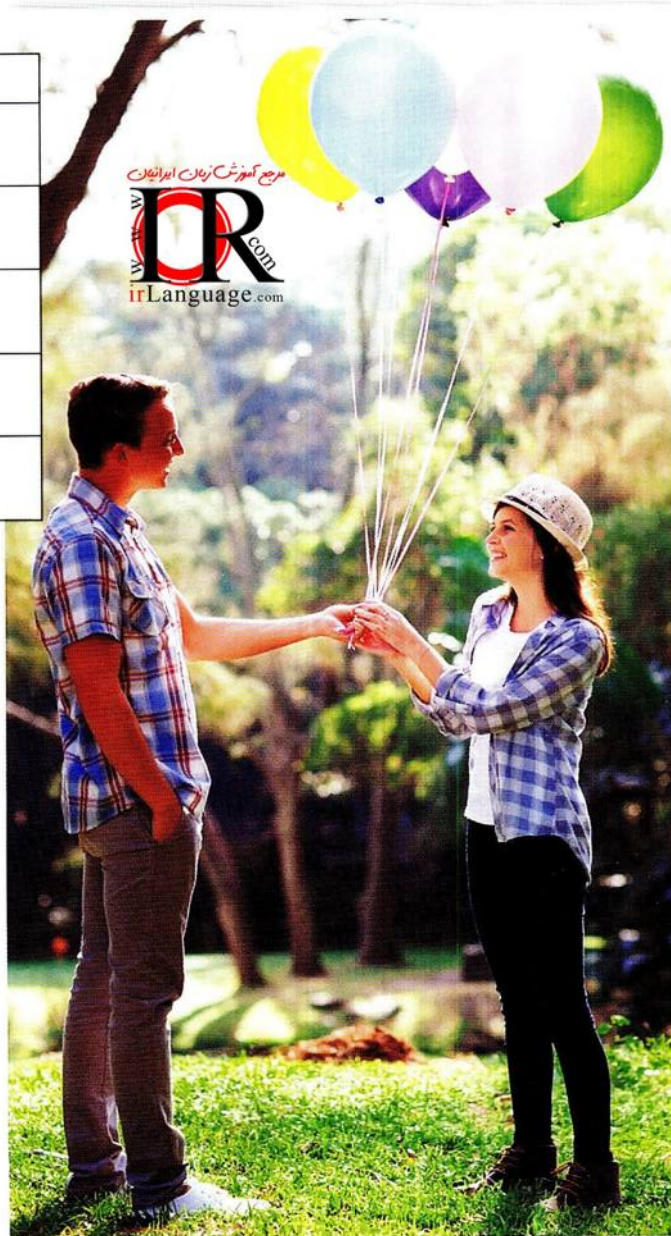
3 In groups, compare your answers. Listen again to check.

4 What are some of the effects of being in love that the people describe?

*"He made me go all weak at the knees."*

#### What do you think?

- Who do we fall in love with? Someone like ourselves, or someone different? Do opposites attract?
- "The course of true love never did run smooth."  
(Shakespeare – *A Midsummer Night's Dream*)  
Think of couples, perhaps famous, perhaps not, who didn't have or haven't had an easy romance. What happened to them?
- What couples do you know who are a good match? Why do they go well together?





## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Giving opinions

- 1 **CD1 38** Read and listen to the conversation. What is it about?  
Which two people agree with each other?

A So, what do you think of Meg's new friend? He's really great, isn't he?  
B Definitely! I think he's absolutely wonderful!  
A Mmm. Me too. I just love the stories he tells.  
B So do I. He's very funny. I really like his sense of humor.  
A They get along so well, don't they?  
C Well, maybe. He's very nice, but I don't think that he's the one for her.  
B That's not true! They absolutely adore each other!  
C Mmm. I'm not so sure.  
B Come on! You're just jealous. You've always liked her.  
C Actually, that's not true at all. But I really like her sister.

In groups of three, practice the conversation.

- 2 Listen again to the conversation. Answer the questions.  
1 A and B agree with each other. What are their actual words?  
2 A uses two tag questions. Practice them.

He's really great, *isn't he?*

They get along so well, *don't they?*

Is A *really* asking for information, or does she just want the others to agree with her?

- 3 Complete these tag questions.

- We had a great time in Thailand, *didn't we* ?
- The weather was great, \_\_\_\_\_?
- The French really love their food, \_\_\_\_\_?
- It's a lovely day today, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Karen and Tom are a really nice couple, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Tom earns so much money, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They want to get married, \_\_\_\_\_?

**CD1 39** Listen and check.

### SPOKEN ENGLISH Making an opinion stronger

- Adverbs like *very*, *really*, *just*, and *absolutely* help make an opinion stronger.  
*It's good.* → *It's **very** good.* → *It's **really** good.*  
*It's bad!* → *It's **just** awful!* → *It's **absolutely** awful!*
- We can use an adverb to qualify an adjective or a verb.  
*He's **really** great, isn't he?*  
*I **really** don't like his sense of humor.*

Find more examples in the conversation in exercise 1.



- 4 Work in pairs to make these opinions stronger. Use a wide voice range to sound enthusiastic.

- She's very nice. *She's **absolutely** wonderful!*
- The movie was good. *just great*
- The hotel's all right. *really fabulous*
- I like dark chocolate. *absolutely adore*
- I like Peter. *really love*
- The book wasn't very good. *absolutely awful*
- I don't like noisy restaurants. *just can't stand*

**CD1 40** Listen and repeat.

- 5 Write down some opinions on ...

- the last movie you saw
- something in today's news
- the weather
- the clothes that someone is wearing today
- what a celebrity is currently doing
- a show on TV

- 6 In pairs, ask for and give opinions.

I saw that new movie last week.

Oh! What did you think of it?

Great! I really enjoyed it.  
The acting was just amazing!

Oxford Online Skills Program  
Log in for additional online learning





# 4

## Getting it right

Modal and related verbs • Phrasal verbs (1) • Polite requests and offers

### STARTER

Look at the sentences. Say them aloud as a class.

You	can must should have to	go.
-----	----------------------------------	-----

- 1 Say the negative.
- 2 Say the question.
- 3 Say the 3rd person singular with *he*.
- 4 Which verb is different in form?

### MODERN DILEMMAS

*should/must/have to/be allowed to*

- 1 Work in groups. *The Times* newspaper has a section called *Modern morals* where readers help other readers with problems. Read the problems in *Readers ask*. What advice would you give? Use these phrases:  
*I think they should ... I don't think she should ... He must ...*
- 2 Read the lines from *Readers reply* on page 27. Which lines do you think go with which problems?  
Read the full replies on page 145. Do you agree with the advice?
- 3 Look again at *Readers ask* 1–7. Find the questions used to *ask for* advice. Find the verbs used in *Readers reply* a–g to *give* advice.

## Modern morals

### Readers ask

- 1 How should I deal with my difficult and disagreeable neighbor? He is in the habit of dumping his garden waste along the public sidewalk between our two houses.

*Jim Thomas, Boston*

- 2 Is it OK to greet people you don't know with a "How are you?" In California (my home) it's considered friendly, but here in New York some people react with a cold look. Should I be less friendly in my greetings?

*Erica Fleckberg, New York*

- 3 I can pick up my neighbor's Wi-Fi network, and it's not secured. I want to use it so I don't have to pay for it. Is it right for me to use my neighbor's Wi-Fi?

*Richard Dalton, Princeton*

- 4 My stepfather's driver's license was suspended for six months for speeding, but we have learned that he still drives over the speed limit all the time. Should we keep quiet or inform the police?

*Stella Milne, Hartford*

- 5 I am a medical student. After I graduate in June, I have one month before my first job starts. My fiancée says that I am not allowed to claim unemployment benefits for this month. I disagree, because I'll be unemployed. The benefits are for all those who are out of work, isn't it? What do you think?

*J. R. Collin, Pittsburgh*

- 6 Is it wrong for me to download an e-book from the Internet without paying for it? I already have the book, but I want to download the electronic version to my e-reader so I can take it on my trip. I don't want to pay for it twice!

*Pete Rodriguez, Newark*

- 7 Is it ever permissible to lie to children? I lied to my two-year-old granddaughter to remove her from a fairground ride without a tantrum. I said: "You must get off now because the man is going to get his dinner." She got off without a fuss. But I'm worried that if she remembers this, she won't trust me in the future.

*Barbara Hope, Philadelphia*





## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 These sentences give advice. Which is the stronger advice?

You **should** check online.

You **must** tell your neighbor.

- 2 Which sentences express permission? Which express obligation?

I	can am allowed to must have to	go.
---	---	-----

- 3 Complete the sentences with *have to*, *don't have to*, or *shouldn't*.

Children \_\_\_\_\_ go to school.

You \_\_\_\_\_ ride your bike on the sidewalk.

People over 65 \_\_\_\_\_ go to work.

- 4 The past of these sentences is the same. What is it?

I must go.      I have to go.

► Grammar Reference 4.1–4.5 pp. 133–134

## PRACTICE

### Discussing grammar

- 1 Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences.

1 I don't get along with my boss. Do you think I *should* / *must* look for another job?

2 We're throwing Tom a surprise birthday party. You *shouldn't* / *can't* tell him about it.

3 Please, Dad, *can* / *must* I go to Tom's party? It'll be great.

4 You *should* / *have to* drive on the left in England.

5 Do you *must* / *have to* wear a uniform for your job?

6 Are you *can* / *allowed to* take cell phones to school?

7 I *must* / *had to* go to bed early when I was a child.

8 You *shouldn't* / *don't have to* go to the U.S. to learn English, but it's a good idea.

CD1 41 Listen and check.

### Giving advice

- 2 CD1 42 Listen to the three conversations. After each one discuss these questions.

1 What is the problem?

2 What is the advice?

3 Do you agree with it? Give *your* advice if it's different.

- 3 Listen again and complete the lines with the exact words.

1 I don't know if I \_\_\_\_\_ go or not.

2 They told her she \_\_\_\_\_ to have friends over while they were away.

3 Oh, come on! You \_\_\_\_\_ come. It's a party.

4 Look. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell your mom and dad.

5 You're \_\_\_\_\_ to eat in the store.

6 Do you think I \_\_\_\_\_ tell her to stop?

7 No, no, you \_\_\_\_\_ say anything.

8 I \_\_\_\_\_ say something.

9 I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the store for my dad.

10 I think he \_\_\_\_\_ pay the fine.

Practice the conversations in CD1 42 on page 118.

## Readers reply

a You must call "Crimestoppers" and report him. You don't have to give your name.

b I think you are allowed other benefits. You should check online.

c You don't have to be like New Yorkers just because you're in New York.

d You have to act with self-control. I don't think you should confront him.

e It's not only wrong, it's illegal. You are not allowed to do this.

f Not only should you lie sometimes, you often have to.

g You must tell your neighbor this. It's the only right thing to do.





## Rules present

- 1 Work with a partner. Read these American laws. Compare them with laws in your country. Are they the same?

### In the U.S. ...

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 You can get married when you're 18.                      | 5 In some states, you can't use a cell phone while driving.                   |
| 2 In most states, you can't drive a car until you are 16.  | 6 Young people don't have to do military service.                             |
| 3 You must be at least 18 to vote.                         | 7 In many states, children aren't allowed to ride a bicycle without a helmet. |
| 4 You have to wear a seat belt in the front seat of a car. | 8 Children at most private schools have to wear uniforms.                     |

- 2 What other laws are there in your country? Think of places such as roads, parks, government buildings, libraries, and schools. Tell the class.

## Rules past

- 3 Read "American Education 1840–1918." Use what you find out to choose the correct verb form in the statements.

- Before 1840, children *had to/didn't have to* go to school.
- By 1870, people *had to/didn't have to* pay to go to school.
- By 1900, many children *had to/weren't allowed to* go to school until they were 14.
- By 1918, most children *weren't allowed to/didn't have to* leave school until they were 16.

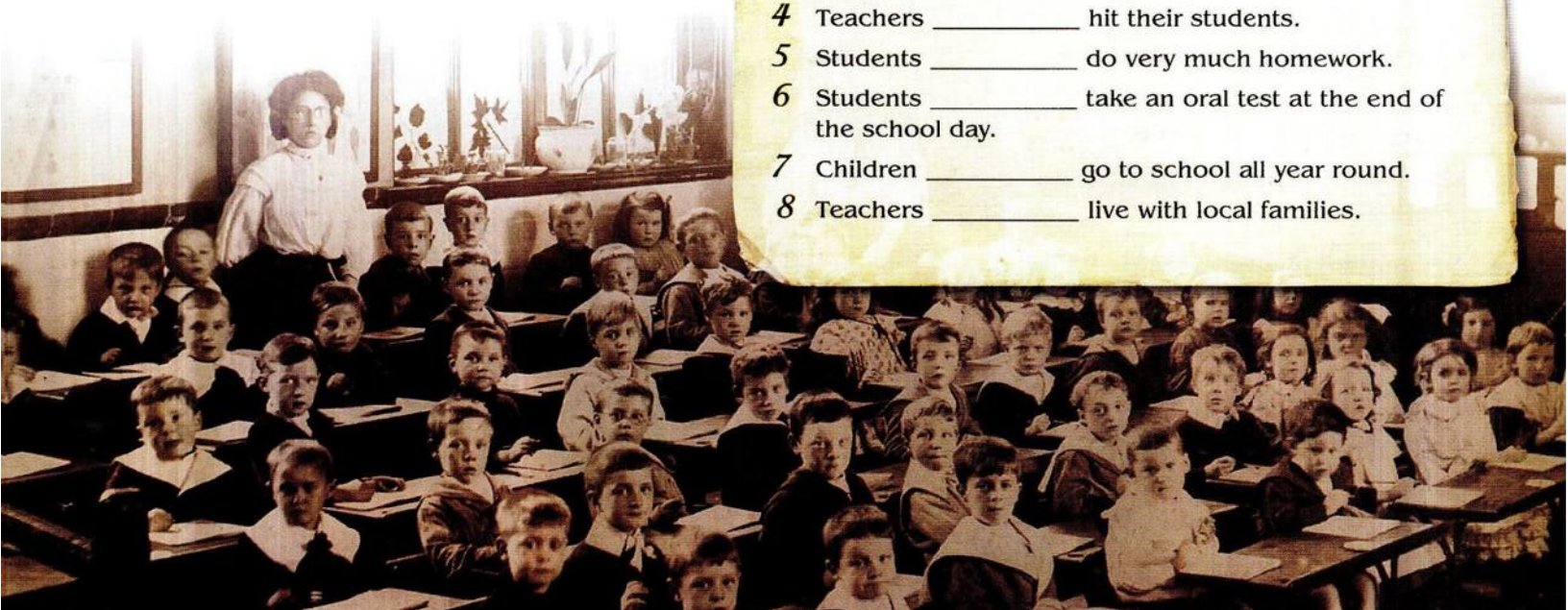
- 4 Look at "One-room Schools." Which of the rules do you think were true? Discuss with a partner. Complete the rules with *had to/didn't have to/weren't allowed to*.

## American Education 1840–1918

Nineteenth century American education is often called "The Common School Period." It was during this time that education became available to "common" people. In the 1840s, school attendance became compulsory for elementary-age children, aged 5–12. By 1870, every state provided free elementary education. By 1900, 31 states required children aged 8–14 to attend school. As a result, 72% of American children attended school by 1910—half of them in one-room schoolhouses. By 1918, most states passed laws making education compulsory until age 16.

## One-room Schools

- Students of all ages had to share one teacher and one classroom.
- The youngest children \_\_\_\_\_ sit in front, close to the teacher.
- Boys and girls \_\_\_\_\_ sit together.
- Teachers \_\_\_\_\_ hit their students.
- Students \_\_\_\_\_ do very much homework.
- Students \_\_\_\_\_ take an oral test at the end of the school day.
- Children \_\_\_\_\_ go to school all year round.
- Teachers \_\_\_\_\_ live with local families.





# LISTENING AND SPEAKING

## Rules for life

- 1 **CD1 43** Listen to three people talking about their rules for life and make notes after each one.



Millie, 15

---

---

---

---



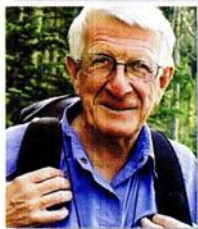
Richard, 33

---

---

---

---



Frank, 65

---

---

---

---

- 2 Discuss their ideas. Are they optimists or pessimists? Do you agree or disagree?

### SPOKEN ENGLISH *have got to*

- 1 *Have got to* means the same as *have to* but is used more in spoken English. In American English *have got to* is an intensive form of *have to*. It's often reduced to *gotta* when we speak. Look at these examples from CD1 43.

*You've got to give meaning to your life by what you do.*  
*You've got to look for the good in people.*

- 2 Complete the conversations with *'ve got to* / *'s got to*.

1 "Isn't your mom away this week?"

"Yeah, so Dad 's got to do all the cooking."

2 "Where's my briefcase? I \_\_\_\_\_ go to work."

"It's where you left it. In the hallway."

3 "Mom, why can't I go out now?"

"You \_\_\_\_\_ clean up your room first."

4 "Won't you be late for work?"

"Oh, no! Look at the time. I \_\_\_\_\_ go now. Bye!"

**CD1 44** Listen and check. What extra information do you hear in the answers? Practice the conversations.

► Grammar Reference 4.2 p. 133

## Song – "I Believe"

3

### I Believe

I believe in \_\_\_\_\_  
 And beauty from within  
 I believe in saying \_\_\_\_\_  
 And fresh \_\_\_\_\_ on the skin  
 I believe in healthy \_\_\_\_\_  
 As tonic for the feet  
 I believe in serious talks  
 And \_\_\_\_\_ to eat

#### Chorus

**That's what I believe**

**Surprising as it seems**

**I believe that happiness**

**Is well within our dreams**



- 4 **CD1 45** Listen to the song called "I Believe." It expresses Ian's philosophy on life. Is he an optimist or a pessimist?

- 5 Work with a partner. Turn to page 146. Read the song. Discuss which words best complete the lines.

- 6 **CD1 45** Listen again and check your answers. Which of the things in 1–8 does he believe in?

- 1 Recycling trash.
- 2 Healthy outdoor activities.
- 3 Having a lot to eat and drink.
- 4 Being truthful and kind.
- 5 Having strong opinions about everything.
- 6 Good manners.
- 7 Putting yourself first.
- 8 Peace, not war, is possible.

- 7 Which of the things in exercise 6 are important to you? Discuss as a class.

► WRITING A BIOGRAPHY p. 102



## READING AND SPEAKING

### How one man changed his life

- 1 Discuss these questions with the class.
  - What are your favorite cell phone apps?
  - How many times a day do you think you look at your phone?
  - Do you think you're addicted to your phone?
  - Do you ever leave your house without your phone? When?
- 2 Read the introduction to the article. What was Jake Knapp's problem?
- 3 Work with a partner. Write three possible solutions to Jake's problem. Which solution do you think is best? Why?
- 4 Read Paragraph 1. What was Jake's solution? Was it similar to any of the solutions you listed in exercise 3?
- 5 Here are some words from the article. Use them to predict each paragraph. Check new words in a dictionary.

#### Paragraph 2:

more relaxed   more free time  
more productive   easier to concentrate

#### Paragraph 3:

easy way out   going back   sounds really difficult

#### Paragraph 4:

once in a while   use the Internet  
re-enable the app   disable the app

#### Paragraph 5:

blog post   300,000 views  
why he keeps his phone   only want half of it

#### Paragraph 6:

readers were supportive   some even tried  
Knapp's wife   distraction-free

#### Paragraph 7:

everyone should   not really  
aren't addicted   an idea worth considering

- 6 Read Paragraphs 2–7 quickly. Were your ideas correct?

- 7 Read the article more closely. Answer the questions.

- 1 How did Jake decide which apps to remove?
- 2 How did Jake's personal life improve after he removed the apps?
- 3 How did his work life improve?
- 4 What does Jake do when he needs to use the Internet?
- 5 Does Jake still get distracted by the Internet?
- 6 What did blog readers think of Jake's experiment?
- 7 What did Jake's wife do?
- 8 Does Jake think everyone should simplify their phones? Why or why not?

### Vocabulary work

Read the sentences below. Find the phrasal verbs in the text which mean the same as the words in **bold**.

- 1 It **occupied** too much of his time.
- 2 He **postponed** making a change.
- 3 He didn't want to **stop using** his phone.
- 4 He **continued** his experiment for a month.
- 5 He doesn't always need to **research** information online.
- 6 He uses an app to **search for** his family and friends.

### What do you think?

Discuss in groups.

- Do you think doing Jake's experiment would improve your life? Why or why not?
- Do you think people spend too much time on their phones?
- Make a list of "phone rules" that would help people avoid addiction to their phones.

*You have to turn off your phone  
when you go to bed at night.*

*You must not look at your phone  
when you're talking to people.*



# How Jake Knapp Solved His Problem



Jake Knapp, a blogger and design partner at Google Ventures, knew he had a problem. His smartphone made him “twitchy” with anxiety. It distracted him from his wife and his kids. It took up too much time, time that could have been spent doing more important things. He knew he should make a change, but he put it off for a long time. Finally, he decided to do something about his problem.

- 1 Although Jake wanted to limit his phone use, he didn't want to give up his phone completely. So he did an experiment. He disabled Safari, deleted his email account, and uninstalled his most distracting apps. He kept a few apps that didn't distract him, including Phone, Messages, Maps, Uber, and his camera. He planned to do the experiment for only a week, but he kept it up for a month, and then two. He loved his freedom from distraction, and he's still living with his simplified phone.
- 2 The benefits? Knapp is more relaxed. He doesn't feel like he always has to check his messages or look up information online. “Times on the bus when I would have checked email, I listen to music or just look around,” Knapp observes. “At home, the phone becomes part of the stereo, and nothing more.” He has more free time, and his relationship with his family has improved. Knapp is also more productive at work. He finds that it's easier to concentrate without the distraction of his phone.
- 3 “The weird part is this: This experiment was supposed to be a hardship. Now? It feels like the easy way out. I not only don't want to go back, going back sounds really ... difficult. Think of all the things I'd have to keep track of. Managing notifications and streams and pings and bleeps can add up to a lot of work.”
- 4 Once in a while, Knapp does have to check his email or use the Internet. If he has to do something important, like confirm a flight, he re-enables the app and gets the information. When he's done, he disables the app again. And he does still get distracted by the Internet when he's using his laptop. He reads Twitter and email and the news more than he should. But at least he can't carry his laptop in his pocket.
- 5 Knapp wrote a blog post about his experiment, and it got 300,000 views. Some readers asked Knapp why he even keeps his phone. He responded, “There's so much I love about it. I listen to music on it all the time. The camera is amazing. Google Maps, location-based reminders, the weather forecast, Find Friends to track down my family, Uber ... all these things make me feel like I'm living in the future. In a good way. It's not that I don't enjoy my smartphone, it's just that I only want half of it.”
- 6 A lot of readers were supportive. Some tried the experiment themselves. But Knapp's biggest victory was when his own wife (after telling him he was crazy for six months) made her own phone distraction-free!
- 7 Does Knapp think that everyone should do the same thing? Not really. Some people have phones but aren't addicted to them. For them, there's really no reason to remove any apps. But for most people, Knapp thinks it's an idea worth considering.



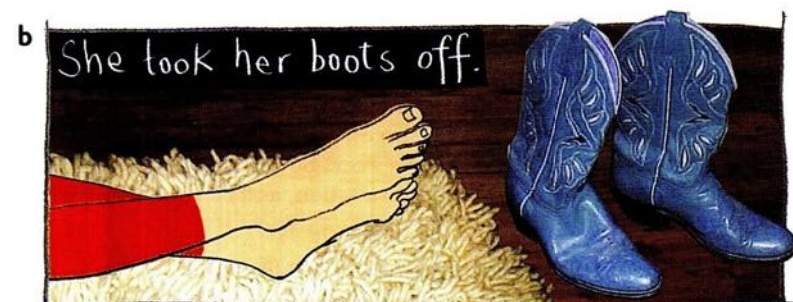
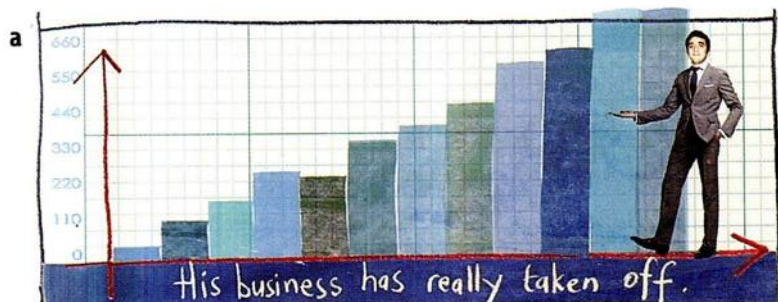


# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Phrasal verbs (I)

### Literal or idiomatic meanings?

- 1 Look at the cartoons. Which two meanings of *take off* are idiomatic? Which is literal?



- 2 In these groups of sentences which two phrasal verbs are idiomatic? Which is literal?
- 1 a He *brought up* five children on his own.  
b The porter will *bring* your bags *up* to your room.  
c She *brought up* the subject of money.
  - 2 a Do you think you'll *get through* your final exam?  
b I tried to call you but I couldn't *get through*.  
c His van couldn't *get through* that narrow gate.
  - 3 a The water was *cut off* because she didn't pay the bill.  
b Hello, hello? I can't hear you. I think we've been *cut off*.  
c She *cut off* a big piece of meat and gave it to the dog.
  - 4 a Her health has really *picked up* since she moved to a sunny climate.  
b Can you *pick up* my pen for me? It's under your chair.  
c I *picked up* some Spanish when I was traveling in Peru.

### Separable or inseparable?

- 3 These sentences all contain **separable** phrasal verbs. Replace the words in *italics* with a pronoun.
- 1 He turned on *the light*. He turned **it** on.
  - 2 She's taken off *her boots*. She's taken **them** off.
  - 3 He took up *golf* when he retired.
  - 4 We picked up *Spanish* very quickly.
  - 5 I looked up *the words* in my dictionary.
  - 6 They brought up *five children* really well.
  - 7 I've given up *sweets* at last.
- 4 These sentences all contain **inseparable** phrasal verbs. Replace the words in *italics* with a pronoun.
- 1 She takes after *her father*. She takes after **him**.
  - 2 Nearly everyone got through *the exam*.
  - 3 We looked after *their cats*.
  - 4 He gets along with *his sister*.
  - 5 I'm looking for *my glasses*.
  - 6 They're looking forward to *the vacation*.
  - 7 We couldn't put up with *the noise* any longer.

### Talking about you

- 5 Complete the phrasal verbs in the questions with **one** of the words in the box. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

with   up   to   after

- 1 Who do you take \_\_\_\_\_ in your family?
- 2 Do you get along \_\_\_\_\_ both your parents?
- 3 Have you recently taken \_\_\_\_\_ any new sports or hobbies?
- 4 Do you often look \_\_\_\_\_ words in your dictionary?
- 5 Are you looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ going on vacation soon?
- 6 Do you pick \_\_\_\_\_ foreign languages easily?
- 7 Do you have any bad habits that you want to give \_\_\_\_\_?

**CDI 46** Listen and compare your answers.



## Polite requests and offers

- 1 Match a line in **A** with a line in **B**. Who is talking to who? Where are the conversations taking place?

A	B
1 ____ It's a present. Do you think you could gift wrap it for me?	a Diet or regular?
2 ____ I'll give you a ride into town, if you like.	b Go ahead. It's very stuffy in here.
3 ____ Pump number 5. And could you give me a token for the car wash?	c One moment. I'll have to look it up.
4 ____ Two large Cokes, please.	d I'm sorry, it's not working today.
5 ____ Could you show me how you did that?	e Oh, sorry, I didn't realize that you couldn't get through.
6 ____ Would you mind moving your car?	f Yes, of course. I'll just take the tag off.
7 ____ Would you mind if I opened the window?	g That would be great. Could you drop me at the library?
8 ____ Can you tell me the code for Tokyo, please?	h Certainly. Just go to "System Preferences" and click on "Displays."

**CD1 47** Listen and check your answers.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 4.6–4.7 p. 134**

- 2 **CD1 48** Listen to four more conversations. What is each one about?

1 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 Listen again. What are the exact words of the request or offer? Try to remember the conversations with your partner.

### Role play

Work with a partner. Choose a situation and act it out in front of the class.

In a restaurant	
<b>Student A</b> you are a vegetarian customer	
<b>Student B</b> you are a waiter	
table by the window	eat fish
menu	dessert
ready to order	coffee
vegetarian	the check

In a clothing store	
<b>Student A</b> you want to buy a sweater	
<b>Student B</b> you are the sales assistant	
help	really suits
sweater in the window	on sale
only color	70% discount
try on – my size	bargain – take it

At home	
<b>Student A</b> you are having a party	
<b>Student B</b> you are a friend, offer to help	
come over and help	set up the music system
buy drinks, etc. on your way	choose some music
while preparing food	doorbell! – let the guests in
decorate the room, blow up balloons	



مرجع زبان ایرانیان



# 5

# Our changing world

Future forms • *may, might, could* • Word building • Arranging to meet

## STARTER

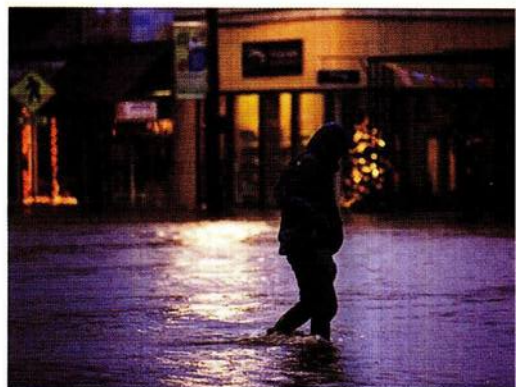
Scientists predict that global warming will change our world forever. Look at the photos. What do you think will happen?

*I think/don't think that ... will ...*

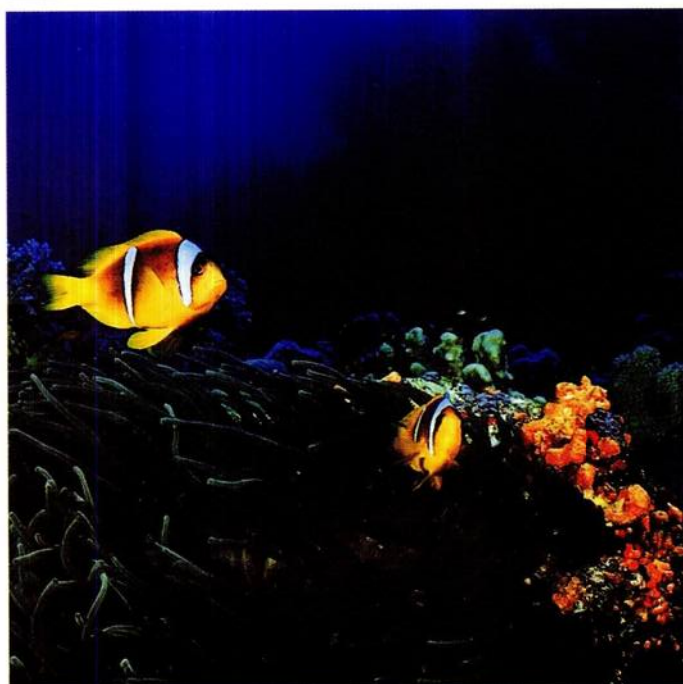
## THINGS OUR GRANDCHILDREN MAY NEVER SEE

### Making predictions

- 1 **CD2 2** Hannah and Dan are expecting their first baby. They're looking at news photos. Listen to their conversation. Answer the questions.
  - 1 What is Hannah worried about?
  - 2 Why is Dan surprised?
  - 3 What do the scientists say about the future?
  - 4 What examples of global warming does Hannah mention?
  - 5 How does Dan try to reassure Hannah? What does he say?
- 2 Listen again and complete the lines with the *exact* words from the conversation.
  - 1 What \_\_\_\_\_ the world \_\_\_\_\_ like when he or she grows up?
  - 2 Don't they make you worry about what \_\_\_\_\_ happen in the future?
  - 3 Of course, things \_\_\_\_\_ change a lot in the next hundred years, ...
  - 4 No one says it \_\_\_\_\_ get warmer or it \_\_\_\_\_ get warmer anymore.
  - 5 Scientists say that it definitely \_\_\_\_\_ warmer.
  - 6 They say temperatures \_\_\_\_\_ rise by up to 39°F.
  - 7 You \_\_\_\_\_ a baby soon.
  - 8 We \_\_\_\_\_ do our part.
  - 9 OK, but maybe it \_\_\_\_\_ help. It \_\_\_\_\_ too late already.







### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Which predictions are most sure? Which are less sure?

It **might/may/could** change.

It **is going to/will** change.

2 Which two answers to the question are correct?  
Which is not? Why?

"Can you come on Sunday?"

Sorry, I can't.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <b>I'm seeing</b>  <b>I'm going to see</b>  <b>I'll see</b> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;">             my grandmother.           </div>
-----------------	--

3 Which of these future forms expresses ...?

- an intention • a prediction • an arrangement

Our love **will last** forever.

I **am going to** start exercising next week.

We **are meeting** James at 11:00 in the conference room.

►► Grammar Reference 5.1–5.3 p. 135

### What do you think will happen?

3 Work in groups. Ask questions about the future with *Do you think ... will ...?* Answer with *may, might, could, or will*.

1 the earth/continue to get warmer?

Do you think the earth will continue to get warmer?

Yes, it will, definitely.

I'm not so sure. It might.

I don't think it will.

2 all the ice/melt at the Poles?

3 polar bears/become extinct?

4 more people/travel by train?

5 air travel/banned to reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions?

6 new sources of energy/found?

7 there/be more droughts or floods in the world?

8 lifestyles/have to change?

CD2 3 Listen and compare your ideas.

## PRACTICE

### Discussing grammar

1 Work with a partner. Decide which is the correct verb form.

- 1 A Have you decided about your vacation yet?  
B No, not yet. We've never been to Costa Rica so we *will / might* go there.
- 2 A *Will you / Are you going to* take an umbrella?  
B No, I'm not. The forecast says it'll / *might* be fine all day.
- 3 A Why are you making a list?  
B Because *I'll go / I'm going* shopping. Is there anything you want?
- 4 A Would you like to go out to dinner tonight?  
B Sorry, *I'll work / I'm working* late. How about tomorrow night? *I'll call / I'm calling* you.
- 5 A *What are you doing / will you do* Saturday night?  
B I'm not sure yet. I *will / may* go to a friend's or she *will / may* come here.
- 6 A Are you enjoying your job more now?  
B No, I'm not. *I'm going to / I will* look for another one.
- 7 A Your team's no good! It's 2–0 Brazil!  
B Come on. It's only half-time. I think they *are going to / could* still win.
- 8 A *You won't pass / aren't passing* your exams next month if you go out every night.  
B I know, *I might / I'll* study harder. I promise.

CD2 4 Listen and check. Practice the conversations, paying attention to stress and intonation.



## World weather warnings

2 What are these extreme types of weather?

thunderstorms floods hurricane heatwave snowstorms

3 **CD2 5** Listen to five short weather forecasts from around the world.  
Number the countries in the order you hear them.

The U.S.	Thailand	Mexico	South Africa	Canada
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

4 Listen again to the forecasts. Make notes about the weather in each country.

5 Work with a partner. Use your notes to describe the weather in each country.  
What's the weather forecast for where *you* are for the next few days?

### I think/don't think . . .

6 Make sentences with *I think ... will* and the prompts in A. Match them with a sentence in B.

*I think it'll be a cold night tonight. Wear warm clothes if you go out.*

A	B
1 it/a cold night tonight	___ But we'd better get moving.
2 I/get a new laptop	<u>1</u> Wear warm clothes if you go out.
3 I/take a cooking class	___ I want a touch screen this time.
4 you/like the movie	___ You have all the right qualifications.
5 we/get to the airport in time	___ It's a great story and really well cast.
6 you/get the job	___ I can't even boil an egg.

**CD2 6** Listen and check. Practice the lines.

7 Make sentences with *I don't think ... will* and the words in A in exercise 6.  
Match them with a sentence in C.

*I don't think it'll be a cold night tonight. You won't need to take a jacket.*

C
___ There's too much traffic.
___ I'll get lessons from my mom.
___ It may seem old-fashioned to you but it's OK for me.
<u>1</u> You won't need to take a jacket.
___ You're too young and you have no experience.
___ It's not really your kind of thing.

**CD2 7** Listen and check. Practice the lines and continue some of them.

### Talking about you

8 Make true sentences about *you*. Say them aloud in small groups.

- I/go for coffee after class
- I/go shopping this afternoon
- I/eat out tonight
- our teacher/tell us that our English/improving
- it/rain tomorrow
- my grandchildren/go on vacation on the moon

*I might go for a coffee.*

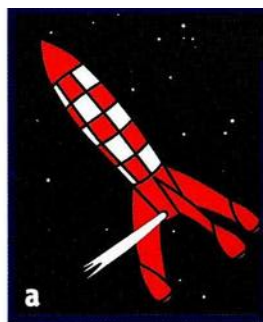
*I think/don't think I'll go for coffee.*



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

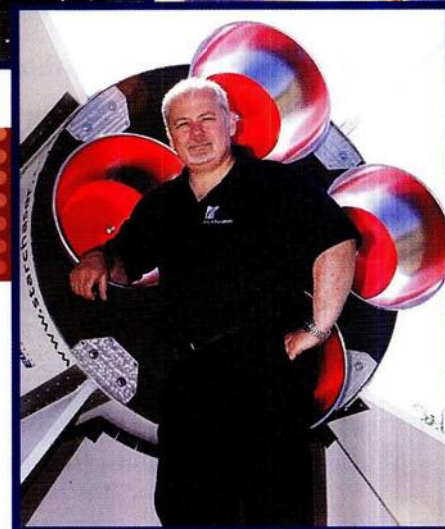
### Rocket man

- 1 Look at the pictures. Which rockets do you recognize?
- 2 Read about Steve Bennett. Who is he? What was his dream? How is it coming true? What do you understand by *space tourism*?



## Rocket Man Steve Bennett

As a little boy, like lots of little boys, Steve Bennett dreamed of becoming a spaceman, but unlike most little boys, Steve's dream is coming true. Steve is a leading rocket scientist and he's now building his own rocket. In a few years he's going to travel into space with two other passengers. He believes the age of mass space tourism is on the horizon.



- 3 **CD2 8** Steve was interviewed for a radio program called *Saturday Live*. Close your books. Listen to the interview.
  - What's your impression of Steve? Would you describe him as "a realist" or "a dreamer"? Professional or amateur?
  - Would you like to travel with him into space?
- 4 Work with a partner. Read the questions below. Which can you answer?
  - 1 Why is Steve so sure space tourism will happen? Why are Richard Branson and Jeff Bezos called "big names"?
  - 2 In what way does he compare space travel with the Internet?
  - 3 How will the passengers be like the early American astronauts? What are they *not* going to do?
  - 4 What influenced Steve as a small child? Why is his rocket called *Thunderstar*? What was he not allowed to watch?
  - 5 What was his parents' attitude about space travel?
  - 6 Why does he think it is necessary for humans to be in space?
  - 7 Why is skydiving good training for space tourists?
  - 8 How much has the couple paid?
  - 9 What does Steve think about every day?

**CD2 8** Listen again and check your ideas.

### What do you think?

- Is space tourism a good idea?
- Is space travel important to the world? Why/Why not?
- Should the money be spent on other things? Give examples.

### SPOKEN ENGLISH *pretty*

- 1 Look at how Steve uses *pretty* in the interview.
 

*I kept it **pretty** quiet . . .*  
*That's **pretty** much where the human race needs to be.*
- 2 The adverb *pretty* is often used in informal, spoken English. It means "not a lot" but "more than a little."
 

*She's **pretty** nice.*  
*The weather was **pretty** bad.*
- 3 Work with a partner. Ask the questions and reply including *pretty* in the answer.
  - 1 A Did your team win?  
B No, but they did well.
  - 2 A You haven't lost your cell phone again!  
B No, no. I'm sure it's in my bag somewhere.
  - 3 A Do you enjoy skiing?  
B I do, but I'm hopeless at it.
  - 4 A What do you think of my English?  
B I think it's good.

**CD2 9** Listen and check. Practice again.

▶▶ WRITING WRITING FOR TALKING **CD2 10** p. 103



## READING AND SPEAKING

### Life fifty years from now

- 1 The future is difficult to predict. What things in our lives today do you think scientists fifty years ago did NOT predict?
- 2 Look at the text "Life in 2065." Read the introduction and paragraph headings 1–7 only. What do *you* predict about the topics?
- 3 Which sentences a–g do you think go with which topic?
  - a Lost limbs will regrow, hearts will regenerate.
  - b An estimated 109 hectares of new land will be needed to grow enough food to feed them.
  - c And they'll be less expensive, because people will be likely to rent rather than buy them.
  - d It is now routine to extend the lives of laboratory animals by 40%.
  - e ... your fridge will "know" when you are low on milk or any other item, ...
  - f Soon their existence will be no more controversial than the existence of other galaxies 100 years ago.
  - g It could cause a global revulsion against eating meat ...
- 4 Read the article and put sentences a–g in the right place.
- 5 Are these statements true (✓) or false (X)?
  - 1 Women will be able to give birth at the age of 100.
  - 2 It will be possible to replace all the parts of the body.
  - 3 Animal parts will be used for human organ transplants.
  - 4 Big cities will rely on vertical farms for food supply.
  - 5 Scientists believe that if we can talk to animals, we won't want to eat them.
  - 6 Driverless cars will never replace human-operated cars.
  - 7 There could be an infinite number of other universes.
  - 8 The walls in your house will change color to suit your mood.
  - 9 Your armchair will help you do your housework.
  - 10 Pills will replace food.

### What do you think?

- Read the article again and underline the predictions that most surprise you.  
Which do you believe will definitely happen?  
Which might happen?  
Which do you believe won't happen?
- What predictions can you make? Choose from these topics:

transportation	jobs	television	communication
the home	food	clothes	sports

# Life in

An international group of forty scientists have made some very surprising predictions about the future. They say that in the next fifty years the way we live will change in extraordinary ways, beyond our wildest dreams. Here are some of their predictions. You may find some of them surprising. BEA ROSENTHAL reports.

## 1 Life expectancy

Within 50 years, living to 100 while still enjoying active, healthy lives will be the norm. Professor Richard Miller of the University of Michigan says: "We will be able to do the same for humans." So with regular injections, centenarians will be as vigorous as today's sixty-year-olds. Women will be able to give birth well into old age; their biological clocks could be extended by ten years.

## 2 Growing body parts

Professor Ellen Heber-Katz says: "People will take for granted that injured or diseased organs can be repaired in much the same way as we fix a car. Damaged parts will be replaced. Within 50 years whole-body replacement will be routine." But doctors will need huge supplies of organs for transplant. Where will they come from? Scientists say these could be grown inside animals from human cells.

## 3 Farming

By the year 2065, about 80% of the world's population will live in urban centers. The human population will increase by about three billion between now and then. How will it be possible to feed all those people? A potential solution is vertical farming. Vertical farms, many stories high, will be built in the middle of the world's big cities. They will create urban renewal, sustainable production of a safe and varied supply (year-round crop production), and improved ecosystems.

## 4 Understanding animals

Thanks to a device which can "read" emotions, feelings, and thoughts, we will be able to "talk" to animals. The story of Dr. Dolittle\* will be fact, not fiction. "This could first work with primates, then mammals, then other vertebrates, including fish," says Professor Daniel Pauly from Canada. "so we might all become vegetarian."

\* fictional character for children



# 2065

## 5 Cars

Just a few years ago, driverless cars seemed like science fiction. Now they are a reality, and will be on the roads soon. Driverless cars have a number of important benefits. First, they are safer, and will result in fewer accidents.  But it is unclear whether, or when, they will completely replace human drivers. Technology analyst Louis Basenese believes that human-operated cars will someday disappear. "I have no doubt that a driverless future is our ultimate destination. But we have a long road trip ahead of us before we arrive," he says.

## 6 Parallel universes

Advances in quantum physics will prove that there are parallel universes. In fact there may be an infinite number of them. These universes will contain space, time, and some of them may even contain you in a slightly different form. For years parallel universes only existed in the works of science fiction, but now Professor Max Tegmark says: "

## 7 Our homes

What might our houses be like in the second half of the 21st century? This is Professor Greenfield's prediction:

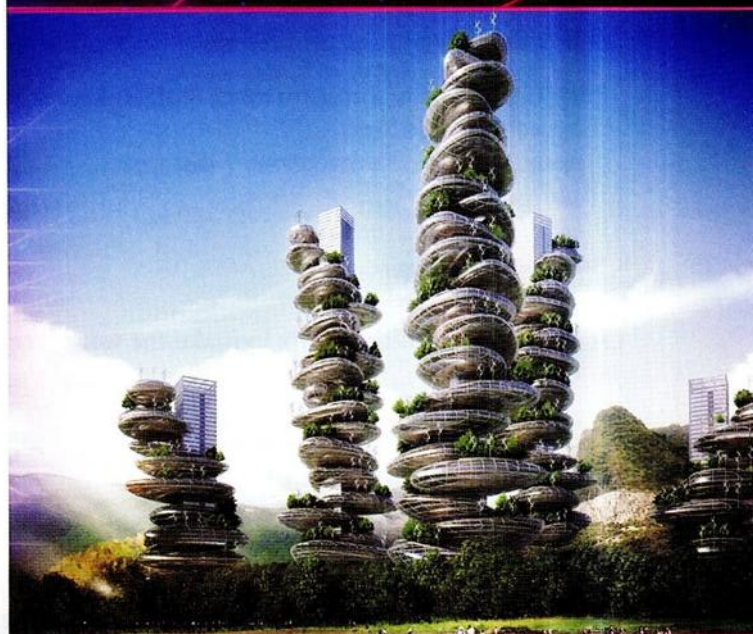
As you enter the living room, sensors will detect your presence and the walls will start to glow. Talk to the walls and, activated by your voice, they will change to a color of your choice, "pink" to "green" to "blue," whatever suits your mood.

Sink into your glowing cyber-armchair, relax in the knowledge that the house computer will perform all your everyday household tasks. The voice system in the chair will address you by name and advise a change in position that will be better for your spine.

In the kitchen,  and it will automatically send orders to the supermarket. However, it is in the kitchen where "new" meets "old." Food remains in its old-fashioned form. Pills, so confidently predicted in the 20th-century to replace food, exist, but nobody wants them. There is too much pleasure in cooking, chewing, and tasting all kinds of food.

## Finally

Predicting the future has occupied humankind for generations. However predictions have not always been correct. The huge influence of many of today's technical marvels, such as the Internet or cell phones, was never predicted.





## VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

### Word building – suffixes and prefixes

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the information on suffixes.

**SUFFIXES** are used to form different parts of speech.

What endings do you notice on these words?

What part of speech are they?

act action active actively

What part of speech are the words in the box?

What are the different word endings?

prediction	colorful	excitement	suitable
shorten	confidently	creative	business
automatically	imagination	qualify	careless

- 2 Look at the information on prefixes.

**PREFIXES** are used to change the meaning of words. Look at these words with prefixes.

predict regrow extraordinary disappear

Which means ...?

before outside again

Which is a negative prefix?

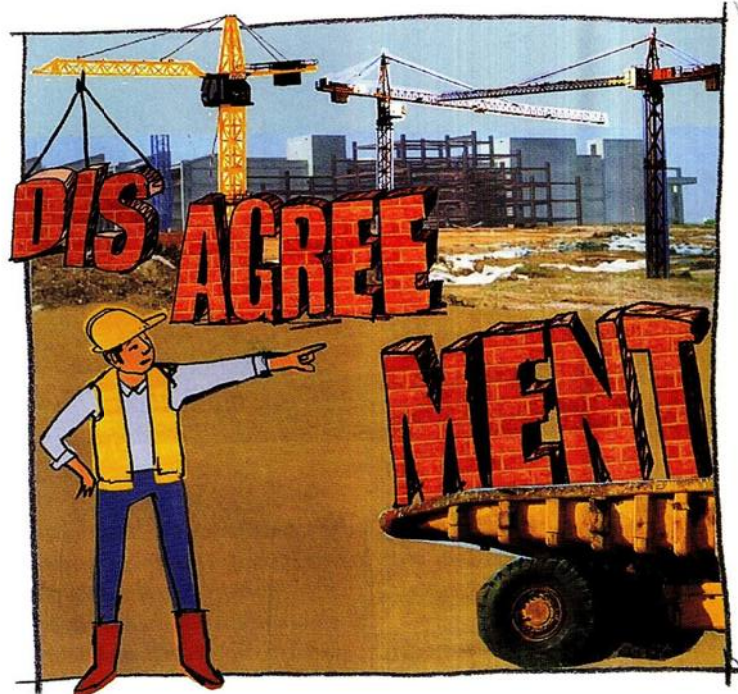
Choose a prefix from the box to make the words mean the opposite.

un- in- im- il- dis- ir-

- |            |                   |             |
|------------|-------------------|-------------|
| 1 possible | <b>impossible</b> | 5 order     |
| 2 patient  |                   | 6 regular   |
| 3 lucky    |                   | 7 formal    |
| 4 legal    |                   | 8 conscious |

- 3 Work in two groups. Make new words with the base words using the suffixes and/or the prefixes.  
Which group can make the most words?

PREFIX	BASE WORD	SUFFIX
un-	agree	<b>-ness</b>
	arrange	
	conscious	
	expense	<b>-ment</b> <b>-ion</b>
im- re-	happy	
	help	<b>-ful</b>
dis-	kind	
	polite	<b>-less</b> <b>-able</b>
mis- in-	react	
	success	<b>-ive</b>
	understand	
	use	



- 4 Complete the sentences with a word from exercise 3.

- Carlos and Diana don't get along at all. They dis\_\_\_\_\_ about everything.
- Money does not always lead to h\_\_\_\_\_ness.
- My aunt says today's kids are all rude and im\_\_\_\_\_.
- Thanks for your advice, it was really h\_\_\_\_\_ful. I really appreciate your k\_\_\_\_\_ness.
- My dad is u\_\_\_\_\_less at fixing his computer. I always have to help him.
- Please don't mis\_\_\_\_\_ me. I didn't mean to be un\_\_\_\_\_. I'm really sorry.
- Timmy fell off his bike and hit his head. He was un\_\_\_\_\_ for a few hours.
- What was your wife's re\_\_\_\_\_ion when she heard you'd won the lottery?

**CD2 11** Listen and check.

### Changing word stress

- 5 In some words the stressed syllable changes in the different forms. Read aloud these pairs of words.

'athlete	ath'letic	pre'fer	'preference
i'magine	imagi'nation	em'ployer	emplo'yee

**CD2 12** Listen and check. Practice again.

- 6 **CD2 13** Listen to four short conversations. Write down the pairs of words with stress changes. Practice the conversations.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Arranging to meet

- 1 **CD2 14** Listen to two friends, Gary and Mike, arranging to meet over the weekend. Complete the calendars.

Gary	Mike
<b>22 FRI</b> MORNING AFTERNOON EVENING	<b>22 Friday</b> morning afternoon <i>finish work early</i> evening
<b>23 SAT</b> MORNING AFTERNOON EVENING	<b>23 Saturday</b> morning afternoon evening
<b>24 SUN</b> MORNING	<b>24 Sunday</b> morning

Why is it difficult to find a time? Where and when do they finally agree to meet?

### Making suggestions

- 2 **CD2 14** Listen again to the conversation. Complete the suggestions with the exact words Gary and Mike say.

- I was \_\_\_\_\_ if we \_\_\_\_\_ meet.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ meet you in the afternoon.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday afternoon?
- Is Saturday evening \_\_\_\_\_?
- Why \_\_\_\_\_ we meet at the station?
- \_\_\_\_\_ meet there for breakfast.
- \_\_\_\_\_ about ten o'clock?
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it 10:30?

### Role play

- 3 It is Saturday morning. You want to meet a friend over the weekend. Fill in your calendar. What are you doing this weekend? When are you free?

<b>23 Saturday</b>	
Morning	
Afternoon	
Evening	
<b>24 Sunday</b>	
Morning	
Afternoon	
Evening	

- 4 Find a partner. Make suggestions and arrange to meet.

Are you doing anything on Saturday morning?

I'm afraid I'm going ...

What about the afternoon?

Let me see ...

I was wondering if you'd like to ...

When you have finished, tell the class when and where you're meeting.

*We're meeting on Saturday afternoon. We're going ...*



# 6

## What matters to me

Information questions • Adjectives and adverbs • In a department store

### STARTER

- 1 Think of someone in the room. Don't say who it is.  
The other students must ask questions to find out who it is.

*Is it a male or a female?*

*What color is her hair?*

*Does she have blue eyes?*

*What kind of clothes does she wear?*

- 2 Do the same about someone famous.

## DESCRIPTIONS

### Information questions

- 1 Match a question with an answer.

#### DESCRIBING PEOPLE

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 <u>e</u> What's she like?               | a She's in her twenties.                      |
| 2 ___ What does she look like?            | b She likes painting.                         |
| 3 ___ What does she like doing?           | c Five foot eight.                            |
| 4 ___ How tall is she?                    | d She's tall and pretty.                      |
| 5 ___ What color are her eyes?            | e She's really nice. Very easygoing.          |
| 6 ___ How old is she?                     | f She's fine.                                 |
| 7 ___ What kind of clothes does she wear? | g Brown.                                      |
| 8 ___ What's her hair like?               | h It's sort of long, dark, and curly.         |
| 9 ___ How is she?                         | i Not formal. Casual. She has a lot of style. |

**CD2 15** Listen and check. Work with a partner. Practice the questions and answers. Cover one column, then the other.

- 2 Ask and answer the questions about a relative.

**What's your brother like?**

**He's a great guy, very sweet. You'd like him.**

You can use the ideas in the box to help.

a lot of fun	a bit quiet	very sociable	good-looking
pretty dark	attractive	medium height	about six feet
in his mid-twenties	straight	short	curly





3 Underline the correct answer.

### DESCRIBING PLACES

- What's your apartment like?  
*It's modern, but it's cozy. / I like it.*
- How big is it?  
*Yes, it is pretty big. / About 850 square feet.*
- How many rooms are there?  
*There's a lot of room. / There are three rooms.*
- What size is the kitchen?  
*It's square. / Nine feet by eight.*
- Which floor is it on?  
*Wooden. / The fourth.*
- Which part of town is it in?  
*It's south of the river. / I get the number 79 bus.*
- How far is it to the stores?  
*Just five minutes. / It takes half an hour.*

**CD2 16** Listen and check. With your partner, practice the questions and answers.

- 4 Ask and answer questions about where you live. You can use the ideas in the box to help.

on an old block    noisy    has a view of ...  
a terrace where we can sit outside  
first floor    enormous    tiny

What's your apartment like?

It's a bit small, but  
it's comfortable.

- 5 Look at the questions for describing things. Put a word from the box into each question.

much    How    brand    of    long    for    size

### DESCRIBING THINGS

- What \_\_\_\_\_ is it? *Sony.*
- How \_\_\_\_\_ does it weigh? *3 pounds.*
- What's it made \_\_\_\_\_? *Carbon and titanium.*
- What's this button \_\_\_\_\_? *It turns it on.*
- \_\_\_\_\_ big is the screen? *13.2 inches.*
- How \_\_\_\_\_ is the battery life? *Eight hours.*
- What \_\_\_\_\_ is the hard drive? *256 gigabytes.*

**CD2 17** Listen and check. With your partner, practice the questions and answers.

- 6 Ask and answer similar questions about your laptop/ cell phone/tablet.

What brand is it?

It's a Dell.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- What and which can be followed by a noun.  
**What color/Which floor ... ?**  
Find examples on these pages.
  - How can be followed by an adjective or an adverb.  
**How tall/far ... ?**  
Find examples.
  - Match a question and an answer.  
What's she like?    Very well, thanks.  
How is she?    Very nice and pretty.
- Grammar Reference 6.1–6.2 p. 136

## PRACTICE

### Getting information

Ask questions for these situations.

- Do you have whole wheat bread?  
White bread?  
*What kind of bread do you have?*
- Would you like vanilla ice cream?  
Strawberry? Chocolate?
- Do we go left or right at the traffic lights?  
Or straight?
- Is your laptop a Mac? A PC?
- Do you like pasta? Hamburgers? Spicy food?
- Is that your sister's top you're wearing?  
Suzie's? Or your own?
- Does it take 30 minutes to get to the airport?  
An hour?
- Is your house half a mile from the beach?  
One mile?
- Do you go to the movies once a week?  
Every other day?
- Do two of you want coffee? Four of you?  
All of you?
- Do you wear size eight shoes? Nine? Ten?

**CD2 18** Listen and compare.





## VOCABULARY

### Adjectives

- 1 Work in pairs. Look at advertisements 1–3. Which advertisement is for ...?  
a babysitter something to eat a vacation destination
- 2 Find some adjectives in the ads.

**1 Mamma Mia**

Mamma Mia pasta sauces. From much-loved Bolognese to our latest garlic and basil. Made from the finest organic ingredients in the old-fashioned way.


**So tempting!  
Just like homemade.  
You'll be amazed!**



**2 Cozumel**

Come to Cozumel, our world famous vacation paradise, and you'll leave relaxed and suntanned!

Sandy beaches. Exciting nightlife. Visit the ancient ruins, go walking or scuba diving, or just take it easy! You won't be disappointed.



- 3 Responsible, experienced 19-year-old woman available for childcare this summer.**

I'm loving, active, creative, and I adore kids. I'm an excellent driver and can take your children on fun-filled adventures to the beach, the library and museums. Come home after work to happy, tired kids! Flexible hours and rates.

### -ed and -ing adjectives

- 3 How do these words end in the advertisements?  
amaz- relax- excit- disappoint- tir- lov-  
Complete the sentences with one of these adjectives ending in -ed or -ing.
- 1 Having a massage is very relaxing.
- 2 I was \_\_\_\_\_ when they offered me the job. I was sure I'd blown the interview.
- 3 Our vacation was \_\_\_\_\_. It rained every day.
- 4 I was so \_\_\_\_\_ on my wedding day, I couldn't eat.
- 5 The trip was very \_\_\_\_\_. I was exhausted.
- 6 He gives his children lots of hugs and kisses. He's very \_\_\_\_\_.

### Adjectives and nouns that go together

- 4 Some adjectives and nouns often go together.

*sandy beach ancient ruins*

Match an adjective and a noun. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

adjective	noun
fresh latest pretty	friend fruit clothes
clear fast crowded	fashions hair job
casual close handsome	restaurant food woman
straight cozy challenging	man room sky

**CD2 19** Listen and check.

### Compound adjectives

- 5 Find some compound adjectives in the ads.

*much-loved old-fashioned*

Match a word from A and B to make compound adjectives.

A	B
well (x2) full long good	new dressed hand behaved
second eye brand	time looking catching term

Think of a noun that goes with each adjective. What's the opposite?

*full-time job part-time job*

- 6 Test each other on the compound adjectives in exercise 5.

Another word for handsome.

good-looking

What kind of job is it if you work forty hours a week?

full-time



## Adverbs

- 1 Look at advertisements 4–6. Which ad is for ...?  
a pain killer      a watch      a house to rent

- 2 Find adverbs that end in *-ly* in advertisements 4 and 5.

*simply      beautifully*

Find some adverbs that don't end in *-ly* in advertisement 6.

*just      too*



**4**

**LOG FIRES  
IN THE  
CATSKILLS**



\$1,250 pw  
Live simply in this beautifully restored 19th century country cottage. Sit peacefully in front of the fire. Situated in a charming town, sleeps 6, fully equipped.  
andycurran@fastnetus.com


**5**

You don't actually own one of our handmade instruments. You merely look after it for the next generation.  
Probably the best investment you'll ever make.

**6** Painful headaches that just won't go? Backache, too?  
*Relieve aches and pains fast with Cuprodil! Cuprodil goes straight to the pain.*

You'll soon feel good again!



**CUPRODIL**

## Adverbs and verbs that go together

- 3 Some verbs and adverbs often go together.

*drive carefully      walk slowly      explain clearly*

Match a verb and an adverb. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

verb	adverb
wait    sit    behave	badly    peacefully    heavily
shine    fight    leave	quickly    patiently    fluently
whisper    die    rain	suddenly    deeply    brightly
act    speak    breathe	comfortably    softly    bravely

- 4 Act out some of the verbs and adverbs in front of the class.

*You're driving carefully!*

*You're waiting patiently!*

## Adverbs that don't end in *-ly*

- 5 Complete the sentences with an adverb from the box.

again	fast	hard	loud	wrong
even	right	straight	together	almost

- Peter and I lived \_\_\_\_\_ in college.
- He's a good student. He tries \_\_\_\_\_.
- "Where's the town hall?" "Go \_\_\_\_\_ ahead."
- Say that \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't hear you.
- Don't talk so \_\_\_\_\_! Everyone can hear you.
- Why do you drive so \_\_\_\_\_? Slow down!
- His wife's name is Mariana, not Maria! Get it \_\_\_\_\_.
- The vacation was a disaster. Everything went \_\_\_\_\_.
- This room is cool, \_\_\_\_\_ in summer.
- "Are you ready?" "\_\_\_\_\_. Give me another five minutes."

**CD2 20** Listen and check.

## Project – My most treasured possession

- 1 **CD2 21** Listen to three people describing what they'd save if their home was on fire. What is it? Why would they save it?

- 2 What is *your* most treasured possession? Prepare to talk about it.

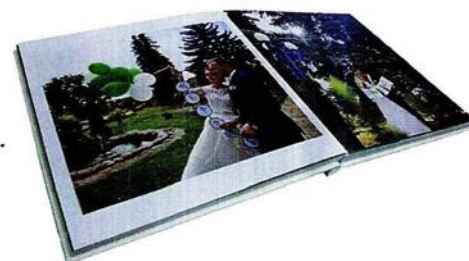
*I couldn't live without my ...*

*It's important to me because ...*

*It was given to me by ...*

*I've had it for ...*

*It reminds me of ...*





## READING AND SPEAKING

### The heart of the home

- 1 Close your eyes and think of your kitchen at home.
  - Who's in it? • What's happening?
  - What are they doing? • What can you smell?
- 2 Read the introduction to **MY KITCHEN** at the top of page 47. Do you agree that the kitchen is the heart of the home? Is it where *your* family gets together?

- 3 Work in three groups.

**Group A** Read about **Santina**, from Italy.

**Group B** Read about **Elizabeth**, from the United States.

**Group C** Read about **Lakshamma**, from India.

Answer the questions.

- 1 What does she do?
  - 2 What does her husband do?
  - 3 Where does she live?
  - 4 What's her house like?
  - 5 How does she feel about her kitchen?
  - 6 Is her life easy or difficult?
  - 7 What does her family eat?
  - 8 Does she seem to be happy?
  - 9 What do you think she worries about?
- 4 Find a partner from the other groups. Compare and swap information.
  - 5 Which person is most likely to say ...?
    - 1 "I can never decide where to go swimming."
    - 2 "We have found you a very nice girl. Why won't you marry her?"
    - 3 "If anyone wants me, I'm weeding and watering."
    - 4 "I'm too busy to cook today."
    - 5 "I live my life in tune with nature."
    - 6 "I'd love to have a new kitchen."

### What do you think?

In your opinion, who ...?

- is the wealthiest materially
- is the happiest spiritually
- is the most creative cook
- has the hardest life

Give reasons for your answers.

### Speaking

- 1 What food do you most associate with home? Is there a particular day of the week or time of year when you eat it?
- 2 Talk about your kitchen. Answer questions 1–12 from the text.

► **WRITING DESCRIBING A PLACE p. 104**

# MY KITCHEN

## Italy

Homemaker **Santina Corvaglia**, 61, lives in an old two bedroom farmhouse in southeast Italy with her husband, **Carlo**, 56, who's a mechanic. They have a 31-year-old daughter, **Francesca**.



- 1 **Q How much is your house worth?**  
**A** About \$80,000.
- 2 **Q What is your kitchen like?**  
**A** It's not very big. It's my little corner of the house. It's where I belong, and where I'm happiest.
- 3 **Q How big is it?**  
**A** 129 sq. ft.
- 4 **Q What's your favorite thing?**  
**A** My cabinets full of different Italian herbs.
- 5 **Q How much time do you spend in the kitchen?**  
**A** About four hours every day. And the same in the garden.
- 6 **Q How many meals do you cook a day?**  
**A** Three. For the three of us, and whoever comes by—friends, relatives. My family is the most important thing to me. I want grandchildren!
- 7 **Q What's in your fridge and cabinets?**  
**A** Vegetables, water, milk, eggs, cheese, sausages, lemonade, butter, pasta, canned tomatoes, beans, honey, and homemade jam.
- Q What would make your life easier in the kitchen?**  
**A** Nothing. I have all I need.
- 9 **Q Who helps you?**  
**A** My daughter helps sometimes. My husband wouldn't dream of it, and I wouldn't want him to.
- 10 **Q How often do you sit down and eat together as a family?**  
**A** Twice a day.
- 11 **Q How much do you spend on groceries every week?**  
**A** I grow my own vegetables, and we have chickens and rabbits, so I only spend about \$50 a week. But there is a drought this year.
- 12 **Q What can you see from your kitchen windows?**  
**A** My garden, my orchard, and my olive trees.



The kitchen is the **heart of the home**. It's where the family gets together for the important things in life – food, conversation, and celebration. Three women from around the world invite us into their kitchens. PENNY ROGERS reports.



## California, U.S.

Elizabeth Anne Hogan, 45, is a lifestyle coach living in a 16-room house on the beach in California. It has six bathrooms, five bedrooms, and a swimming pool. Her husband, Mike, 47, is a businessman. They have two children: Hailey, 14, and Hanna, 9.



- 1 **Q How much is your house worth?**  
**A** About \$800,000.
- 2 **Q What is your kitchen like?**  
**A** The kitchen is futuristic. I don't know how everything works, so it's all a bit "alien" to me.
- 3 **Q How big is it?**  
**A** 200 sq. ft.
- 4 **Q What's your favorite thing?**  
**A** The two ovens, but they take up too much space.
- 5 **Q How much time do you spend in the kitchen?**  
**A** About seven to eight hours a day. But not cooking. It's the room we live in.
- 6 **Q How many meals do you cook a day?**  
**A** Two to three, if you count cereal and bagels. But only one, if you mean actually doing things with real food.
- 7 **Q What's in your fridge and cabinets?**  
**A** Fruit, vegetables, chips, milk, yogurt, takeout, cheeses, and cereal. A lot of takeout food. And dog food.
- 8 **Q What would make your life easier in the kitchen?**  
**A** A chef. We do everything for the kids ourselves. No nannies, housekeepers, or cooks for them.
- 9 **Q Who helps you?**  
**A** My husband and kids take food out of takeout containers and put it on plates. Does that count as helping?
- 10 **Q How often do you sit down and eat together as a family?**  
**A** Every morning and evening.
- 11 **Q How much do you spend on groceries every week?**  
**A** \$200. Everything is low-fat and organic, pre-packed and prepared. It's all delivered.
- 12 **Q What can you see from your kitchen windows?**  
**A** A panoramic, 180-degree view of the Pacific Ocean.

## India

Lakshamma, 50, is a homemaker living in a three-roomed mud hut near Bangalore. Her husband, Adaviyappa, 55, works on a cattle farm. They have two sons, Gangaraju, 30, and Ravi, 25, who both live at home.



- 1 **Q How much is your house worth?**  
**A** To rebuild it would cost about \$2,000.
- 2 **Q What is your kitchen like?**  
**A** It's small and dark. I dislike just about everything about it. It's so old.
- 3 **Q How big is it?**  
**A** 54 sq. ft.
- 4 **Q What's your favorite thing?**  
**A** The stone where I grind my spices.
- 5 **Q How much time do you spend in the kitchen?**  
**A** Six to seven hours a day—sometimes more. I'm always cooking or washing.
- 6 **Q How many meals do you cook a day?**  
**A** Two or three.
- 7 **Q What's in your fridge and cabinets?**  
**A** We don't have a fridge. On shelves I have lentils, rice, spices such as chilies, turmeric powder, some vegetables, and salt.
- 8 **Q What would make your life easier in the kitchen?**  
**A** Running water. A daughter-in-law would be good as well! But God has given me life and I am grateful.
- 9 **Q Who helps you?**  
**A** My sons help when they have time. My husband doesn't help.
- 10 **Q How often do you sit down and eat together as a family?**  
**A** Men eat before women in our community. We don't eat together.
- 11 **Q How much do you spend on groceries every week?**  
**A** \$15. Sometimes less. It depends how much money we have.
- 12 **Q What can you see from your kitchen windows?**  
**A** Not much! I have no windows in my kitchen.



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### My closest relative

- Discuss the statements in small groups. Are they true for your family?
  - Mothers feel closer to their sons.  
Fathers feel closer to their daughters.
  - The first-born child is ambitious, responsible, dominant, and insecure.  
The second child is free, independent, creative, and easygoing.  
The last-born child is the baby – spoiled, happy, confident, and secure.
- CD2 22** Listen to five people talking about who they feel closest to in their family. Complete the chart.

	Jen	Brett	Julia	Susan	Chris
I feel closest to ...	my mother				
He/she is easy to talk to.	✓				
We do things together.					
We have a similar character.					
I like the way he/she thinks.					
We are different.					

- Who said these expressions? What do you understand by them?
  - "We have our ups and downs, of course ..."
  - "We don't really see eye to eye on anything."
  - "In many ways she drives me crazy."
  - "We're like oil and water."
  - "They fight like cats and dogs."

### SPOKEN ENGLISH Adding Emphasis

- We can change the order of words in a sentence to add emphasis. What is the more usual word order for these sentences?
  - She's very open, my mother.*
  - My father I don't really get along with.*
  - My mother I hardly ever see.*
  - He's pretty cool, my dad.*
  - Me, I'm a lot quieter.*
- Notice how these sentences add emphasis.
 

**What I like about her is her attitude.**

**What I like about him is that he's interesting and interested.**

**The thing I love about her is the way everyone knows her.**
- What could people say about ...?
  - Joe: his sense of humor  
the way he makes everyone laugh
  - Tina: her kindness  
the way she makes everyone feel good
  - Beth: her attitude to life  
the fact she doesn't care what other people think

### Discussion

- Work in pairs. Discuss who you feel closest to in your family, and why.
- Work in groups of four. Who has a similar family relationship to yours?
- Discuss as a class. Which family member are most people closest to?



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### In a department store

- 1 What are the big department stores in your town? What are they famous for? Do you like shopping in them?
- 2 Look at the board showing where the various departments are in a store.

Where would you find ...?

- a tie  
*in menswear, on the first floor*
- a wallet
- earrings
- a saucepan
- a hairdryer
- shower gel
- a doll
- speakers
- women's boots
- the ladies' room
- a birthday card
- a shaving mirror
- lipstick
- a vase
- sneakers
- a sofa
- sheets
- a suitcase
- a pair of tights
- a light snack

### 4 Fourth Floor

Toys and Babywear  
Hair Salon  
TV, Audio, and Phones  
Sports

### 3 Third Floor

Furniture  
Linens  
Bathroom Accessories  
The Terrace Cafeteria  
Restrooms  
Baby Facilities

### 2 Second Floor

Ladies' Fashions  
Lingerie  
Leather goods  
Luggage

### 1 First Floor

Menswear  
Stationery  
Toiletries  
Jewelry  
Cosmetics

### B Basement

Kitchenware  
China and Glassware  
Electrical Appliances

- 3 In which department could you see these signs?

a.

Cut and blow dry \$50  
Highlights from \$70

b.

Buy two coffee mugs, get one free!

c.

Travel in style—  
matching bags for  
long weekend breaks  
or short vacations

d.

Half price!  
Final clearance  
on men's sweaters  
before the spring!

e.

Customers are reminded  
that only food and  
drink purchased on  
these premises may be  
consumed here

f.

Back to school!  
Beat the rush. Get  
your pens, paper,  
and folders NOW!

- 4 Which of these two signs ...?

- is telling you how to take things back
- is inviting you to save as you spend

Open a loyalty card  
today and you will  
receive a 10% discount  
on all your purchases.

If goods are returned in  
their original packaging  
with a receipt within  
28 days we will offer an  
exchange or refund.

- 5 **CD2 23** Listen to some conversations in a department store. Which department are they in? What are they trying to buy?

- 6 Listen again and complete the lines.

- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you wear?  
B Nine. That's 41, isn't it?  
A Uh, no, \_\_\_\_\_ 43 would be more comfortable, sir.
- 2 B I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_. We're \_\_\_\_\_ that size.  
A Will you \_\_\_\_\_ any more \_\_\_\_\_?  
B We should \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of the week.
- 3 A Do you have \_\_\_\_\_?  
B No, we don't. They all \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A Would you like me \_\_\_\_\_?  
B Ooh, \_\_\_\_\_! Thank you so much!
- 5 A It \_\_\_\_\_. It's too tight.  
B Too bad. It \_\_\_\_\_. What \_\_\_\_\_ of?  
A Cashmere. It's so soft!
- 6 A Keep your \_\_\_\_\_. That's your warranty.  
B \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ for?  
A For a year.

With a partner, practice the conversations.

- 7 Practice having conversations in other departments. Act them out in front of the class.

## STORE GUIDE

Oxford Online Skills Program  
Log in for additional online learning



# 7

## Passions and fashions

Present perfect – simple, continuous, passive • Things I'm passionate about • Making the right noises

### STARTER

Talk about three things you have NEVER done.

I've NEVER been to a baseball game.

Me neither. I hate baseball.

I've NEVER had a pet.

I have. I've had two dogs and a cat.

I've NEVER read a Harry Potter book.

Really? I've read them all.

### 500 MILLION BOOKS SOLD!

Present Perfect – simple, continuous, passive

- 1 Look at the book titles. Have you read any of them or seen the movies? Do you know anything about the author, J.K. Rowling?

*Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone (1997)*

*Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets (1998)*

*Harry Potter and the Prisoner of Azkaban (1999)*

*Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire (2000)*

*Harry Potter and the Order of the Phoenix (2003)*

*Harry Potter and the Half-blood Prince (2005)*

*Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows (2007)*

- 2 Complete the questions about J.K. Rowling. Use *did*, *was*, *has*, or *have*.

- 1 Where and when \_\_\_\_\_ she born?
- 2 When \_\_\_\_\_ she write her first story? What \_\_\_\_\_ it about?
- 3 What \_\_\_\_\_ she doing when she had the idea for Harry Potter?
- 4 Where \_\_\_\_\_ she teach English?
- 5 When \_\_\_\_\_ the first Harry Potter book published?
- 6 How long \_\_\_\_\_ she been writing books?
- 7 How many Harry Potter books \_\_\_\_\_ she write?
- 8 How many children \_\_\_\_\_ she had?
- 9 How many books \_\_\_\_\_ been sold?
- 10 Which books \_\_\_\_\_ been made into movies?
- 11 How much money \_\_\_\_\_ she made?
- 12 How many authors \_\_\_\_\_ become billionaires?

- 3 **CD2 24** Read and listen about J.K. Rowling. What does J.K. stand for?

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 2.

**CD2 25** Listen and check.



# J.K. ROWLING

AUTHOR AND BILLIONAIRE

## THE EARLY YEARS

Joanne Kathleen Rowling, author of the best-selling Harry Potter series of books, was born in 1965, near Bristol, England. Her birthday, July 31, is the same as her famous hero, Harry Potter.

## School days

Joanne did well in school. Her favorite subjects were English and foreign languages, and she studied French in school. She graduated in 1986 and over the next few years had a variety of jobs. However, her passion was writing. She had written her first story, "Rabbit," about a rabbit with measles, at age six.

## Harry Potter is born

She started writing the first Harry Potter book in 1990. The idea for Harry – a lonely 11-year-old orphan who is actually a wizard – came to Rowling while she was traveling by train between Manchester and London. Although she left England a short time after that to teach English in Portugal, she continued to write Harry's story.

She returned to Britain in 1993 and settled in Scotland. It was a difficult time – she was out of work and depressed – but finally completed her first book, *Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone*. It was published in Britain in 1997 and quickly became a hit with both children and adults.

## J.K. ROWLING TODAY

JKR wrote Harry Potter books for nearly 27 years. She wrote the first drafts with pen and paper and each book took about one year to complete. The last book in the series, *Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows*, came out in July 2007. Her books have won numerous awards including Children's Book of the Year.

Since completing the Harry Potter series, she has written several novels for adults, including the beginning of a detective series.

She married Dr. Neil Murray in 2001. She has had three children: a boy, David, and two girls, Mackenzie and Jessica.

## Fans all over the world

The books have been translated into 68 languages, and over 500 million copies have been sold worldwide. All of the books have been made into movies. She has become the highest-earning woman in Britain, richer than the Queen! She has made over one billion dollars. This makes her the first person ever to have become a billionaire from writing books.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Name the three tenses. Why are they used?

She **lives** in Scotland.

She **lived** in Portugal for three years.

She's **lived** in Scotland since 1993.

She's **lived** in England, Portugal, and Scotland.

2 Which question asks about the activity? Which asks about the quantity?

How long **has** she **been writing** books?

How many **has** she **written**?

3 These sentences sound unnatural in the active. Make them passive. Find them in the text.

People have translated her books into 68 languages.

People have sold 500 million copies of her books.

People have made all of the books into movies.

►► Grammar Reference 7.1–7.6 pp. 136–138

5 **CD2 26** Jack, aged 10, is a big fan of the Harry Potter books. Listen and complete the questions he was asked. What are his answers?

1 How long have you been a fan of the books?

2 How many of the books \_\_\_\_\_?

3 Which \_\_\_\_\_ like best?

4 \_\_\_\_\_ any of the Harry Potter movies? \_\_\_\_\_ like them all?

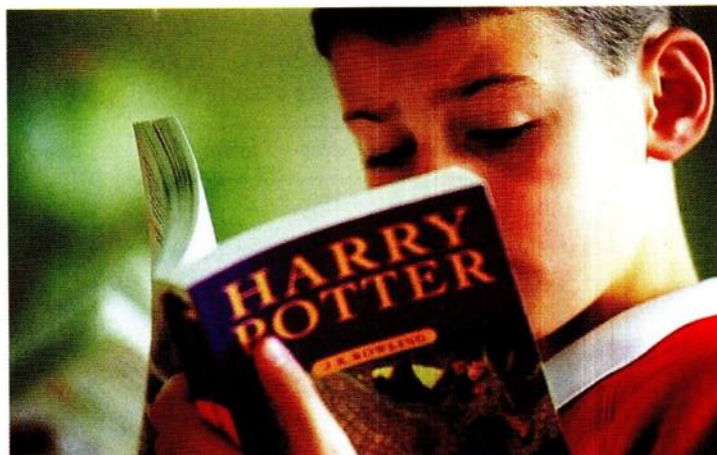
5 Do you have any idea how many Harry Potter books \_\_\_\_\_ in the world?

6 What \_\_\_\_\_ about the author?

7 \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of your friends \_\_\_\_\_ the books?

8 I know that in addition to Harry Potter you have another passion. How long \_\_\_\_\_ soccer?

9 What would you rather do this afternoon? Read Harry Potter or play soccer?



6 What books and movies are you a fan of? Talk to a partner. Ask and answer similar questions to exercise 5. Tell the class.



## PRACTICE

### Discussing grammar

Work with a partner.

- 1 Look at the pairs of sentences. Which tenses are used? Why? Discuss the differences in meaning.

- I lived in Seoul for two years.  
I've lived in Seoul for two years.
- I work for an international company.  
I've worked for them since 2011.
- How long have you been working in Tokyo?  
How many countries have you worked in?
- Have you ever met anyone famous?  
Did you meet anyone famous at the party?
- I've already finished.  
I haven't finished yet.
- Who's been eating my chocolates?  
Who ate my chocolates?
- The President was shot in 1963.  
Have you heard? The President's been shot.
- How long are you here for?  
How long have you been here for?

- 2 Underline the correct verb form.

- His plane *took off* / *has taken off* a few minutes ago.
- The president *has resigned* / *has been resigned* and a new president *has elected* / *has been elected*.
- I *work* / *'ve been working* in Dubai since last March.  
When *did you arrive* / *have you arrived*?
- How many e-mails *have you sent* / *have you been sending*?
- What *did you do* / *have you been doing* in the bathroom? You *were* / *'ve been* in there for ages.
- A huge snowstorm *has hit* / *has been hit* New York.

**CD2 27** Listen and check.

- 3 Where can the words in the box go in these sentences? Sometimes several words are possible.

just   yet   already   ever   never

- I've read that book.
- I've been reading an interesting book.
- Has it been made into a movie?
- He's learned to drive.
- The game hasn't finished.
- Have you been to Argentina?

Compare answers with the class.

# JASON WU

- 4 Jason Wu is a famous fashion designer. He has had a very interesting life so far. Look quickly through the chart of events in his life. What do you find surprising?



## Age      Life event

0	Born on <b>September 27, 1982</b> in Taipei, Taiwan
9	Moved to Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada in <b>1991</b>
9	Learned how to sew by designing and sewing clothes for dolls
16	Designed doll clothes for a toy company, Integrity Toys
17	Became creative director of Integrity Toys
17	Decided to become a fashion designer
17	Spent his senior year of high school in Paris
18-20	Attended college at the Parsons School for Design in New York
19	Launched his handbag and shoe collections in <b>2001</b>
23	Worked as an intern for well-known fashion designer Narciso Rodriguez
24	Launched his ready-to-wear line of clothes in <b>2006</b>
24	His dresses were photographed underwater for Delta Faucet Company's faucet campaign
26	Won the Fashion Group International's Rising Star award in <b>2008</b>
26-now	Designs clothes for First Lady Michelle Obama, Reese Witherspoon, Julianne Moore, Diane Kruger, Zoe Saldana and others
28	Won the Swarovski Award for Womenswear at the CFDA Fashion Awards in <b>2010</b>
29	Collaborated with Creative Nail Design to create a set of four nail polish colors
31	Became the women's wear creative director at German fashion house Hugo Boss in <b>2013</b>
Now	He's still designing. His collections include handbags, eyewear, jewelry, scarves, and clothes.



# a passion for fashion

5 Study the chart with a partner. Ask and answer these questions about Jason Wu's life.

- How long has Jason Wu been designing clothes?  
*Since he was about 9.*
- How did he learn to sew?
- Where did he go to college?
- What different kinds of products has he designed in his career?
- How many awards has he won?
- How long has he been designing clothes for celebrities?
- How long has he been designing handbags?
- What is he doing these days?

**CD2 28** Listen and check your answers. What extra information do you learn about Jason Wu?

## Time expressions

6 Complete the sentences about Jason with phrases from the box.

for one year since he was 9 three years after he won the Swarovski Award in 1982	Between 2000 and 2002 until he was 9 while he was living in Paris when he was 18
--	---

- He was born \_\_\_\_\_.
- He lived in Taiwan \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's been designing clothes \_\_\_\_\_.
- He lived in Paris \_\_\_\_\_.
- He decided to become a fashion designer \_\_\_\_\_.
- He moved to New York \_\_\_\_\_.
- He started working for Hugo Boss \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ he studied at the Parsons School for Design.

## Role play

Imagine you are a journalist. You are going to interview Jason Wu about his life. Write questions to ask him with your partner. Then roleplay the interview.

**Interviewer** *Where were you born?*

**JW** *In Taipei.*

**Interviewer** *Have you always been interested in fashion?*

**JW** *Yes, I have. Well, most of my life, since I was 9.*

## Have you ever ...?

7 Work with a partner. Choose from the list below and have conversations.

*Have you ever bought a pair of designer jeans?*

*No, I haven't. I can't afford them.*

*Yes, I have. I'm wearing them now.*

*Where did you buy them?*

- buy/a pair of designer jeans?
- read/a book in English?
- run/marathon?
- make/a cake?
- meet/someone on the Internet?
- sleep/in a tent?
- lose/your cell phone?
- go/formal party?
- ride/a motorcycle?
- win/a competition?
- write/a love letter?
- be/given a present you didn't like?

Tell the class about your partner.

*Maria's never bought a pair of designer jeans because ...*



## SPOKEN ENGLISH How long ...?

1 Read the two conversations. What are the two questions with *How long*?

1 **A** *How long are you here for?*

**B** *Just three days. I arrived yesterday and I leave tomorrow.*

2 **A** *How long have you been here?*

**B** *I've been here a week already. I arrived last Saturday.*

Which question refers to past up to the present?

Which question refers to a period around now (past and future)?

2 What is the correct question for these answers?

1 Four more days. We came two days ago.

2 Since Monday.

3 Until Friday. We're leaving Friday morning.

4 Over half an hour! Where have you been?

5 We're staying a month altogether.

**CD2 29** Listen and check. Practice with a partner.



## READING AND SPEAKING

### Soccer – a global passion

- 1 Soccer—do you love it or hate it? Why? Have a class vote. How many famous soccer players can you name? What teams do they play for?
- 2 Whether you love it or hate it, soccer is difficult to ignore. Read only the **introduction** and the **final part** of “The Beautiful Game.”
  - 1 What statistics are given? Do any of them surprise you?
  - 2 How did soccer become known as “the beautiful game”?
  - 3 In what ways is soccer a “simple” game?
  - 4 Which famous players are mentioned? What do they have in common?
- 3 Read “How soccer began.” Answer the questions.
  - 1 What was *tsu chu*?
  - 2 Which nationalities were the first to play a kind of soccer? When?
  - 3 What images do you have of “mob soccer”? Describe a game.
  - 4 How was the game played at English public schools?
  - 5 What caused chaos when the boys tried to play soccer in college?
  - 6 How did the idea of half-time start?
  - 7 Why is London important to soccer?
  - 8 What was the “sticking point”? Which game was also born? Why?
- 4 Read “Soccer around the world.”
  - 1 Complete the sentences with the name of the continent.
    - a \_\_\_\_\_ has become more enthusiastic about soccer since the 2006 World Cup.
    - b \_\_\_\_\_ has the wealthiest soccer teams in the world.
    - c Not all countries in \_\_\_\_\_ have a passion for soccer.
    - d \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ often lose their most talented players to rich European teams.
    - e In \_\_\_\_\_ soccer has become more popular with girls than boys.
  - 2 Which continents are most/least enthusiastic about soccer?
  - 3 Why do some continents often lose players to European teams?
  - 4 How and where has the World Cup increased interest in soccer?

### What do you think?

- Soccer “has totally changed the worlds of sports, media, and leisure.” What does this mean?
- Does soccer unite or divide the world? How?
- Why are some teams so famous worldwide? Which players are superstars today?
- Do you agree with the conclusion about why soccer has become a global passion?

# The

Over the last hundred years, the game of soccer has totally changed the worlds of sports, media, and leisure. Soccer is played worldwide by more than 1.5 million teams and 300,000 clubs. An amazing eight out of ten people in the world watch the World Cup. It is, as the great Brazilian soccer player Pelé described it, “the beautiful game.” **Andrew Hunt reports.**

## How soccer began

As far back as 2500 BCE the Chinese played a kicking game called *tsu chu*. Similar games were played by the Romans and North American Indians. In England in medieval times “mob soccer” was wildly popular. In 1583, Philip Stubbs said of soccer players:

*“sometimes their necks are broken, sometimes their backs, sometimes their legs, sometimes their arms.”*



By the mid-19th century, with the help of English public schools, the game had become less violent. Each school had different rules for playing the game. Problems arose when boys from the different schools went to the Universities of Oxford and Cambridge and wanted to continue playing. This is from the description of a match played in Cambridge in 1848:

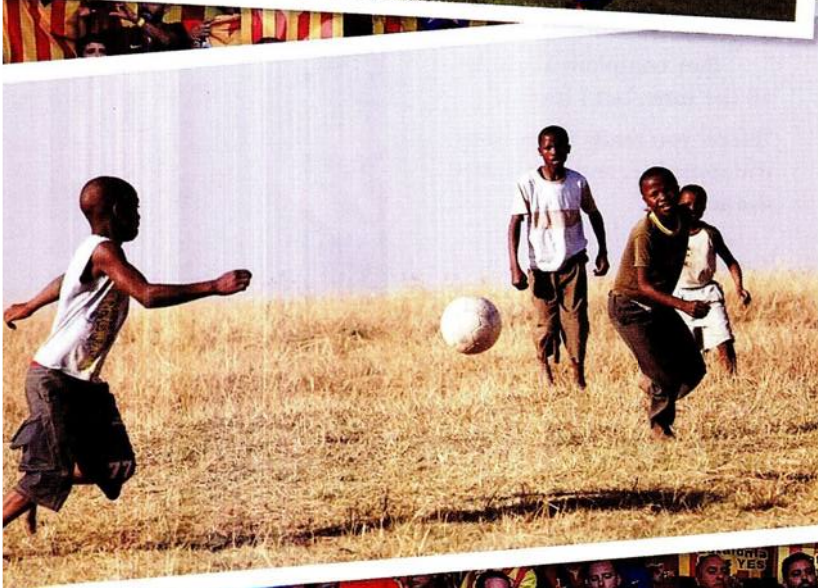
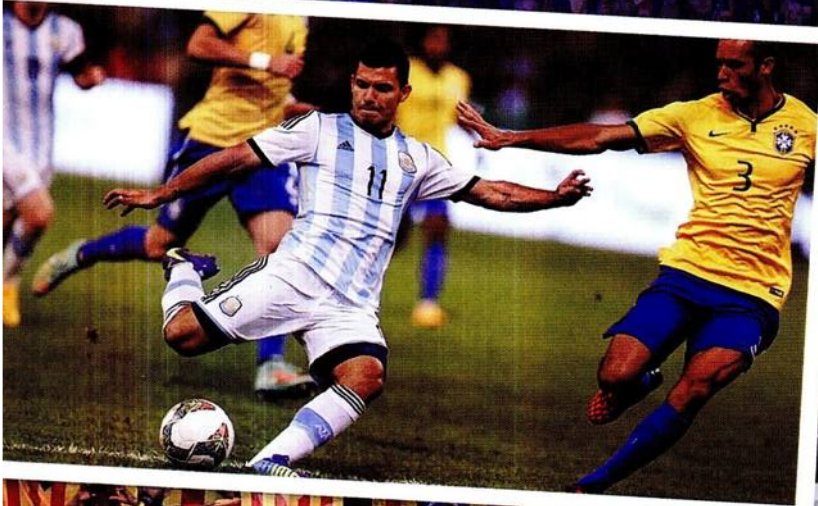
*“... The result was chaos, as every man played the rules he had been accustomed to at his school.”*

It became common to play half a match by one side's rules, the second half by the other's. That's how half-time came about. However, this was not good enough for the university men. They decided to sort out the rules once and for all.

On Monday, October 26, 1863, they met in London. By the end of the day they had formed the Soccer Association, and a *Book of Laws* was on its way. The sticking point was



# Beautiful Game



whether a player could pick up the ball and run with it or not, and this was not decided until December 8. From this decision the games of both soccer and rugby were born.

## Soccer around the world

**Europe** is home to the world's richest professional teams: Manchester United, AC Milan, FC Barcelona, Real Madrid, Bayern Munich. These teams are famous in many countries around the world. Only 1% of Manchester United's fans are from the UK, and there are 131 Real Madrid fan clubs outside of Spain!

**South America** has produced some of the most exciting soccer on earth. Many of the world's leading players have come from simple lifestyles to play on the world stage. They have been snapped up by important European teams after making their mark at home. Brazil has won the World Cup five times, Uruguay three times, and Argentina twice. Brazil and Argentina are soccer rivals. In fact, many Brazilians cheered for Germany in the finals of the 2014 World Cup.

**North America** is the only continent where soccer has become more popular with females than males. In 1991, the U.S. won the first Women's World Cup and then again in 1999 and 2015. Interest among American men has been growing since the World Cup in Los Angeles in 1994, and more recently since the arrival of international stars such as David Beckham.

**Asia:** Over the past two decades, heated rivalry among Japan, China, and South Korea has increased the passion for soccer across the continent, especially after Japan and Korea co-hosted the World Cup in 2002. However, not all Asian countries share the passion: India and Pakistan prefer cricket.

**The Middle East:** Countries such as Saudi Arabia, Kuwait, and Qatar have lately been investing huge sums of money in soccer. They've hired the best players and coaches that money can buy. Qatar's hosting of the 2022 World Cup will be very important for Middle Eastern soccer.

**Australia:** Sports in Australia have long been dominated by cricket, rugby, and surfing. However, since they qualified for the 2006 World Cup, Australians have become much more interested in the game.

**Africa** has produced a number of soccer superstars, but many of them have been lost to the rich European teams. Africa is rich in talent, with thousands of gifted young players dreaming of big-time soccer. South Africa's hosting of the 2010 World Cup was very important for African soccer.

## A global passion

The game of soccer is played in every nation on earth, not only by the 120 million regular team players, but also by countless others on beaches, in playgrounds, and on streets. The world's love of soccer is simple—it's because soccer is simple. All that is needed is a ball, a piece of ground, and two posts. The world's greatest players, George Best, Diego Maradona, and Pelé, all learned their skills on vacant lots. These are the places where the sport is born and why soccer has become a global passion.



## VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

### Things I'm passionate about

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the words and expressions in the box. Which are positive, which are negative? Which are neutral?

kind of like	crazy about
adore	can't stand
loathe	don't mind
into	detest
not that into	fond of

- 2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses.

- She likes ice cream very much. (*absolutely adore*)  
*She absolutely adores ice cream.*
- He likes all water sports. (*very into*)
- I hate opera. (*detest*)
- My brother loves playing video games. (*crazy about*)
- My sister doesn't really like any sports. (*not that into*)
- I don't like people who always talk about themselves. (*can't stand*)
- My mom likes going to musicals. (*very fond*)
- I like tea but I prefer coffee. (*don't mind*)
- The thing I hate most is cleaning up my room. (*loathe*)
- I don't hate my job, but it's time I applied for another one. (*kind of like*)

- 3 Look at the photos of the people. Read what they say about their passion. Can you figure out what their passion is?

- 4 **CD2 30** Listen to the people. Were you right? What are their passions?

- 5 Listen again. Answer the questions about each person.

- How long have they had their passion?
- What first created their interest?
- Why do they like it so much?

- 6 Use some of the expressions from the box in exercise 1 to talk about the people.

### What do you think?

- Which of the people's passions most interest you? Why? Which interest you least?
- Is there anything in your life that you feel passionate about? Tell the class about it.

### 1 Julia

"I enjoy it, I think, because it's a very psychological game. I mean, if you're playing badly, you have to push yourself to continue."

"... there's only about 3 months that you can't play."



### 2 Paul

"They're so big and powerful, but so beautiful when you see them racing around a field or on a track."

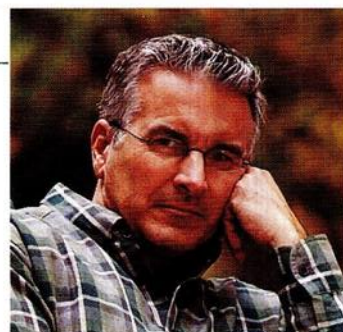
"Of course, I have fallen off a few times, but it seems that the more you fall, the less it hurts."



### 3 Andrew

"I felt the power of the words—the thing I like so much about it is that you can say so much with just a few words."

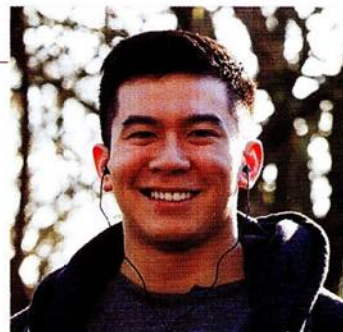
"It's all about saying what often goes unsaid, and with passion."



### 4 James

"... they complain about it all the time, but I love it."

"Here, you really appreciate the sunshine, and you notice the seasons."



### 5 Kim

"... the thing I love best about it is that you are away from everything and everyone, out in the water, just waiting, with nothing around you."

"Once we capture it, we carefully release it, and it's not harmed."





# Making the right noises

- 1 Look at the words in the boxes. They are all possible responses in conversation. What do they express? Write in the correct heading.

• Agreement • Sympathy • Pleasure • Surprise

_____	_____	_____	_____
How amazing! That's great! Awesome! Congratulations! Wonderful! Good for you!	Absolutely. Definitely. Of course. That makes sense. Fine. OK.	Did you? You didn't! That's amazing! You're kidding! You did what? Really?	What a shame! That's a shame. Oh, no! That's too bad. How awful! Bad luck.

- 2 **CD2 31** Listen and complete B's responses. Practice the conversation with a partner.

A My grandfather hasn't been doing too well lately.

B

A He's 79. Don't you think at his age he should slow down a little?

B

A But he won't listen to me. He says he wants to enjoy his life to the fullest.

B

A Last summer he went on a two-week cycling trip in South America.

B

A We're going to give him a big party for his 80th birthday.

B

A But before that I'm going to have a word with him and tell him to take things easier.

B

What other responses from exercise 1 make sense in exercise 2?

- 3 Read the lines of conversation. Write in a logical response. There are sometimes several possibilities.

1 A My friend just asked me to marry him.

B \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) \_\_\_\_\_ (pleasure)

2 A Will spaghetti Bolognese be OK for dinner?

B \_\_\_\_\_ (agreement) \_\_\_\_\_ (pleasure)

3 A There's a strike at the airport so my trip's been canceled.

B \_\_\_\_\_ (sympathy) \_\_\_\_\_ (sympathy)

4 A I failed my driving test again.

B \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) \_\_\_\_\_ (sympathy)

5 A We're expecting a baby.

B \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) \_\_\_\_\_ (pleasure)

6 A So you think I should save to buy a car, not borrow the money?

B \_\_\_\_\_ (agreement)

7 A I told him I never wanted to see him again.

B \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) \_\_\_\_\_ (sympathy)

- CD2 32** Listen and compare. What is B's further comment?

- 4 Practice the conversations with a partner. Continue them if you can.

- 5 Work with a partner. Have a conversation about a good or bad day you have had recently. React as you listen and talk.

Last Sunday was the worst day of my life!

Well, ...

Oh, no! What happened?



# 8

## No fear!

Verb patterns • Body language • Travel and numbers

### STARTER

1 Match a sentence with a cartoon.

- 1 They stopped to talk to each other.
- 2 They stopped talking to each other.

2 What's the difference in meaning between Sentences 1 and 2?



## DON'T WORRY, MOM!

Verb patterns

1 **CD2 33** Read and listen to the messages sent home to parents by young travelers.  
Where are the travelers? What has happened that gives their parents reasons to worry?



I'm fine 1

From: kate@oneworldmail.net

Subject: I'm fine

Hey there! Just a quick e-mail to say, Mom, please don't freak out about the photos. It looks much worse than it was!! I don't remember anyone taking the pics, and I've no idea who posted them on Facebook! It was pitch-black dark that night and I was trying to climb up to the top bunk bed. Unfortunately my head hit the corner of the bed—a METAL bunk bed! Anyway, a scream of pain and, oh! I forgot to mention the ambulance ride to the hospital—but, no, I'm fine. I know you'll hate to hear this, but I had to get some stitches. Don't worry! It's impossible to see the scar on my head!! I didn't want to say anything at the time for obvious reasons. Sorry if it shocked you!!!

Talk soon—lots of love from hot and rainy California.

miss you and love you SO MUCH

Kate x x x x x x x

Dan, Ma 2

☆

Dan, Ma

▼

Hey Ma,

Must be quick 'cause late.


Just feel I need to warn you, I met some awesome Aussies last night. They're planning to go to New York next month. I said I was sure you'd like to meet them, so I gave them your number. Hope you don't mind putting them up for a few nights. They're all good guys. Can't remember their names, but I know you'll make them feel at home. They're looking forward to meeting you. Hope to speak to you soon.



3

< Message Mom Details

Hey Mom, Dad and Izzy—had a great time yesterday! We went piranha fishing on the Amazon in a canoe. Victor told us to throw pieces of meat into the water to attract the fish, but we didn't manage to catch anything. We stopped to camp on the banks in the evening and really enjoyed watching the sunset and swimming in the dark. Unfortunately, we'd forgotten to bring a flashlight, so we were lucky to escape from the crocodiles. Love ya! Bill.



Delivered


+ New 4

From: jill88@adps.mail.net  
Subject: Hi from Peru!

Dear Parents,

Last night we arrived at the most fantastic hotel in Arequipa, Peru. It's great to be in a room with a private bathroom. We expected to have a good night's sleep but woke up when an earthquake struck about 2 A.M. Don't panic, Mother! You'll be happy to hear that no one was hurt. We fell asleep again shortly after, and everyone felt fine in the morning despite the holes in the walls and ceilings. We're thinking of staying here two more days. I'll let you know our plans.

Lots of love, Jill



### Glossary

(to) **freak** (out) (informal) to have a completely shocked reaction to something

**awesome** (informal) very good; excellent

**Aussies** (informal) people from Australia

2 Read these sentences. Which verbs or phrases can fill the blanks?

- Kate** didn't \_\_\_\_\_ anyone taking the photos.  
a see b ask c remember
- She \_\_\_\_\_ to climb up to the top bunk bed.  
a wanted b tried c remembered
- She forgot \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital.  
a mentioning b to mention c mention
- Dan** asked his mom \_\_\_\_\_ his Australian friends.  
a put up b putting up c to put up
- His Australian friends \_\_\_\_\_ to go to New York.  
a want b are hoping c are looking forward
- He thinks his mom will make them \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
a feel b to feel c feeling
- Bill** \_\_\_\_\_ to catch piranha fish.  
a didn't succeed in b didn't manage c tried
- They stopped \_\_\_\_\_ on the river bank.  
a camping b to camp c to spend the night
- Jill** \_\_\_\_\_ having a private bathroom.  
a loved b wanted c hoped
- She is \_\_\_\_\_ staying two more days.  
a planning b looking forward to c thinking of

3 **CD2 34** Listen and complete the lines. Who is speaking?

- When we saw the photos we \_\_\_\_\_ feeling worried.
- The photos \_\_\_\_\_ look worse than it really was.
- Your friends must \_\_\_\_\_ keep their room clean.
- It's really kind of you \_\_\_\_\_ them stay.
- Did Victor \_\_\_\_\_ escape from the crocodiles?
- He warned us not \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.
- We couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ a little scared.
- Have you \_\_\_\_\_ come home yet?

### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Match a pattern in A with a sentence from the e-mails in B.

A

verb + -ing  
verb + to  
verb + sb + to  
verb + sb + infinitive  
(without to)  
adjective + to  
preposition + -ing

B

I **need to warn** you.  
Victor **told us to throw** meat.  
You'll **make them feel** at home.  
He **enjoyed swimming**.  
We're **thinking of staying** two more days.  
It's **impossible to see** the scar.

2 What is the difference in meaning between these sentences?

She **remembered to e-mail** her mom.      She **remembered e-mailing** her mom.

► Grammar Reference 8 p. 138 Verb Patterns p. 154



## PRACTICE

### Calling home

- 1 Work with a partner. Complete Kate's phone conversation with her mother.
 

M Kate! It's so good to hear (hear) from you. Are you OK?

K Oh, Mom, I'm really sorry for \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) you so much. I really didn't mean to.

M We opened our messages and we were so delighted \_\_\_\_\_ (see) all your photos and then we saw that one.

K I didn't want my friends \_\_\_\_\_ (post) it. I asked them not to.

M But Kate, all those stitches, and you went to the hospital. We couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) worried.

K I know, but honestly, Mom, my friends made me \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the hospital. I really didn't need to.

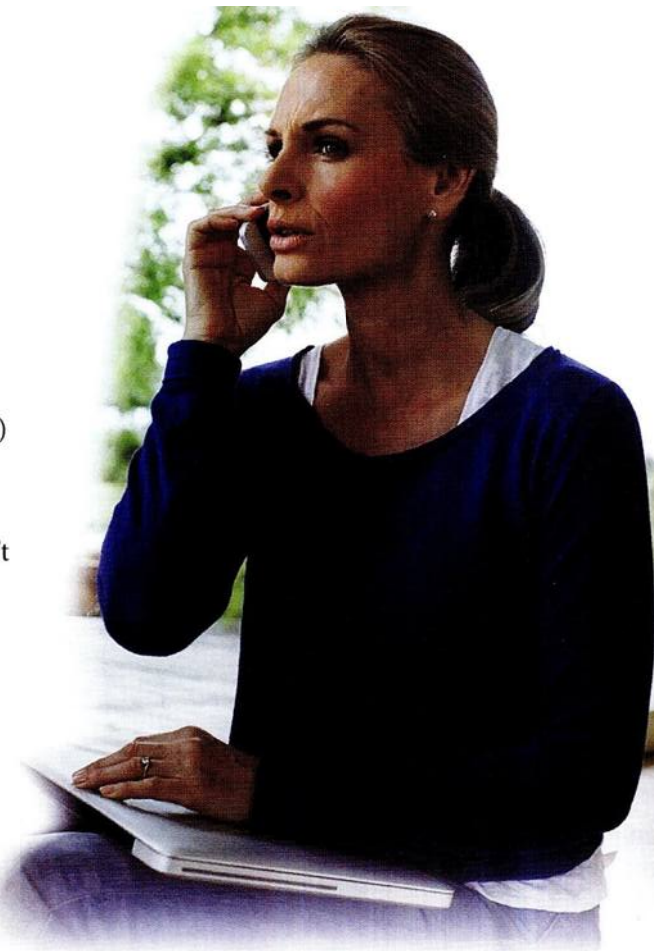
M How is your head now?

K Absolutely fine. Honestly. I'll send you some more photos and you can see for yourself.

M OK. Don't forget to.

K I'll call again soon, and I promise \_\_\_\_\_ (text) regularly. Bye.

M Bye. Take care!



- 2 **CD2 35** Listen and check. Practice the conversation.

#### SPOKEN ENGLISH *Don't forget to!* – the reduced infinitive

- 1 In conversation it isn't necessary to use the full infinitive if it is understood from the context.
 

A I'll e-mail some more photos.

B OK. Don't **forget to send more photos**.

A Can you and Mary come to lunch next Sunday?

B Oh yes, we'd **love to come**.

Find three more examples in Kate's conversation with her mother.
- 2 Reply to A, using the verb in parentheses and a reduced infinitive.
  - 1 A Did you mail my letter?  
B Oh, sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_. (forget)
  - 2 A I can't go out with you this evening. Sorry.  
B Oh, but you \_\_\_\_\_. (promise)
  - 3 A Why did you e-mail your mother again?  
B Because she \_\_\_\_\_. (ask me)
  - 4 A Do you think you'll apply for that job?  
B Yes, I've definitely \_\_\_\_\_. (decide)
  - 5 A Are you taking your brother to the airport?  
B Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (offer), but he said he \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_. (not want)

**CD2 36** Listen and check your answers. Practice with a partner.

### Talking about you

- 3 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you BUT make two of them false.
  - 1 I really enjoy ...
  - 2 I'm no good at ...
  - 3 I shouldn't forget ...
  - 4 I will always remember ...
  - 5 I just finished ...
  - 6 I sometimes find it difficult ...
  - 7 My parents made me ... when I was young.
  - 8 I'm looking forward to ...
  - 9 I'd love ...
- 4 Work in small groups. Read some true and some false sentences aloud to each other. Make comments and ask questions to find the false ones.

I really enjoy riding bikes.

Do you? Do you bike to work?

I don't believe you.  
You don't even have a bike!



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### Fears and phobias

- 1 What are typical phobias that people have? Make a list. Are you afraid of anything?
- 2 Work with a partner. Match the phobias in the chart with their definitions. Compare answers as a class.

We think autophobia is fear of ...

It might be ...

We've no idea what ... is.

- 3 **CD2 37** Some people have strange phobias. Listen to Jodie, Dave, and Melissa talking about theirs. After each one discuss these questions as a class.
  - 1 Which part of the cartoon would make them panic?
  - 2 How did their phobia start?
  - 3 How does it affect their lives?
  - 4 What caused their panic attack?
  - 5 Have they tried to cure their phobia?
- 4 Work in small groups to retell the stories. Use the prompts to help.

Autophobia	is a fear of	washing.	the color blue.
Ablutophobia		flying.	birds.
Aviophobia		fridges.	feeling cold.
Frigophobia		being alone.	cars.



JODIE

When she was a little girl ... grandmother asked her ... opened the cabinet ... dark green cardigan ... started screaming ... her grandmother managed to ... now it's difficult to ... tries to find ... a year ago ... a colleague's jacket ... has decided to ... embarrassed ...



DAVE

His dad used to ... he didn't like watching him ... when seven started feeling ... his dad had to stop ... problem got worse ... supermarkets ... asked his wife never to ... wouldn't go to restaurants ... oyster ... only hamburger restaurants ... started to see ... hasn't succeeded in ...



MELISSA

Since she was five ... trying to blow up ... popped in her face ... can remember ... her friends enjoy ... think it's fun to ... last time ... a panic attack ... they refused to ... difficulty in ... worst thing ... parties ... can't imagine ever ... even on TV ... starts to shake ...



### What do you think?

- 5 Discuss these questions in your groups.
  - 1 Which of the three people do you think has the most difficult phobia to live with? Why?
  - 2 Why do people get phobias?
  - 3 Why do some people and not others get them?
  - 4 How do you think they can be cured? Suggest ideas.

### The psychologist's view

- 6 **CD2 38** Listen to psychologist Dr. Lucy Atcheson talking about phobias. How does she answer questions 2–4 in exercise 5?

### Language work

Look at CD2 37 on page 123. Choose a story and underline examples of different kinds of verb patterns.



## READING AND SPEAKING

### Dangerous trips in history

- 1 Close your eyes. Imagine you are one of 90,000 people. You are traveling together, on foot, over mountains, rivers, and plains. It's winter. What problems would you face?
- 2 You are going to read about two famous leaders, Hannibal Barca and Mao Zedong. They both undertook remarkable trips with thousands of people. Look at the maps. What difficulties can you anticipate?

- 3 Divide into two groups.

Group A Read about **HANNIBAL**.

Group B Read about **Mao Zedong**.

First read about your leader's *Early Years*. Answer the questions with your group.

- 1 How did his father influence his life?
  - 2 Who was the enemy?
  - 3 Where did he move to?
  - 4 Why did they set off on such a long journey?
- 4 Read about the trip and answer the questions.
    - 1 When did the trip start?
    - 2 How many began it? Who were they?
    - 3 What kind of leader was he?
    - 4 What problems did they face on the way?
    - 5 How long did the trip last?
    - 6 How did it end? How many survived?
  - 5 Read the final part. What happened to the leader after the trip?
  - 6 Find someone from the other group. Go through the questions again and compare the leaders and their trips. Use the maps to help. What similarities can you find? How many years separate the two trips?

### What do you think?

- Which trip was more dangerous? Why?
- Can you imagine such a trip on foot taking place today? Where and why might it happen?

►► WRITING TELLING A STORY (2) p. 106



## HANNIBAL CROSSES THE ALPS

247-182 BCE

### EARLY YEARS

**Hannibal Barca** was born in Carthage, North Africa (now a suburb of Tunis, Tunisia) in 247 BCE. At that time this once prosperous seaport was losing a long and exhausting war with the Romans over who should rule the western Mediterranean. His father, Hamilcar, was a general in the army, and it is said that he made his son promise to hate the Romans forever.

The 23-year-long war was finally lost in 241 BCE. Hannibal and his family moved to Spain, where the Carthaginians were trying to build a new empire. Hannibal grew up to be a bold and fearless fighter like his father, and eventually became commander of the army. In 218 BCE the Romans again threatened to attack. In a daring and dangerous plan Hannibal decided to march from Spain to Italy before the Romans had even declared war. This march was to be a trip of 1,500 miles across both the Pyrenees and the Alps.



## Mao Zedong and the Long March

1893-1976

### Early years

Mao Zedong (Mao Tse Tung) was born in Hunan province in Southern China in 1893. His father was an ambitious but illiterate farmer, who wanted his son to have the education he didn't have.

At his university Mao became active in revolutionary student groups and, in 1921, he helped found the Chinese Communist Party. He established a base in the remote Jiangxi province, where they formed the Red Army to fight against the Nationalist Government under Chiang Kai-shek. However, in 1934, after many bloody battles, they were forced to escape from the area. They set off on a remarkable trip, which became known as the Long March.





## THE JOURNEY

In May 218 BCE, Hannibal left Spain with an army of about 90,000 men and 37 elephants, which he believed were needed to get them over the mountains. In the next few months under his inspiring leadership, they marched through Spain to the Pyrenees and then to the South of France. They moved about 10 miles a day, and were frequently attacked by local tribesmen. They reached the River Rhone and accomplished the unbelievable task of building huge rafts to ferry the elephants across. Some fell off but managed to swim using their trunks as snorkels. It was now fall, and snow started to fall as they approached the Alps. The army, helped by the elephants, struggled on, slipping and sliding over ice and snow, over the main pass. Finally, they were in sight of Italy. Their five-

month trip at an end, Hannibal's army of 90,000 was reduced to 36,000—over half his men had perished or deserted on the way. Winter storms had killed all but one of his elephants.



## FINAL YEARS

In some ways Hannibal's march was hugely successful because he took the Romans by surprise and initially defeated them in numerous battles. However, after many years and many more battles, his army failed to overcome Rome's superior resources and manpower. Hannibal, who had been 29 at the start of his trip, sailed back to North Africa at the age of 45. He finally committed suicide in 182 BCE, at the age of 65. Despite his final defeat, he is still recognized as one of the greatest military leaders in history.

## The Long March

The march began on October 16th. No one was sure where they were going, but 86,000 men and 30 women, including Mao's wife, set out to walk from the south to the north of China. The trip took one year, ending in the northwestern Shaanxi province.

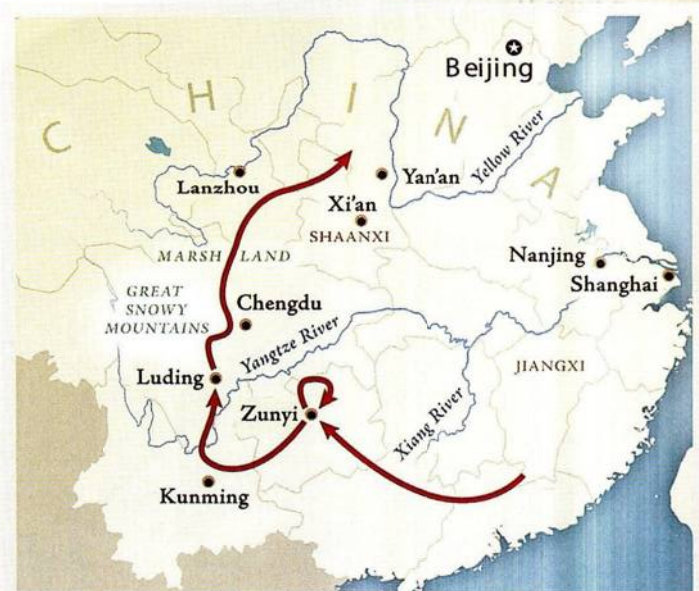
They started the march fairly well, armed with 33,243 guns, but five weeks later suffered their first disastrous defeat at the Xiang River crossing. They lost 56,000 men and much of their equipment was thrown into the river.

It was at this time that Mao Zedong became leader of both the Red Army and the Communist Party. He was a tough but popular leader.

One of the worst experiences was crossing the Great Snowy Mountains, over 16,000 feet high. Many men died from lack of oxygen. Exhausted, they knew that to stop to rest meant certain death. If they managed to reach the top, it was best to sit down and slide to the bottom on the ice. Many men were catapulted over cliffs.

It was now September 1935 and the army had to cross the Marshland, between the Yangtze and Yellow Rivers. It looked innocent, covered with flowers, but beneath the flowers were bogs that could swallow a man in a minute. Mao lost more men during this seven-day trek than in the Snowy Mountains.

Eventually, on October 19th, after marching for 370 days and about 7,800 miles, they reached Shaanxi province. Of the 86,000 who began, only 4,000 remained.



## Later years

The Long March began the ascent to power of Mao Zedong. On October 1, 1949 he proclaimed the People's Republic of China, and the Great Cultural Revolution followed. This radically changed every aspect of Chinese society. In October 1966, Mao's *Little Red Book* was published, and his ideas were taught throughout the country. Mao's image was displayed everywhere: in homes, offices, stores, and streets. He finally died on September 9th, 1976, at 82.



## VOCABULARY AND IDIOMS

### Body language

- As a class, brainstorm all the parts of the body. Fill the board with all that you can think of.
- Work in small groups. Which parts of the body do you use to do the following things?

bite blow clap climb hit hug kick kneel  
lick march point scratch stare whistle

- Which verbs in exercise 2 go with these nouns and phrases?

_____ a ladder	_____ your nails
_____ out of the window	_____ up a balloon
_____ a tune	_____ an insect bite
_____ someone close	_____ your hands to the music
_____ a soccer ball	_____ at a place on the map
_____ an ice cream	_____ a nail with a hammer
_____ down to pick something up	_____ like a soldier

**CD2 39** Listen and check. What is the situation for each expression?

- The sentences all contain idioms that use parts of the body. Work out the meanings from context.

- Did you hear about Millie's party? Too many people came and the whole thing **got out of hand**.
- The house was such a mess! When her parents came back, they **kicked up** such a **fuss**. I don't blame them.
- I don't get along with my brother. We don't **see eye to eye** on anything.
- I saw a show on TV about quantum physics, but I'm afraid **it went straight over my head**.
- Don't waste your breath** trying to explain it to me. I'll never understand.
- Can you help me? I've **hit a snag** installing this program on my computer.
- My dad keeps chocolate in his desk. He **has** such a **sweet tooth**.
- I feel silly. I got so excited when he said I'd won the lottery, but he was only **pulling my leg**.

- Replace each idiom in exercise 4 with a literal meaning from the box. Read the sentences aloud with both expressions.

loves sweet things I didn't understand a word  
agree were furious I'm having trouble  
got out of control it's not worth joking

- What other idiomatic expression do you know for each of these parts of the body? Share them with the class.

heart head hand foot hair





# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Travel and numbers

1 Read aloud these numbers.

15 50 **406** 72 178 **90** 19 850 **1,520**  
17.5 36 247 5,000 **180,575** 2,000,000

**CD2 40** Listen and check.

**Notice the way we use points and commas in English.**

\$6.50 (six fifty)

2,500 (two thousand five hundred)

3.14 (three point one four)



2 Match a question with a number. Ask and answer them with a partner. Practice saying the numbers aloud.

Questions	Numbers
1 What time does the train leave?	212-555-2111
2 How far is it to Montreal?	27 pounds
3 How long's the flight?	1,915 miles
4 How much does it cost?	1:45
5 What's your credit card number?	17.5%
6 What's the expiration date?	About 1½ hours
7 How much does it weigh?	6356 5055 5137 9904
8 What's your cell number?	\$34.99
9 What's the tax rate?	02/18

**CD2 41** Listen and check. Practice again.

3 Work in pairs. Find the numbers in the pictures and practice saying them.

4 **CD2 42** Listen to the conversation.

- Where is it taking place?
- Who are the people?
- Where does the woman want to travel to?
- What is the problem?

Listen again. Write down all the different numbers you hear. What do they refer to?

**one (bag), 60 pounds**

Practice the conversation with a partner.

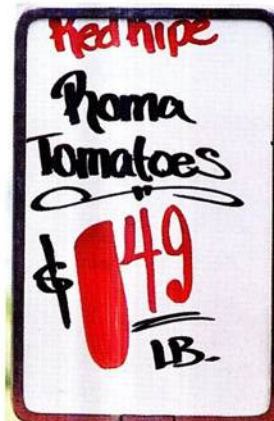
5 **CD2 43** Listen and do the same again.

6 Work in groups. Write down some numbers that are important to you. Can the others guess what they refer to? Explain what they are.

Nineteen.

Is it your age?

No. It's the day I go on vacation. July 19th!





# 9

# It depends how you look at it

Conditionals • Words with similar meaning • Dealing with money

## STARTER

Ideas can be looked at in different ways.

Work in groups. Think of some pros and cons of being a teenager.

- + *You aren't a kid anymore.*  
*You are becoming more independent.*
- *You aren't a child, but you aren't an adult.*  
*You don't have any money.*

Compare ideas as a class.

## BILLY'S STORY

### Conditionals

- 1 Why are some kids bullied? Why do some kids become bullies?
- 2 Read about Billy. What are his problems?

## BILLY'S STORY

Billy enjoyed school. He tried hard, but studying wasn't easy for him.

He didn't have many friends. He felt lonely and insecure.

The other kids started bullying Billy. They called him "Billy no friends" and stole his money.

They sent him texts. They threatened to hurt him.

He tried to talk to people, but they didn't listen.

Billy started missing school. He felt desperate. He didn't know who to go to for help.



### 3 What would you do if you were ...?

Billy's mom    Billy's sister    Billy's dad  
Billy's teacher    a counselor from Kidcare    Billy

If I were Billy's mom, I'd go to the teacher and explain what was happening.

I wouldn't. I'd talk to Billy and ...

### 4 CD3 2 Listen. Who are the six speakers imagining they are?

*I'd organize a school day which tried to educate everyone about bullying, and I'd invite social workers, police, and psychologists. - The teacher.*

### 5 Look at the Kidcare Report. Read what the counselor wrote about Billy. What did Billy do?

Answer the questions.

- Did people listen to Billy?
- Did his father stay?
- Did he talk to Kidcare?

Look at the sentences in **bold** in the Kidcare Report.

### CD3 3 Listen and repeat.



Things got tough for Billy and his sister when their dad walked out.



Then the attacks started. Every day after school the bullies waited for him.

# So what would you do...?

If you're being bullied, contact **KIDCARE**.  
We're on your side. Call 212 364 8888.

## KIDCARE REPORT

# MISSING



**Client:** Billy Simmons

**Age:** 14

**Counselor:** Carmen Delanie

Billy ran away from home because he was being bullied at school. He has now been missing for six months. He had tried to talk to his mother and his teachers. **If they'd listened to him, they'd have understood** how he was feeling.

Billy's father walked out on the family. **If his father had stayed, Billy might have felt happier** and less insecure.

**If he'd talked to us, we could have helped. He should have come to us a long time ago.**

We are doing all we can to locate Billy. We suspect that he is somewhere in New York.

### 6 Make a sentence using *If* and the prompts.

- People didn't understand what Billy was going through.  
understood ... wouldn't ... run away  
*If they'd understood, he wouldn't have run away.*
- He didn't go to Kidcare.  
gone ... could ... talked ... problems
- His father left.  
left ... Billy might ... felt more secure
- The bullies threatened him.  
threatened ... he wouldn't ... run away

### CD3 4 Listen and check.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

### 1 Second conditional sentences express an unreal situation about the present.

If I **was** in trouble, I'd (= would) **come** to you for help.  
(But I'm not in trouble.)

Third conditional sentences express an unreal situation about the past.

If you'd (=had) **told** me about your problems, I'd (= would) **have helped**. (But you didn't tell me, so I didn't help.)

How do we form second and third conditional sentences?

### 2 Which two of these modal verbs express a possibility?

I **would** / **might** / **could** have helped you.

### 3 Look at this sentence.

Pete **shouldn't have stolen** the money.

Is this good advice? Did Pete steal the money?

► Grammar Reference 9.1-9.6 pp. 138-139



## PRACTICE

### It all went wrong

- 1 Work in pairs. Read about three robberies that went wrong. What were the robbers' mistakes?

#### Easy arrest

A bank robber in Montreal, Canada, held up a sign that said "Give me all the money." The cashier handed over the money, and the bank robber fled, leaving the note behind. Unfortunately, he had written the note on the back of an envelope. On the other side was his address. He was arrested later the same day.

#### Smile!

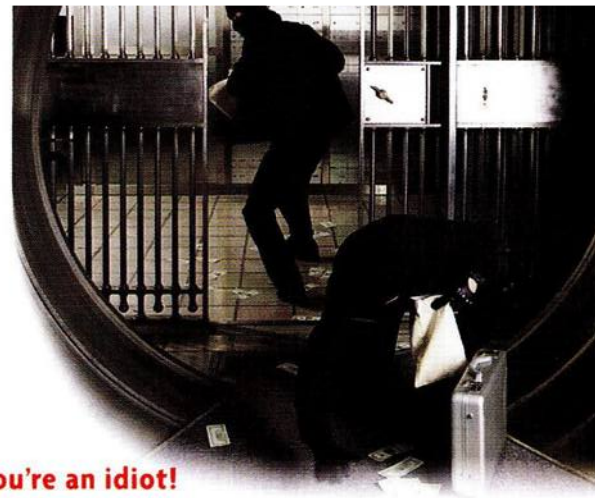
Car thief Lee Hoskins took pictures of himself stealing a Honda Civic with a camera he found in the glove compartment. Lee and his girlfriend took turns posing before crashing the car and fleeing the scene, leaving the camera on the back seat of the car. "It's amazing just how stupid some criminals can be," said a spokesman for the Atlanta police.

#### Have a loan instead

A bank manager in Arlington, Virginia, stopped a robbery by persuading the three criminals to take out a loan instead. The robbers burst into the bank near Washington, D.C., and demanded \$50,000. The manager put the money on the table, but suggested that a loan would be more sensible. He offered them a \$20 cash advance and told them to return in ten minutes to sign the loan papers. Police were waiting for them.

- 2 Rewrite the sentences about the robberies using the words in parentheses.

- 1 It was a mistake to write his note on an envelope. (*shouldn't*)  
He shouldn't have written his note on an envelope
- 2 It would have been better to take the note with him. (*should*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He left his address. The police found him. (*if*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It was stupid to take his picture. (*shouldn't*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They crashed the car. They didn't escape. (*if, could*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He left pictures of himself. He could have gotten away with it. (*if, might*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 They were so stupid. They didn't escape with the money. (*if*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 They listened to the manager. They didn't steal the money. (*if, could*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 It was silly to go back to the bank. (*shouldn't*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10 It would have been better to just run away. (*should*)  
\_\_\_\_\_



#### You're an idiot!

- 3 Your friend did some really stupid things.

I drove home even though I was falling asleep at the wheel.

You're an idiot! You might have had an accident! You could have killed someone!

How do you react when he tells you these things? Use *might have* or *could have*.

- 1 I went walking in the mountains for three days with no food or equipment.
- 2 I didn't feel like going to work, so I called in sick. I went shopping instead.
- 3 I had a temperature of 102, but I went out dancing all night.
- 4 I told Sandra I couldn't see her, then went out with Danielle.
- 5 I used to be really good at tennis – I was an under-14 champion – but then I gave it all up.

CD3 5 Listen and compare.

#### Speaking

- 4 Think of a time in your life when things went wrong.

I went to a party with my boyfriend.  
I danced with another boy.  
I had a fight with my boyfriend.  
We broke up.

Make sentences like these.

I shouldn't have danced with the other boy.

If I hadn't danced with him, I wouldn't have had a fight with my boyfriend.

I should have just said sorry to my boyfriend.  
Then we wouldn't have broken up.



## SPEAKING AND LISTENING

### A social conscience

- 1 Work in small groups. Do you have a social conscience? Discuss situations 1–5 and decide what you would do.

*I'd ... I wouldn't ... I might ...*

Tell the class.

- 2 **CD3 6** Listen to five people describing a situation they were in. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where was he/she?
- 2 Who were the other people involved?
- 3 What was the problem?
- 4 Did he/she do anything? Say anything?
- 5 What was the other person's reaction?
- 6 What was the result?

### Talking about you

- 3 What would *you* have done in the same situations? Discuss in your groups, then tell the rest of the class.

*I wouldn't have done what she did.*

*I'd have told him ...*

### SPOKEN ENGLISH *just*

- 1 Look at the use of *just* in these sentences.

*I'd **just** reached the front of the line ...*

*I **just** need to ask a quick question.*

*... I was **just** furious!*

In which sentences does *just* mean ...?

really      a short time before      only/simply

- 2 Find other examples of *just* in CD3 6 on page 124.

- 3 Write the word *just* where you think it goes best in these sentences.

- 1 Miwako isn't here. She <sup>just</sup> left.
- 2 I'm sorry I'm in a bad mood. I'm tired, that's all.
- 3 I love your new coat!
- 4 I finished the most wonderful book. You have to read it!
- 5 I don't want any coffee. A glass of water, please.
- 6 John's so generous. I think he's amazing!
- 7 "Who's coming tonight?" "Me."
- 8 Hold on a minute. I'm going to the restroom.

- CD3 7** Listen, check, and repeat.

# Do you have a social conscience?

## What would YOU do?

- 1 You see some kids on the street dropping litter. There is a trash can ten feet away.
- 2 You're in a store. You see a woman shoplifting some food. She has three small children who look hungry.
- 3 You're in a clothing store where eating is forbidden. A woman opens a bag of chips and starts eating in front of you.
- 4 Your best friend is cheating on her fiancé, Bill. She's been going out with him forever, but she's also seeing a guy named Mark.
- 5 You are on the sidewalk. A man who says he's penniless and homeless is asking for money, so you give him some. As you're walking away, his phone starts ringing. He pulls out a really nice cell phone and starts talking to a friend.





## READING AND SPEAKING

### The victim meets the burglar

- 1 Have you or has anyone you know ever been the victim of a crime? Discuss the questions.
  - What happened?
  - Were the police involved?
  - Was the criminal arrested?
- 2 There is an organization called the Restorative Justice Consortium. It brings together criminals and their victims.
  - What do you think it hopes to achieve by this?
  - What might the victim of a crime have to say?
  - What might the criminal learn?
- 3 Read the headlines and the introduction to the newspaper article. How do you think the burglar and the victim became friends?
- 4 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about the victim.

Group B Read about the robber.

Answer the questions.

- 1 What personal details do you learn? (*name, age, background ...*)
  - 2 What was he doing in the moments before their first encounter?
  - 3 What was his first reaction? How did he feel? What did he think?
  - 4 How does he describe the act of violence?
  - 5 How did he feel after the crime took place?
  - 6 What was his reaction when asked to meet the other person?
  - 7 What made Will so angry?
  - 8 What did this outburst of anger make him realize?
  - 9 What does he think of the experience of restorative justice?
- 5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare your answers to the questions in exercise 4.

### What do you think?

- 1 Is bringing together the criminal and the victim a good idea? Could it help with all crimes? Could it help with bullying?
- 2 60% of people released after serving one year in prison are convicted of another crime. What does this statistic suggest?
- 3 The purposes of imprisonment are ...
  - to punish the criminal.
  - to protect society from the criminal.
  - to rehabilitate the criminal.

Do you think these goals are achieved?

What other forms of punishment might be more effective?

## WRITING PROS AND CONS p. 108

# I'M SORRY

## How a burglar and his victim became the best of friends

### THE VICTIM

**BUSINESSMAN Will Riley, 50,**  
lives in the city with his wife and  
daughter ...

I WAS getting ready to go to the gym when I walked into my hallway and stopped dead in my tracks. There, standing on the stairs, was a man about the same age as me, dressed in a scruffy leather jacket.

"What are you doing here?" I asked in shock. He said he was a neighbor who'd gotten lost. But it was obvious who he was.

I was suddenly scared. I thought, "If he has a knife, he could kill me." We kind of fought with each other. A passerby saw us and called the police. Somehow I managed to hold him until the police arrived. It was only after they arrested him and took him away that a police officer asked if I was OK. I put my hand to my head and felt blood. I hadn't realized what he'd done to me. It's incredible, but I just didn't register that he'd hit me really hard. He'd smashed a flower pot on my head, and all the pieces were on the ground. I went to the hospital and needed stitches.

After the burglary, my whole life changed. I've always lived in big cities, and I've never been afraid of urban crime, but suddenly I became too frightened to open my front door. All I could think was, "What if my daughter had been at home? Would he have attacked her?"

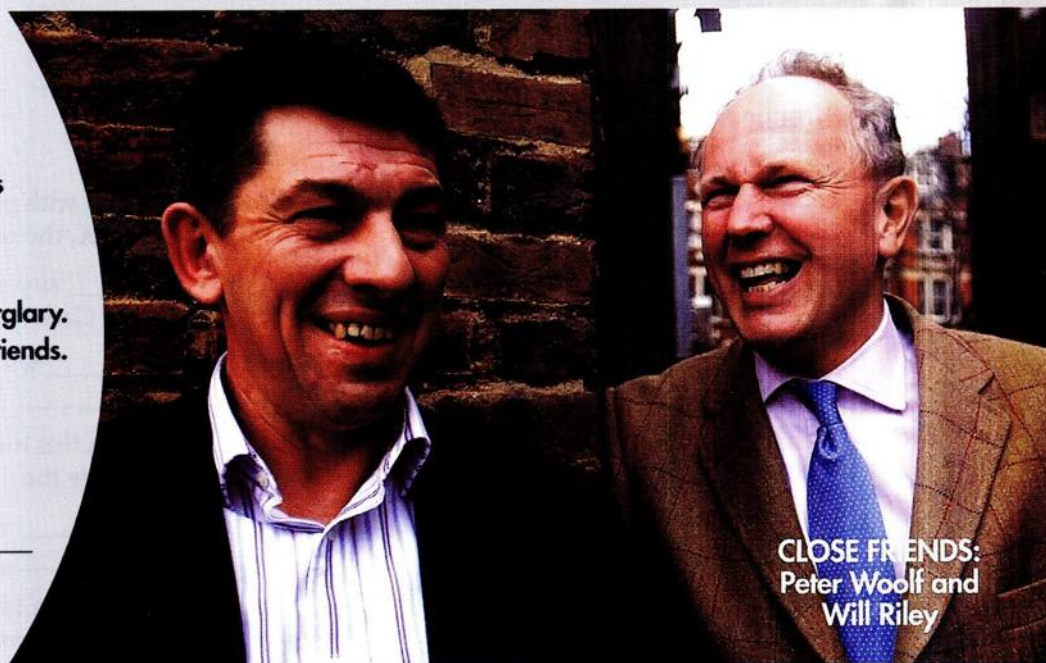


**PETER WOOLF**, a life-long criminal, broke into Will Riley's home one March evening. Will found Peter standing in his hallway, his pockets stuffed with money and jewelry.

Peter spent three years in jail for the burglary. So it's hard to think of them becoming friends.

Here, Will and Peter describe their first encounter, and why meeting each other again was the best thing for both of them ...

By **VICTORIA KENNEDY**



**CLOSE FRIENDS:**  
Peter Woolf and  
Will Riley

I was asked to meet the burglar in prison. I wasn't sure what the purpose was, but I went anyway. I was curious.

We sat in the prison library, and he explained how he'd come from a dysfunctional family and spent his life in and out of jail. He spoke without any emotion. But it was when he suddenly said, "Last time we met ..." that I exploded.

### **I screamed at him, "Why me? Why did you ruin my life?"**

"We didn't meet in a café! You broke into my house!" I was so angry. I screamed at him, "Why me? Why did you do this to me? Why did you ruin my life?"

I could see from his face that I had gotten through to him. He looked stunned. It was then I realized he was just an ordinary guy. And I wanted to help him ...

When I got home, I felt relieved. All my fears disappeared. Because I could see Peter was just a normal human being, he became less frightening.

When he was finally released, we stayed in touch. I've met him dozens of times since, and the change in him is amazing. It's hard to believe he's the same person who broke into my home. He's totally different.

I'm delighted that I've done something to help Peter get his life back.

## **THE ROBBER**

**PETER WOOLF, 50, is married to Louise, and works as a counselor to rehabilitate criminals ...**

**I**T WAS easy to break into Will's house. Just one push and the lock broke. I quickly took some gold jewelry and some money from upstairs. I was feeling lucky.

But when I was coming downstairs and I bumped into Will in the hallway, I suddenly felt frightened. I thought, "He's a big guy. If he wanted to, he could hurt me."

I tried to escape. I didn't want to hit him, but I did. I'm not a violent guy, but I just did what I had to do. There was a flower pot, and I smashed it on his head.

After I was arrested, all I felt was a big sense of relief. I was going back to a place I knew well. I'd been in and out of prison for 18 years, for theft, burglary, and fraud.

I'd hit rock bottom. I stole because it was the only thing I knew how to do. I knew it would only lead me back to prison.

I was given a three-year sentence. It was while I was in jail that someone mentioned Restorative Justice. I couldn't see the point, but I agreed to do it because I was bored.

It wasn't until I started walking down the hall toward the library that I got scared.

When I got there I sat down and just looked at the floor. I said the same things I always used to say to the police. But Will was furious, and I was shocked. I thought, "My God, I did all this."

### **I felt angry with myself, and ashamed. I was determined to make things better.**

I suddenly realized that I was responsible for this man's pain. He wasn't just a faceless nobody that I'd stolen from. I felt angry with myself, and ashamed. I was determined to make things better.

I started a course to be a counselor. It was at the counseling class that I met Louise. I was over the moon. And my life changed completely ...

I was released early after 18 months, and Louise and I got married. Life hasn't been easy, but I've worked hard to get things together.

I'm now helping others. I haven't committed another crime. I feel proud of myself. These days, I consider myself lucky that I broke into Will's house that day. If I hadn't—and if we hadn't become friends—I don't know what I would have done. I guess I'd have gone back to my old ways.

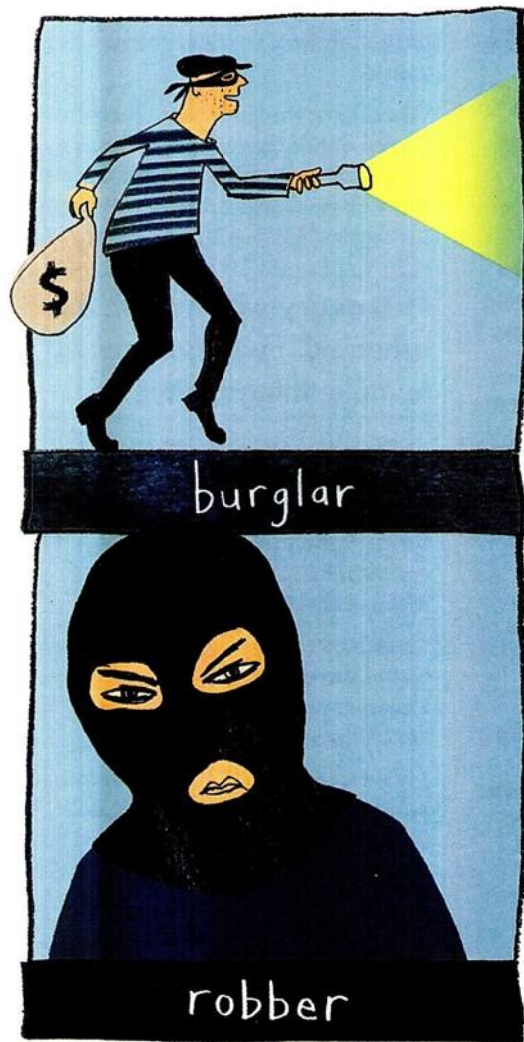


# VOCABULARY

## Words with similar meaning

- 1 Match the words in A with their similar meanings in B. They all appeared in the newspaper article on pages 70–71.

A	B
prison	frightened
burglar	bump into
scared	stunned
purpose	completely
meet	furious
angry	normal
shocked	jail
ordinary	point
delighted	over the moon
totally	robber

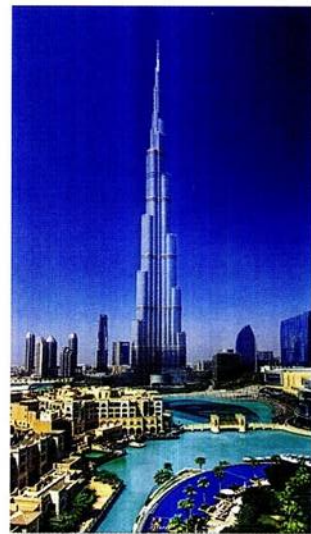


- 2 Complete the sentences with pairs of words from exercise 1. The first word is from A, the second word is from B.

- “Did you \_\_\_\_\_ anyone you know in town?”  
“Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ Carlos as I was coming out of a store.”
- “Aren’t you \_\_\_\_\_ with your test grade?”  
“You bet. I’m \_\_\_\_\_. It’s great!”
- “The \_\_\_\_\_ of this meeting is to brainstorm ideas.”  
“Sorry, but I don’t see the \_\_\_\_\_. Why bother?”
- “You must be \_\_\_\_\_ with Tim for crashing your car.”  
“I’m absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ with him.”
- “I was \_\_\_\_\_ when I heard that Joe had died. Weren’t you?”  
“I was \_\_\_\_\_. He was only 48.”
- “I’m \_\_\_\_\_ of dogs. I was bitten once.”  
“I’m not \_\_\_\_\_ of them. They’re usually really friendly.”

- 3 These words are similar but not the same. Choose the correct word.

- alone / lonely**  
live \_\_\_\_\_ happily  
feel \_\_\_\_\_ and unhappy
- big / great**  
\_\_\_\_\_ house/mistake/feet  
\_\_\_\_\_ artist/Wall of China/party
- tall / high**  
\_\_\_\_\_ person/building/trees  
\_\_\_\_\_ mountain/wall/ceiling
- small / little**  
\_\_\_\_\_ old lady/boy/finger  
\_\_\_\_\_ room/glass of water/dress size
- quick / fast**  
\_\_\_\_\_ car/train/food  
\_\_\_\_\_ look/worker/thinking



- 4 Which verb goes with which phrase?

win	the other team
beat	the championship

clean	my hair
wash	the apartment

make	a mess
do	your best

listen	a noise
hear	to music

talk	to my friends for hours
speak	to my bank manager

rob	a bank
steal	some jewelry

pay	someone a present
buy	at the cash register

borrow	money from someone
lend	money to someone



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Dealing with money

- 1 **CD3 8** Listen to the beginnings of five conversations. Match each conversation with a photo.

- Who are the people?
- What are they talking about?
- What questions are asked?

- 2 **CD3 9** Listen to the whole conversations. Check your answers to the questions in exercise 1.



- 3 Work with a partner. Look at 1–5. Try to remember the full conversations. The words in **blue** will help.

- 1 A Here's ... check.  
B Thank ... Is the tip ...?  
A No ... hope ... enjoyed ...  
B ... nice, ...  
A Can you ... here? ... card ... receipt.  
B Thanks. ... for you.  
A ... kind. ... hope ... again soon.  
B Bye!

included  
sign

- 2 A How ... standard ...?  
B \$120 ...  
A ... everything?  
B That ... two people, but it ... breakfast.  
A Is that ...?  
B Yes, ... afraid ... But ... \$120 does ... tax.

per night  
extra

- 3 A ... tickets ... MasterCard.  
B Can you ... number?  
A 5484 6922 3171 2435.  
B ... date?  
A 09/18.  
B And the three ... security number ...?  
A 721.

expiration  
digit

- 4 A ... give me ... my account?  
B Sure. ... number.  
A 4033 2614 7900.  
B Bear ... one moment. The ... cleared  
balance ... is \$542.53 ...

balance  
credit

- 5 A ... cappuccino ... bottles ... water, please?  
B ... \$14.50.  
A Thank you.  
B And here's your change. 50 cents.  
A Thanks. Um ...? How much ...? I think ... mistake!  
B Sorry?  
A I think you must ... I ... \$20, but ... given me ... \$15.  
B No, I ...  
A Well, I ... pretty ... I gave you ...  
B Oh, ...? Um ... Here ...  
A Thanks.

change  
made a mistake

- 4 **CD3 9** Listen again to the conversations. Check your answers in CD3 9 on page 124.

- 5 Discuss the questions.

- What's the exchange rate between your currency and the U.S. dollar?
- Are you overdrawn at the end of the month? Can you economize if you have to?
- What credit cards do you have? Do you have any store cards? Do you stay within your credit limit?



# 10

# All things high tech

Noun phrases • Compound nouns • I need one of those things ...

## STARTER

- 1 Underline the nouns in these sentences.

*My brother has the best computer in the world.  
Mine is just an old laptop.*

Find ... a definite article   an indefinite article  
a possessive adjective   a possessive pronoun

- 2 Underline the reflexive pronouns in these sentences.

*Mike programs his computer himself.  
I live by myself, which suits me fine.*

## CHIPS IN EVERYTHING

### Noun phrases

- 1 Work with a partner. Read the text about microprocessors. Answer the questions.

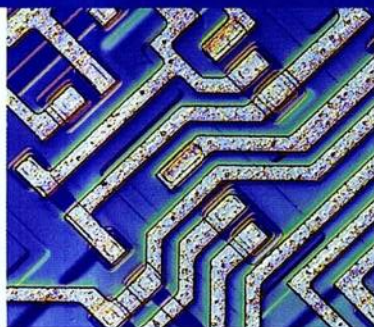
- 1 Do you agree with these statements? Why/Why not?  
Microchips are huge.   Microchips are tiny.
- 2 What things in our daily lives have microchips in them?
- 3 In what way are computers very simple?
- 4 How long does it take to make microprocessors?
- 5 Why do designers put pictures on the chips?
- 6 In what ways is the future exciting?

# MICROPROCESSORS

The biggest thing since  
the invention of the wheel

## What are they?

A microprocessor – (also known as a microchip, or just a chip) – is a small, thin piece of silicon that has been printed with transistors. One chip can contain hundreds of millions of transistors, performing billions (yes, billions) of calculations each second. The smallest are just a few mm<sup>2</sup>. The microchip is the most complex product that has ever been made.



## What do they do?

Microprocessors are the brains of your personal computer. They control everything in our lives. They are used in all digital devices – cell phones, calculators, cameras, radios, ovens, refrigerators, washing machines, and watches. Without microprocessors, modern cars wouldn't start or stop (there are about 60 per car), TV remotes wouldn't change channels, and we couldn't text each other on our cells. Doctors and surgeons wouldn't be able to diagnose, treat, or operate. Nearly all of their equipment contains microchips.

## How do they work?

Transistors are microscopic electronic switches that turn on and off billions of times a second. It's hard to believe that basically that is all a computer does – it either says *Yes* or *No*.

To process the words, images, and sounds we use every day, computers and other devices transform these communications into a simple code that uses the numerals 0 and 1 to represent the on and off states of a transistor. This language of 0s and 1s is known as digital information.

## How are they made?

It takes less than a month to make a microprocessor and involves over 250 manufacturing steps, but it can take years to design one. Sometimes the engineers put pictures on the surface of the chip because they want to show it's theirs. The pictures are incredibly tiny, and can only be seen with a microscope. They are like the designers' signature.

## What about the future?

The digital world is only a few decades old. There are still countless more things we could do with microprocessors. Soon they'll even be able to make themselves. No one knows what will happen. Only time will tell.





- 2 Look back at the text on page 74. Find and complete these sentences.

Microprocessors are the biggest thing since ...  
 A microchip is a ...  
 The smallest ... mm<sup>2</sup>.  
 ... most complex product ...  
 Microprocessors control ...  
 They are used in all ...  
 We couldn't text ...  
 Doctors and surgeons ... Nearly all ...  
 It takes less than a month ...  
 Microprocessors will even be able to ...

### GRAMMAR SPOT

Noun phrases can consist of:

#### Articles

A chip is **a** small piece of silicon.  
 It is **the** biggest thing since **the** invention of **the** wheel.

#### Possessives

All of **their** equipment contains microchips.  
 They want to show it's **theirs**.  
 The pictures are like the designers' signature.

#### all/everything

Microchips control **everything** in our lives.  
 They are used in **all** digital devices.

#### Pronouns

Microchips will be able to make **themselves**.  
 We couldn't text **each other**.

► Grammar Reference 10.1–10.5 pp. 139–141

- 3 Read these facts. Which surprise you most?

### Did you know...?

There are **20 billion** microchips in use in the world today. Every year, microchip production increases exponentially.

Every **18 months**, the technology develops to allow **twice** as many transistors to fit on a chip, **doubling** its speed and capacity.

The smallest wire on a chip is less than **0.1 microns** wide. A human hair is **100 microns** thick.

## PRACTICE

### Articles – a/an/the/no article/one

- 1 Discuss the use of articles in these sentences.

I bought **a** laptop and **a** printer on Saturday.  
**The** laptop has **an** *Intel* microprocessor.  
*Intel* is **the** largest manufacturer of computer chips in **the** world.  
**One** chip contains millions of transistors.  
 I don't understand **(-)** computers.

- 2 Complete the text with *a/an/the*, or no article.

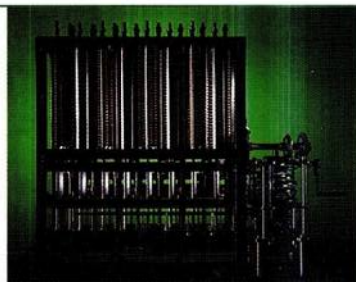
### THE FIRST COMPUTER

**Charles Babbage (1791–1871)** was

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ scientist and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ engineer. He had the idea for (3) \_\_\_\_\_ first programmable computer. He wanted to build (4) \_\_\_\_\_ machine that could do (5) \_\_\_\_\_ calculations without making the mistakes that human "computers" made.

He designed a machine called the Difference Engine, and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ British government provided funds. (7) \_\_\_\_\_ machine was never completed because Babbage ran out of (8) \_\_\_\_\_ money.

In 1991, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ team of engineers from (10) \_\_\_\_\_ Science Museum in London built one of Babbage's machines using his original designs, and it worked perfectly.



**CD3 10** Listen and check.

- 3 Complete the sentences with *a/an/the*/no article, or *one*.

- "Where's Han?" "In \_\_\_\_\_ kitchen cooking \_\_\_\_\_ lunch."
- Washington, D.C., is \_\_\_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_\_\_ United States.
- We had \_\_\_\_\_ dinner in \_\_\_\_\_ best restaurant in \_\_\_\_\_ world.
- \_\_\_\_\_ day I'm going to be \_\_\_\_\_ rich man.
- Victor's in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital. He's had \_\_\_\_\_ operation.
- Certainly \_\_\_\_\_ computers have changed \_\_\_\_\_ modern life.
- "How do you like your coffee?" "Black with \_\_\_\_\_ sugar, please."
- I have two daughters. \_\_\_\_\_ daughter is \_\_\_\_\_ teacher, \_\_\_\_\_ other works in \_\_\_\_\_ advertising.
- Today is \_\_\_\_\_ first day of \_\_\_\_\_ rest of your life. Enjoy it.

### Speaking

**CD3 11** Work in small groups. Listen and then answer the questions. Be careful with articles.

Where did you have lunch today? *I had lunch in a cafe/in the school cafeteria.*



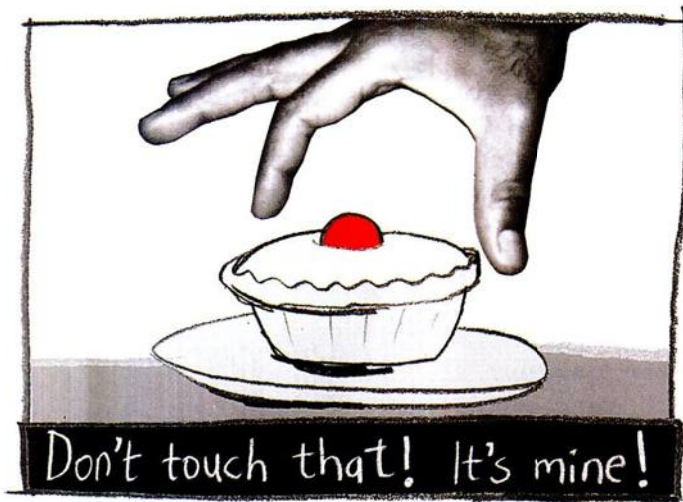
## Possessives

- 4 In these sentences, which word is a possessive adjective? Which are possessive pronouns?

I'm very proud of **my** children.

Don't touch that! It's **mine**!

James is an old friend of **ours**.



Choose the correct word.

- 1 "Is that *her / hers* book?" "Well, it isn't *my / mine*."
  - 2 "Who's / Whose car is that?" "It's *our / ours*. Nice, huh?"
  - 3 Microsoft owes *it's / its* success to Windows.  
That's why *it's / its* the biggest software company in the world.
  - 4 Those aren't *your / yours* socks. These blue ones are *your / yours*.
  - 5 Mary, this is Pete. Pete's an old friend of *me / mine*.
  - 6 My sisters borrow *my / mine* clothes, and I borrow *their / theirs*.
- 5 In these sentences when does the apostrophe come before s? When does it come after?

**My wife's family lives in the northeast.**  
**I went to a boys' school.**

Put the apostrophe in the correct place in these sentences.

- 1 I borrowed my dads car.
- 2 My parents new house is great.
- 3 I like Julianas friend.
- 4 The childrens room is upstairs.
- 5 I really like my brothers friend.

## its or it's

- 6 **CD3 12** Listen to the sentences. Select the words you hear.

- |                  |               |                  |
|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 its it's       | 3 there their | 5 they're their  |
| 2 theirs there's | 4 it's its    | 6 there's theirs |

## all and every ...

- 7 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 I buy ~~my all~~ clothes in secondhand stores.
- 2 All was stolen in the burglary.
- 3 "Did they take any of your necklaces?" "All."
- 4 In my family we like all baseball.
- 5 All enjoyed the party.
- 6 All of employees in my company work hard.

- 8 Complete the sentences with *all/everything/everybody/everyone*.

- 1 Two plus two is four. **Everybody** knows that.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ I want is you.
- 3 I'm having a terrible day. \_\_\_\_\_ is going wrong.
- 4 My friend calls me \_\_\_\_\_ the time.
- 5 My sister is really popular. She knows \_\_\_\_\_ , and \_\_\_\_\_ knows her.

## Reflexive pronouns and each other

- 9 Look at the sentences.

**I cut myself shaving.**

**They send each other e-mails.**

Which sentence expresses the idea: ⇄ ?

Which sentence expresses the idea: ↷ ?

Complete the sentences with *myself/yourself* ... or *each other*.

- 1 We love \_\_\_\_\_ and we're going to get married.
- 2 He's crazy! He could have killed \_\_\_\_\_ !
- 3 Do you like the cake? I made it \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 "Can you make me a cup of coffee?"  
"No. Do it \_\_\_\_\_."
- 5 My kids get along well with \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 6 Please make \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
- 7 We're very different, but we understand \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 8 Her kids are good. They know how to behave \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 9 The food's all ready, so help \_\_\_\_\_ to whatever you want.

## mime

With a partner or on your own, mime these to the class. The others must say what you're doing.

- look at yourself in the mirror  
**You're looking at yourself in the mirror.**
- talk to yourself
- hate each other
- help yourself to some food
- enjoy yourself
- help each other with homework
- shout at each other
- not speak to each other





## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

What's your favorite thing to do online?

- 1 Work in small groups. Do you think these statements are true or false?

3.3 billion searches are made on *Google* search engine every day.

Over 210 million people in the U.S. have their own web page on social networking sites such as Facebook and LinkedIn.

In 2005, the original Hollywood sign was sold on eBay for \$450,400.

55 percent of the web pages on the Internet are in English.

1 out of 3 couples who marry in the U.S. met on an online site.

88% of websites are never visited.

- 2 **CD3 13** Listen to five people talking about their favorite things to do online. Underline what they say they like to do.

There is a web that no one knows about. It is called the deep web, and it is 500 times bigger than the surface web we all know about.

1		<b>Jacob</b> 1 Talk about baseball 2 Play games	3 Tweet 4 Look for jobs
2		<b>Amelia</b> 1 Watch movies 2 Study French	3 Chat with friends 4 Read movie reviews
3		<b>Katsu</b> 1 Post photos 2 Meet new people	3 Socialize with friends 4 Gossip
4		<b>Arturo</b> 1 Use online textbooks 2 Learn about animals	3 Find answers 4 Do research for papers
5		<b>Samantha</b> 1 Shop for clothes 2 Post fashion photos	3 Do banking 4 Get good deals

### SPOKEN ENGLISH *also, as well, and too*

- Look at the position of the expressions *also, as well, and too* in these lines from **CD3 13**  
*I also use it to research papers.*  
*We gossip quite a bit as well.*  
*I watch bad movies, too.*
- Put the three expressions in these sentences.  
 I watch bad movies.  
 I shop at the mall.  
 I tweet about the games.
- Only two of the expressions sound right in these sentences.  
 "Dave's nice." "His sister is \_\_\_\_."  
 "I'm going home now." "I am \_\_\_\_."  
 Don't forget your coat. And take your umbrella \_\_\_\_.  
 Buy some bread. And some coffee \_\_\_\_\_.
- Only *one* of the expressions sounds right in these sentences.  
 "I like Harry." "Me, \_\_\_\_."  
 "I'm thirsty." "Me, \_\_\_\_."

- 3 Put the words into the correct order to make sentences about how the people spend time online.

- baseball forums / on / like / I / to / go
- addict / total / I'm / Netflix / a
- we / our time / group chats / most of / on / spend
- figure out / to / problems / I / use it / the solutions to
- get / on Pinterest / of ideas / I / a lot

- 4 Work in pairs. Choose one of the people and listen in more detail. Tell the rest of the class about the person you chose.

### Talking about you

- What is your favorite thing to do online?
- What are your favorite websites?
- The Internet represents the democracy of ideas. Is it right that it has no censorship? What are the dangers of this?



- 1 What do you want from a city? Put these features in order for you.  
(1 = the most important)

- \_\_\_ beautiful architecture
- \_\_\_ lots of parks and green spaces
- \_\_\_ a good transportation system
- \_\_\_ career opportunities
- \_\_\_ good shopping
- \_\_\_ things of cultural interest
- \_\_\_ entertainment and nightlife

Compare your answers with a partner, then with the class.

- 2 Look at the photos of Singapore. Discuss what you see.

- 3 Read the article quickly. What superlative adjectives can you find? What do they refer to?

Complete the chart.

superlative adjective	things referred to
busiest	port
smartest	
	metropolis
most efficient	
	water management system
	fountain, floating stage
biggest	
	airport slide
	tourists
highest	

# Singapore

## City of the Future

- 1 For tourists who want to visit a city that is ultra-modern yet green and beautiful, is easy to get around, and combines history, culture, and excitement, Singapore is the place. The Asian city-state has a population of just 5.5 million people and an area of only 277 square miles (718 square kilometers), yet it is a high-tech commercial center with one of the world's busiest ports.

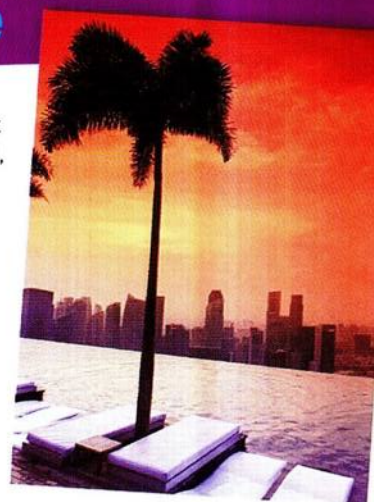
**"If we were ordinary, we would just disappear."**

- 2 Singapore doesn't have many natural resources. Located just one degree north of the equator, Singapore has a tropical rainforest climate – it's very hot and humid year round. It has no energy deposits, no forests, and no farms. For years, the country has had to import drinking water from its neighbor, Malaysia. "Singapore is not a natural country," says Chan Heng Chee, chair of the Lee Kuan Yew Centre for Innovative Cities at the Singapore University of Technology and Design. "For Singapore to survive, we have to be extraordinary," she says. "If we were ordinary, we would just disappear."

### A city in a garden

- 3 To be sure it didn't disappear, Singapore long ago decided it wanted to become the world's "smartest" city. For the past fifty years, the government has been striving to transform Singapore into the most innovative and sustainable metropolis on the planet. Today's smart city was the vision of former prime minister Lee Kuan Yew, who decades ago talked about his dream of creating "a city in a garden."

Yew's dream has come true. Walking around Singapore, it's easy to forget you're in a densely populated metropolis. Ten percent of land is parks and nature reserves. And trees and plants are everywhere in the downtown areas. Above the downtown jungle are 18 man-made futuristic "supertrees," which are 50 meters tall. The supertrees





moderate the temperature, absorbing and dispersing heat. They also collect rainwater. Several can even generate solar power.

### Smart transportation

- 4 Singapore has one of the world's most efficient transportation systems. A network of sensors, cameras, and GPS devices in Singapore's taxis help to prevent traffic jams. They track traffic, predict future congestion, and alert downtown drivers to alternate routes. Singapore's congestion pricing system uses traffic data to adjust prices in real time; drivers' accounts are automatically deducted as they drive through electronic gates. At intersections, elderly and disabled residents tap traffic lights with special cards to extend street crossing times. Subway passengers rarely wait more than a few minutes for a train.

Singapore discourages people from using cars. There is a limit (currently at half a percent) on how many new vehicles can be added to roadways each year. The government requires expensive certificates for automobile ownership.

### Water management

- 5 The city's water management system is among the world's most advanced. In 1963, water treatment was managed by multiple agencies, which made it difficult to formulate a long-term strategy. So the government created a national water agency to manage the collection, production, and distribution of water in the city. Today, two thirds of Singapore's land is occupied by 17 water reservoirs. Wastewater is collected and treated to produce clean drinking water.

### 13 million tourists

- 6 13 million tourists come to Singapore to marvel at its modernity, explore its gardens, shop at its vibrant malls, and enjoy its many other attractions. The fun begins the moment that the plane lands at Changi airport, where visitors can take a ride on the world's tallest airport slide in the world. It's four stories tall!

At Suntec City, one of Singapore's enormous shopping malls, visitors can admire the Fountain of Wealth, the world's largest fountain. They can watch a concert on The Float at Marina Bay, the world's largest floating stage. They can visit Gardens by the Bay, the biggest indoor garden in the world. And the wealthiest tourists can swim in the world's highest swimming pool – on the roof of the luxury Marina Bay Sands Hotel, it's 57 stories high!

Singapore is indeed a city of the future, and cities across the world are following its example. "Singapore is a pacesetter," says Chan of the Centre for Innovative Cities. "If we do a solution for Singapore and it works, others will come and see how we've done it."



- 4 Read the article again more carefully. Answer the questions after each part.

#### Part 1

- 1 Why do tourists like to visit Singapore?

#### Part 2

- 2 What is the weather like in Singapore?  
3 Does Singapore have many natural resources?

#### Part 3

- 4 What is a "smart" city?  
5 Why is Singapore called "a city in a garden"?

#### Part 4

- 6 What are three aspects of Singapore's transportation system that make it efficient?  
7 How does Singapore discourage people from using cars?

#### Part 5

- 8 What was the problem with Singapore's water management system?  
9 How did the government fix the problem?

#### Part 6

- 10 What are three fun things to do in Singapore?  
5 Here are some numbers from the article. What do they refer to?

a 17	e 277	h 1
b 57	f 50	i 4
c 13 million	g 5.5 million	j 18
d 10		

**CD3 14** Listen and check.

### What do you think?

- What would you like most if you lived in Singapore?
- What would you miss from your own country?
- If a tourist visited your town or city, what three things would you tell the person to see or do?
- What do you think is your city's biggest problem? What are some possible solutions?

▶▶ **WRITING** A FAMOUS TOWN OR CITY p. 110



# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Compound nouns

- 1 Nouns can be combined to make a new word.  
Here are some examples from the text on pages 78–79.

shopping mall    swimming pool    rainforest    traffic light

Where is the stress on these compound nouns?

- 2 Look at the dictionary entries. Practice saying the words.
- 3 Answer the questions.
- Why do people take aspirin?
  - Where do you find the words *Here lies James Barlow – RIP*?
  - What can you do if you want to listen to music without disturbing other people?
  - What are the front lights on a car?
  - What's the first thing you read in a news article?
  - Where are the headquarters of the United Nations?
  - Are you making headway in English?
- 4 In these lists, one compound noun doesn't exist. Which one is it?

sun	sunglasses	sunpool	sunscreen	sunset
card	running card	parking card	birthday card	business card
tea	tea bag	teacup	teatime	tea cars
case	money case	briefcase	suitcase	bookcase

CD3 15 Listen and repeat.

- 5 Put one word in each box to form three compound nouns.

dining  
1 waiting   
dressing

lights  
2  sign  
jam

antique  
3 secondhand   
shoe

Spider  
4 mail   
chair

brush  
5  dresser  
cut

secret  
6 travel   
real estate

brows  
7  glasses  
witness

wrapping  
8 toilet   
wall

**headache** /'hedeɪk/ *noun* [C] 1 a pain in your head: I've got a splitting (= very bad) headache. 2 note at ache 2 a person or thing that causes worry or difficulty: Paying the bills is a constant headache.

**headlight** /'hedlaɪt/ (also **headlamp**) *noun* [C] one of the two large bright lights at the front of a vehicle 2 picture on page P9

**headline** /'hedlɪn/ *noun* 1 [C] the title of a newspaper article printed in large letters above the story 2 the headlines [pl] the main items of news read on TV or radio

**headphones** /'hedfəʊnz/ *noun* [pl] a piece of equipment worn over or in the ears that makes it possible to listen to music, the radio, etc. without other people hearing it 2 note at listen

**headquarters** /hed'kwɔ:təz/ *noun* [pl, with sing or pl verb] (abbr HQ) the place from where an organization is controlled; the people who work there: Where is/are the firm's headquarters?

**headstone** /'hedstəʊn/ *noun* [C] a large stone with writing on, used to mark where a dead person is buried 2 look at gravestone, tombstone

**headway** /'hedwei/ *noun*  
IDM make headway to go forward or make progress in a difficult situation

Oxford Wordpower Dictionary (third edition) © Oxford University Press 2006



- 6 Work with a partner. Use your dictionary to find some compound nouns made with one of these words.

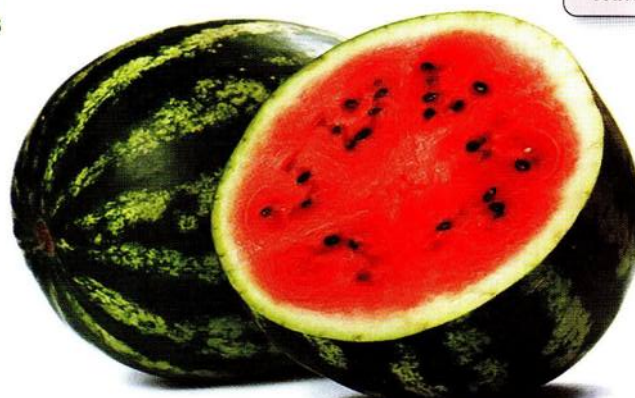
hand    foot    finger    fire    air    water

Describe them for the other students to guess.

It is a large fruit. It is green on the outside and red on the inside.

Watermelon!

Yes!





## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

*I need one of those things...*

**1 CD3 16** Listen to five students each describing one of the things in the pictures, but they don't know the word.  
Which object are they describing?

**2** Listen again and complete the lines.

- 1 "I need \_\_\_\_\_ when you want to open a bottle."
- 2 "I'm looking for \_\_\_\_\_ when you want to clean between your teeth. It's \_\_\_\_\_. It's white."
- 3 "They're \_\_\_\_\_, and the Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ to pick up food."
- 4 "It's \_\_\_\_\_, and it's used \_\_\_\_\_ flies."
- 5 "They're \_\_\_\_\_ you're cooking and you want to pick up something that's hot."

**3** Work in groups. Describe the other things in the pictures.

**4 CD3 17** Listen to the descriptions. What objects do you think are being described? Turn to page 147. Listen again. Which objects are they?

**5** Look at the language the people used in the descriptions in exercise 4:

- It's one of those things you...
- It's long and thin and...
- It looks like...
- It's the stuff you...
- It's used for...
- They're made of...
- It's a kind of...
- It's something you put on...
- You know! It has a...

**CD3 18** Listen and complete these lines.  
Practice saying them.

**6** Work with a partner. Turn to page 147.  
Take turns describing some of the other objects.

**7 CD3 19** Listen to two conversations in a store.  
What does each person want to buy?

**8** In pairs, write a similar conversation in a store.  
Act it out in front of the class.





# 11

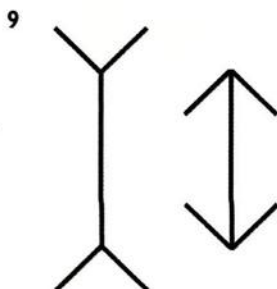
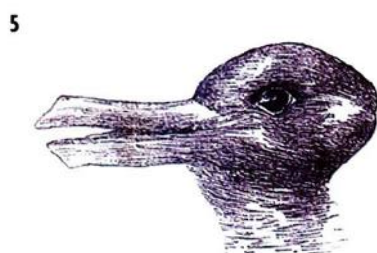
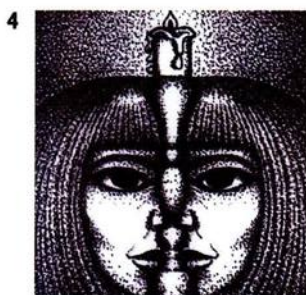
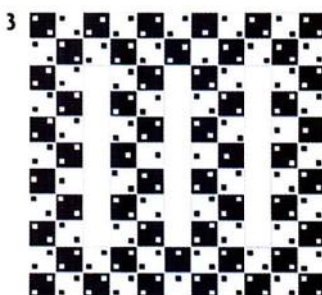
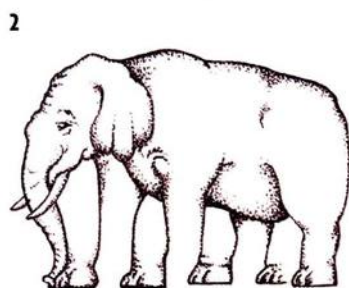
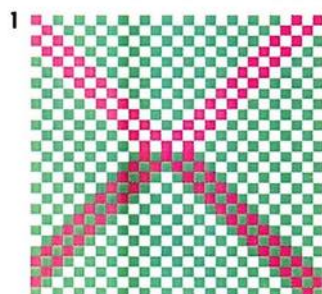
## Seeing is believing

Modals of probability • Phrasal verbs (2) • Expressing attitude

### STARTER

Work with a partner. Look at the optical illusions. Can you find ... ?

eight people   three animals   an old lady   five young ladies  
a word   the color red   parallel lines   a musical instrument



### OPTICAL ILLUSIONS

*must be/can't be/looks like*

- Two people are discussing the optical illusions on this page. Here are some lines from their conversation. Which optical illusion does each line refer to?
  - It **looks like** a man playing the saxophone.
  - That **must be** a candlestick in front of her face.
  - They **can't be** the same color.
  - She **might be wearing** a feather in her hat.
  - It **can't** have five legs.
  - It **could be** a duck or a rabbit.
  - The one on the left **must be** longer.
  - It **looks like** someone wearing glasses.
  - It looks wobbly, like jelly.
  - The dots **must be** creating the illusion.
- CD3 20** Listen to the full conversation. As you listen, point to the picture they are talking about.
  - What is the truth about each one?
  - Which two optical illusions can the woman *not* see?

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- Which of these sentences is the most sure? Which two sentences are less sure?
  - It **must be** a duck.
  - It **could be** a duck.
  - It **might be** a duck.
- The above sentences all mean *I think it's possible that it is a duck*. What does *It can't be a duck* mean?
- Compare the sentences. When do we use *like*?
  - It **looks like** a man playing the saxophone.
  - It **looks red** to me.
  - You **look like your mother**.
  - You **look hot and tired**.
- Look at the example of the continuous infinitive (*be + -ing*).
  - She **might be wearing** a feather.
 Find another example in exercise 1.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.1–11.2 p. 141



## PRACTICE

## Fact or fiction?

- 1 Work with a partner. Do you believe these statements are true or false? Use modal verbs in your comments. Discuss ideas as a class.

1 Lightning never strikes in the same place twice.

That must be true. I've often heard this.

It could be true but I'm not so sure.

- 2 Hurricanes always have female names.  
 3 Women have a higher pain threshold than men.  
 4 The sea is blue because it reflects the sky.  
 5 A penny dropped from a skyscraper can kill a person.  
 6 Hair and nails continue to grow after death.  
 7 Birds are bird-brained and stupid.  
 8 No two snowflakes are the same.  
 9 Bats are blind.
- 2 **CD3 21** Listen and check your ideas. Did you learn anything that surprises you?

## Grammar and speaking

- 3 Work with a partner. Take turns reading aloud the statements, and respond using the words in parentheses.
- 1 I think I lost my passport. (*must, worried*)  
*You must be very worried.*
- 2 Your phone's ringing! (*might, Jane*)
- 3 Paul's taking his umbrella. (*must, rain*)
- 4 Marcelo and Valeria never go on vacation. (*can't, much money*)
- 5 Hannah's not in class. (*could, coffee shop*)
- 6 Look! Three fire engines! (*must, somewhere*)
- 7 Tom hasn't seen Zoë in a long time. (*can't, go out together anymore*)
- 8 Whose jacket is this? (*might, John's*)
- 9 You got the highest score in the class! (*must, joke!*)

**CD3 22** Listen and check your answers. Practice again.

## What are they talking about?

- 4 **CD3 23** Listen to five short conversations. With a partner, guess the answer to the questions. Give reasons for your conclusions.
- 1 A A cup of coffee and a glass of water, please.  
 B Tap or bottled?  
 A Bottled, please.  
 B Did you want ice and lemon with that?  
 A Just ice, thanks. How much is that?
- Where do you think the people are? *At home? In a restaurant? In a coffee shop?*  
*They can't be at home because they're paying for the drinks. They could be in a restaurant, but ... They must be in ...*
- 2 What are they talking about? A TV? A cell phone? A computer?
- 3 What do you think she's talking about? An exam? A job interview? Her driving test?
- 4 Who are the people? Two friends? A husband and wife? A brother and sister?  
 What are they talking about? A birthday present? A wedding present? An anniversary present?
- 5 What do you think they are doing? Watching a movie? Having dinner? Dancing?



## WHAT ON EARTH HAS HAPPENED?

*must have been/can't have been*

- 1 **CD3 24** Christina is calling Rachel. Read and listen to Rachel's side of the conversation. What do you think has happened?

R Hello.

C ...

R Hi, Christina, what on earth's wrong? Tell me.

C ...

R Oh, no! That's terrible. When?

C ...

R They must have known no one was at home. What did they take?

C ...

R Did you save everything?

C ...

R Thank goodness. What else is missing?

C ...

R Not your camera! Well, at least you still have your photos. Oh, but Lisa's expensive leather jacket! Does she know?

C ...

R She's going to be so shocked when she gets back—and she has her final exams soon.

C ...

R Yeah, that's good. I know she always takes it with her to lectures. Have you called the police?

C ...

R Good. Do they have any idea who might have done it?

C ...

R So it wasn't just *your* apartment then. Is it messy? Did they turn the place upside down?

C ...

R Oh, how awful! Your nice clothes. Did they take any of them?

C ...

R Yes, of course, and anyway, it must be really difficult to see exactly what's missing.

C ...

R Look, Christina, you're obviously really upset. I'm coming over. I'll help you clean up. I'll be there in 15 minutes.

C ...



- 2 What can you work out from Rachel's side of the conversation? Read the questions. Discuss and choose the most likely answer.

- 1 What is the relationship between Rachel and Christina?

- ☐ They must be friends.  
☐ They could be sisters.

- 2 What do you think has happened?

- ☐ Christina's apartment must have been broken into.  
☐ Christina's apartment might have been broken into.

- 3 When did it happen?

- ☐ It could have happened during the night.  
☐ It may have happened while she was at work.

- 4 Who is Lisa?

- ☐ She must be Christina's roommate.  
☐ She can't be a student.

- 5 What was taken from the apartment?

- ☐ Christina's laptop computer could have been taken.  
☐ Lisa's laptop may have been taken.

- 6 Has Christina told Lisa about her jacket?

- ☐ She might have told her.  
☐ She can't have told her.

- 7 Has she called the police?

- ☐ She can't have.  
☐ She must have.

- 8 What happened to Christina's clothes?

- ☐ They can't have been stolen.  
☐ They must have been thrown onto the floor.





## What do you think?

- 3 Go through the questions in exercise 2 and tell the class what you think.

*We think Rachel and Christina must be friends and that Christina's apartment ...*

- 4 **CD3 25** Listen to the full conversation and check your answers.

### SPOKEN ENGLISH What on earth ... ?

- 1 Questions with ... *on earth* ... ? are often used in spoken English to express disbelief.

*What on earth has happened?*

*Where on earth have you been?*

*Who on earth left the window open?*

- CD3 26** Listen and repeat. Pay attention to the stress and intonation.

- 2 Work with a partner. Read the statements aloud and respond with disbelief.

1 I can't carry all these shopping bags. *What ... ?*

2 Tom's broken his arm in three places. *How ... ?*

3 There's someone at the door! *Who ... ?*

4 My aunt left all her money to her cat. *Why ... that?*

5 I can't find my car keys. *Where ... ?*

- CD3 27** Listen and compare your answers. Practice them.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 These sentences all express **past** probability. What is the present?

They **must have been** friends.

They **might have caught** the burglar.

It **can't have been** my jacket.

- 2 What is the past of these sentences?

He **must love** her very much.

She **can't be** at home.

- 3 Remember that *must* also expresses obligation. What is the past of this sentence?

I **must call** the police.

► Grammar Reference 11.3 p. 141

## PRACTICE

### Grammar and pronunciation

- 1 Match the phonemic script with the words.

1 /məstəv/	<b>could have</b>
2 /kəntəv/	<b>can't have</b>
3 /kədəv/	<b>may have</b>
4 /maɪtəv/	<b>might have</b>
5 /meɪəv/	<b>must have</b>

- CD3 28** Listen and repeat.

- 2 **CD3 29** Listen and read these lines aloud as a class.

1 It must have been stolen.

2 I can't have lost it.

3 He could have taken it.

4 I might have dropped it.

5 She may have found it.

- 3 Work with a partner. Read aloud the following situations. Take turns responding using the words in parentheses.

1 I can't find my ticket. (*must, drop*)

*You must have dropped it.*

2 John didn't come to school yesterday. (*must, sick*)

3 Why is Isabel late for class? (*might, oversleep*)

4 I can't find my notebook. (*must, leave at home*)

5 The teacher's checking Maria's exercise. (*can't, finish already*)

6 Why is Carl looking so happy? (*may, do well on the test*)

- CD3 30** Listen and check. Practice again with your partner.

### Discussing grammar

- 4 How many of these modal verbs can you fit naturally into each sentence? Discuss as a class. What are the different meanings?

can   can't   could   must   might   should

1 He \_\_\_\_\_ have been born in the 1960s.

2 \_\_\_\_\_ you help me wash the dishes, please?

3 You \_\_\_\_\_ see the doctor immediately.

4 \_\_\_\_\_ we go out to eat tonight?

5 I \_\_\_\_\_ stop eating candy.

6 I \_\_\_\_\_ learn to speak English.



## The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes

- 1 Sherlock Holmes is probably the most famous detective in the world of English literature. What do you know about him?
  - 1 Sherlock Holmes lived in *Chicago / London / Edinburgh*.
  - 2 Stories about him first appeared in the *19th / 20th / 21st* century.
  - 3 He was helped in all his adventures by *Dr. Krippen / Dr. Jones / Dr. Watson*.
- 2 You are going to read a Sherlock Holmes story called "The Three Students." Look at the picture and headings. What can you guess about the story?

- 3 Read **Part 1** and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where was Sherlock Holmes staying? Why?
  - 2 Who is Hilton Soames?
  - 3 What did Mr. Soames receive that afternoon?
  - 4 What was lying on the floor when he returned to his room after tea?
  - 5 Why did Mr. Soames refuse to call the police?
  - 6 Who is Bannister?
  - 7 What clues did Mr. Soames find?
  - 8 What does he think has happened?

- 4 Read **Part 2**. Who and what can you see in the picture? Are these sentences true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false ones.
  - 1 The tutor's room was on the same floor as the three students'.
  - 2 Holmes couldn't see into the room through the window.
  - 3 He found a clue on the carpet.
  - 4 The papers were next to the window because it was easier to read them in the light.
  - 5 Holmes found another clue in the bedroom.
  - 6 The intruder saw Mr. Soames returning.
  - 7 He escaped through the study window.

- 5 Read **Part 3**. What motives did each of the students have? Who do you think copied the papers? Why? Discuss with a partner and then the class.

*I think it could have been ... No, it can't have been ...*

# THE THREE



## PART 1 Who copied the exam questions?

Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson were in one of England's most famous university towns doing some research. One evening, Holmes received a visit from an old **acquaintance**, Mr. Hilton Soames, a tutor at one of the colleges. Mr. Soames looked very nervous and **agitated**.

"I hope you can spare me some of your valuable time, Mr. Holmes. Something very serious has happened at my college."

Holmes was very busy. "Why don't you call the police?" he said **irritably**.

"No, no that's impossible. We can't have a **scandal** at the college. I should explain. You see, tomorrow is the first day of the university exams, and this afternoon I received the Greek translation papers. I put them on the desk in my room while I went to have tea with a friend. When I returned, I saw immediately that the papers had been **disturbed**. Indeed some were lying on the floor by the window."

"I see," said Holmes. "Please continue."

"Well, at first I thought that perhaps my servant, Bannister, was responsible because he'd been in the room after I left, but he denied touching the papers and I believe him. He is a good and honest man. I examined the room very carefully."

"And what did you find?" asked Holmes impatiently.

"On the table by the window I found a broken pencil. Also, there was a cut, about three inches long, in the red leather top of my desk and next to it, a small **lump** of black mud. There were no signs of entry at the window. Please help me, Mr. Holmes. Someone must have copied the exam questions. If I don't find who did it, I will have to cancel the exam and there will be a scandal."

"We need to visit your room," said Holmes. "Come on, Watson."



# STUDENTS

## PART 2 🦋 Looking for clues

They walked towards the tutor's room, which was on the ground floor. Holmes tried to look in through the window, but he wasn't tall enough. He had to stop and **stand on tiptoe**. Above lived three students, one on each floor. Holmes entered the room and examined the carpet.

"Nothing," he said. "Let me look at the table by the window. Ah, yes, I see what might have happened. Someone took the papers from your desk over to the window table to copy them, because from there he could see when you were returning."

"Actually, Holmes, nobody could see me. I came back through the side door."

"Ah, so you may have surprised him, and he had to leave in a hurry. Did you hear someone running away as you entered?"

"No, I didn't."

"Interesting. So, our only clues are the cut in the leather and one small lump of black mud. Now tell me, where does that door go to?"

"My bedroom."

"Can I examine it?"

"Yes, of course."

Holmes followed Soames into his bedroom.

"Hello," said Holmes, "What's this? Another small lump of black mud, exactly like the one on the desk. Clearly your visitor came into the bedroom."

"I don't understand. Why did he do that?"

"Well, when you came back so suddenly, he must have run into your bedroom to hide. Look at the bedroom window, it's open. That must be how he escaped."

## PART 3 🦋 The three suspects

"Now," said Holmes, "The three students who live above you. Are they all taking this examination?"

"Yes."

"Tell me about them."

"Well, on the second floor is Gilchrist, an excellent student and an athlete. He plays rugby and cricket and is particularly good at the long jump. He's hardworking but poor. His father gambled away all the family money."

"And the third floor?"

"Daulat Ras lives there. He is from India, very quiet and hardworking, but Greek translation is his weakest subject. And finally there's Miles McLaren on the top floor. A very intelligent student, one of the best when he chooses to work — but he's been very lazy this term. He's been playing cards until late at night and I think he must be worried about this exam."

"Now tell me," said Holmes, "how tall are these young men?"

"How tall? What a strange question. Um ... I think Miles is taller than Daulat, but Gilchrist is the tallest, over six feet."

"Ah, that's important. Now, Mr. Soames. I wish you goodnight. I'll return tomorrow."

Next morning Sherlock Holmes left his house at 6 A.M. He returned at 8 A.M. to pick up Watson, and they made their way to the tutor's rooms. Mr. Soames was waiting nervously for them.

## Listening

6 **CD3 31** Listen to Part 4. Whose ideas in exercise 5 were correct? Did you guess who copied the papers? Now answer these questions.

- 1 What was it about the culprit that made Holmes suspicious?
- 2 Where did Holmes go to solve the mystery? What did he discover there?
- 3 What was Holmes's explanation? Describe what happened.
- 4 What does Watson say to congratulate his friend? How does Holmes reply?
- 5 Why does Bannister apologize?
- 6 Why can the examinations take place?

## What do you think?

- What were the cleverest parts of Holmes's investigation?
- How might the mystery be solved by detectives today?
- What methods of detection are used now which were not available 100 years ago?

## Language work

- 1 Work out the meanings of the **highlighted** words from their contexts.
- 2 Here are some things that Sherlock Holmes could have said while he was working out who did it. Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses.
  - 1 One of the students is undoubtedly the culprit. (*must*)
  - 2 I don't think Bannister did it. (*can't have*)
  - 3 The lump of mud is possibly a clue. (*could*)
  - 4 Perhaps the leather was cut by a knife. (*might have*)
  - 5 I don't think he escaped through the study window. (*can't have*)
  - 6 Perhaps the culprit is still hiding in the bedroom. (*may*)
  - 7 Maybe he jumped out of the bedroom window. (*could have*)
  - 8 I'm pretty sure that Gilchrist did it. (*must have*)

## Telling the story

Tell the story to the class in your own words. Begin:

Student 1 *Sherlock Holmes was working in a university town, probably Oxford.*

Student 2 *His friend Mr. Soames, who was a tutor, asked Holmes to help him because ...*

Student 3 ...



## VOCABULARY

### Phrasal verbs (2) with *out* and *up*

- 1 Read the dictionary entries for two phrasal verbs. Answer the questions.

- What are the verbs?
- What do *sth* and *sb* stand for?
- Which groups of phrasal verbs are separable? Which are inseparable?

**PHR V work sth out** **1** to find the answer; to solve sth: *I can't work out how to do this.* **2** to calculate sth: *I worked out the total cost.*

**work out** **1** to progress in a good way: *I hope things work out for you.* **2** to do physical exercise to keep your body fit: *We work out to music at my exercise class.*

**PHR V make sth up** **1** to invent sth, often sth that is not true: *to make up an excuse.* **2** to form sth: *the different groups that make up society.*

**make up (with sb)** to become friends again after an argument: *Has she made up with him yet?*

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of one of the phrasal verbs in exercise 1.

- Sherlock Holmes \_\_\_\_\_ who committed the crime.
- That's a lie. You \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_, didn't you?
- I know we argue a lot, but we always kiss and \_\_\_\_\_ afterwards.
- Don't worry, things will \_\_\_\_\_ in the end. They always do.
- He's determined to lose weight. He \_\_\_\_\_ at the gym every day.
- Women \_\_\_\_\_ 56 percent of the students in this university.
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ this bill for me? I don't understand all those figures.
- You must have \_\_\_\_\_ the answers by now.

- 3 Many more phrasal verbs are formed with *out* and *up*. Match a verb in A with a line in B.

A	B
1 find out	a problem
2 break up	in a Chinese restaurant
3 break out of	golf
4 eat up	with a boyfriend/girlfriend
5 eat out	all your vegetables and you'll be healthy
6 save up	what time the train leaves
7 sort out	a good idea
8 take up	to buy a new car
9 come up with	jail

- 4 Replace the words in *italics* with one of the phrasal verbs from exercise 3 in the correct form.

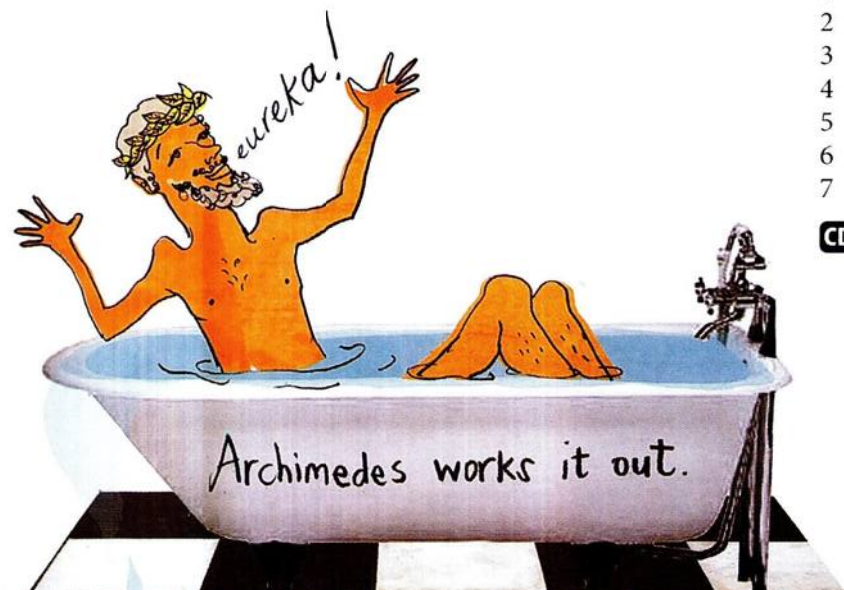
- You need to learn to relax. Why don't you *start doing* yoga?
- He's just *thought of* a brilliant plan to save the business.
- There's no dessert until you've *finished* all your meat and vegetables.
- Anne and Tony aren't talking to each other. They may even have *ended their relationship*.
- Did you hear the news? Three dangerous prisoners have *escaped from* the local prison.
- You must learn to *solve* your problems without your parents' help.
- We're *not spending much money* so we can buy a house.
- Have you *discovered* why you didn't get the job?

**CD3 32** Listen and check.

- 5 Work with a partner. Complete these sentences in any suitable way. Read them aloud to the class and compare ideas.

- I've just found out ...
- I never eat out ...
- I can't figure out ...
- I'm saving up ...
- I need to sort out ...
- I've just come up with ...
- It's important to make up ...

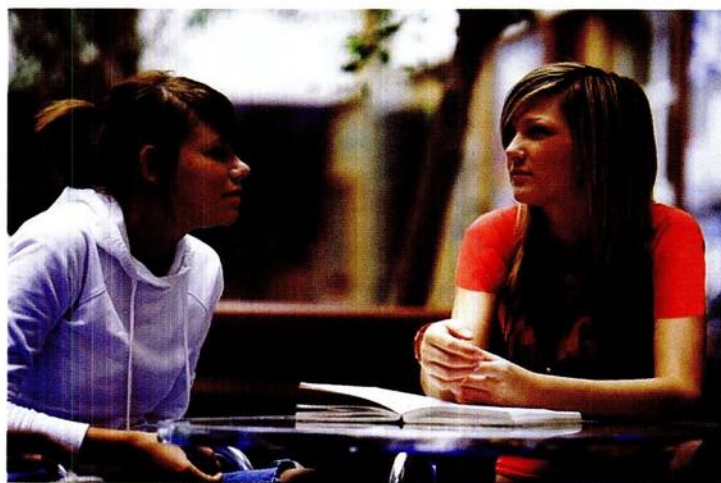
**CD3 33** Listen and compare. What are the responses?





Expressing attitude

- 1 **CD3 34** Read and listen to the conversation. Who are they talking about? What has happened?



- A Have you heard about Sam?  
 B No, I haven't.  
 A Well, I haven't spoken to him myself, but **apparently** he was caught cheating on his math exam.  
 B **No kidding!** I can't believe that. Does he have a problem with math?  
 A No. **Actually**, math is his best subject.  
 B **Really?** So why would he cheat? He doesn't need to.  
 A **Exactly**. And **anyway**, Sam's not the type to cheat.  
 B He must be very upset. **Presumably**, he's going to complain.  
 A Yeah, he's seeing the principal this afternoon. **Obviously**, he's going to deny it completely.  
 B Well, **hopefully**, the principal will believe him. Let me know what happens.  
 A I will. **Personally**, I think he'll be OK.  
 B I hope you're right. See you later.  
 A Yeah. Fingers crossed for Sam. Bye.

- 2 **CD3 34** Read and listen to the conversation again. The words in **bold** express the attitude of the speaker.

- 3 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the lines.

“ Did you hear about Marcos? You know, the guy who works in my office. Well, **apparently / obviously** he is going to be promoted. **Of course / To be honest**, I don't understand why. **Exactly / Personally**, I think he's hopeless at his job. He never does any work. **In fact / Naturally**, all he does all day is talk to his friend on the phone and drink coffee. **Unfortunately / Really**, his desk is next to mine. **Generally / Presumably**, he'll move to another office now, so **hopefully / really** I won't have to work with him anymore. **Anyway / Apparently**, enough about me. How's your work going? Are you still enjoying it? ”

- CD3 35** Listen and check. Read the lines aloud with a partner.

- 4 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.
- A Hi! You're Emily, aren't you?  
B **Actually**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A What did you think of the movie? Great, wasn't it?  
B **Personally**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A What's the latest gossip about Kate and her fiancé?  
B **Apparently**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A What's the weather like in spring?  
B **Generally**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A What time will we arrive?  
B **Hopefully**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A I've called and left a message for him, but no reply.  
B **Presumably**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A What did you do when you saw the accident?  
B **Obviously**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A How did you feel when they offered you the job?  
B **To be honest**, \_\_\_\_\_.

- CD3 36** Listen and compare your answers. Practice with your partner and continue the conversations.

**WRITING EXPRESSING ATTITUDE p. 112**



## STARTER

- 1 Look at the reported speech. What were the girl's words?

*She said she was a student.  
She asked me what I was doing in Miami.  
She told me she'd arrived on Monday.*

- 2 Here are some reported thoughts. What were my thoughts?

*I thought she worked in an office.  
I knew I'd seen her somewhere before.  
I wondered if she'd called me.*

## I READ IT IN THE NEWS ...

### Reported speech

- 1 Read the news article. Who is Jack Neal?  
What did he do? What happened in the end?

- 2 Work with a partner. Complete the article by  
reporting the words and thoughts in 1–10.

**CD3 37** Listen and check.



## Look, Mom! I bought a car on eBay for \$15,000

A three-year-old boy used his mother's computer to buy a \$15,000 car on the Internet auction site eBay.

Jack Neal's parents only discovered their son's successful bid when they received a message from the website.

The message said they (1) had bought a pink Nissan Figaro.

Mrs. Neal, 36, said that they (2) \_\_\_\_\_ it. She (3) \_\_\_\_\_ on the Internet the day before, but (4) \_\_\_\_\_ anything.

"Jack kept telling us that he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ so happy, and that we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ soon get a big surprise."

Mrs. Neal, from Houston, Texas, thought Jack (7) \_\_\_\_\_. He often used the computer, and she was pretty sure that he (8) \_\_\_\_\_ her password.

Her husband, John, 37, called the seller of the car, and explained that there (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a mistake.

"Fortunately, he saw the funny side and said he (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the car again."

Mr. Neal has told Jack to be more careful, and he has asked his wife to change her password.

1. You have bought a pink Nissan Figaro.

2. We can't understand it.

4. I didn't buy anything.

6. You'll soon get a big surprise!

8. I'm pretty sure he knows my password.

3. I was on the Internet yesterday.

5. I'm so happy!

7. He's joking.

9. There has been a mistake

10. I'll advertise the car again.



- 3 Here are Mr. Neal's words to Jack and his wife.  
*You have to be more careful, son.*  
*Do you think you could change your password, dear?*  
How are these words reported in the article?

- 4 Report these sentences.

- 1 "My Jack is very clever," his mother said.  
**Mrs. Neal said her son was very clever.**
- 2 "He usually plays computer games," she told me.
- 3 "I bought the computer for my work," his father explained.
- 4 "I won't use eBay anymore," Mrs. Neal decided.
- 5 "I don't know how it happened," said Jack.
- 6 "I've always liked computers," he told reporters.
- 7 "Please clean up your room," his mother asked Jack.
- 8 "Go and play soccer," his father told him.

**CD3 38** Listen and check.

## Reported questions

- 5 Read the news article below. Match the direct questions and thoughts to numbers 1–7 in the article, then report them.



**CD3 39** Listen and check. Repeat the reported questions.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 When we report words or thoughts, we usually move the tense back.

"I'm tired." She said she **was** tired.

Complete the reported speech.

"I've seen the movie before." She told me \_\_\_\_\_.

"You'll like it." She was sure I \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 What does **tell** mean in these two sentences?

She **told me that** she loved me.

She **told me to** go away.

- 3 When we report questions, there is no inversion, and no **do/does/did**.

"Where do you live?" He **asked me where** I lived.

Report these questions.

"How long are you staying?" She **asked me** ...

"Do you know Mike?" She **wanted to know if** ...

► Grammar Reference 12.1–12.3 p. 142

- 6 Imagine you were stopped by the police and asked these questions. Report them.

"Where are you going?" (*ask*)

They **asked me where** I was going.

"Where have you been?" (*ask*)

"Do you live in the area?" (*want to know*)

"How old are you?" (*wonder*)

"Have you been with friends?" (*demand to know*)

"What time did you leave home?" (*ask if I could remember*)

**CD3 40** Listen and compare. Look at CD3 40 on page 128 and practice the conversation with a partner.

# Man throws away \$30,000 in town center

NEWS

Daily Mail Reporter

A mystery man started a riot in a busy town center yesterday by hurling \$30,000 into the air.

Traffic was stopped at 11:00 a.m. as money rained down from the sky.

Local store clerk Anthony Jones, 55, said "I couldn't understand it, so I asked my neighbor (1) **what was happening**." They saw people on their hands and knees grabbing money. "No one knew (2) \_\_\_\_\_," he said. "They were just stuffing it in their pockets."

Passerby Eleanor Morris said, "I wondered (3) \_\_\_\_\_, because the traffic was at a complete standstill."

Florist Jane Thomas saw the man, who was wearing a red shirt. "I asked him (4) \_\_\_\_\_ all his money, but he didn't answer. He just laughed."

Police asked Jane if she (5) \_\_\_\_\_. "I told them I'd never seen him before. He certainly wasn't from around here."

The police confirmed that a local forty-year-old man had been questioned. "He refused to tell us (6) \_\_\_\_\_," a spokesman said, "so it's a complete mystery. He wanted to know if we (7) \_\_\_\_\_ arrest him, but giving away money isn't against the law."





## PRACTICE

### But you said ...!

1 Complete the conversations with an idea of your own.

- 1 A Bill's coming to the party tonight.  
B Really? I thought you said he wasn't feeling well.
- 2 A I'm making dinner for Joe tonight.  
B I didn't know you \_\_\_\_\_!
- 3 A Oh, no! I spilled ketchup on my white shirt!  
B I told you to be careful. I knew \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A Did you get me something to eat?  
B Sorry. I didn't realize \_\_\_\_\_. What would you like?
- 5 A I'm 25 today!  
B Are you? I didn't know \_\_\_\_\_. Hope you have a great day!
- 6 A Oh, no! It's raining!  
B Really? But the weather forecast said \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 A You left the doors and windows of the apartment open this morning.  
B I'm sorry. I was pretty sure I \_\_\_\_\_ all the doors and windows.
- 8 A Where did Tom go last night?  
B I have no idea \_\_\_\_\_.

**CD3 41** Listen and compare. Practice the conversations.

### The interview

2 Work with a partner. Think of questions you are asked when you have a job interview.

*Where have you worked before?  
Do you like working in a team?*

**Full-time RECEPTIONIST**  
required in ★★★★★ Boston hotel  
Experience and  
foreign language preferred  
Annual salary \$30k  
Please send CVs to: info@hotelcharles.com  
**apply now**

3 Julia has just been for a job interview as a receptionist. She's telling her friend about it.

*They asked me why I wanted the job.  
They asked me if I had any experience.  
They wanted to know if I could do word processing.*

What other questions do you think they asked?  
Use ideas from exercise 2.

**CD3 42** Listen and compare.

### Reporting verbs

4 Match the reporting verbs in the box with the direct speech.

a invite	b persuade	c explain	d promise
e ask	f remind	g offer	h encourage

- 1 e "Can you help me?" she said to me.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ "Don't forget to mail the letter," he said to her.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ "I will really study hard for my exams," she said.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ "Come to my party," he said to me.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ "You really must travel. You'd love it," she said to me.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ "I'll give you a lift to the airport," he said to me.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ "I'm not sure about this job." "Go on! Apply for it! You'd be good at it," he said. "OK, I will," I replied.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ "I've been very busy," she said.

5 Report the sentences using the reporting verbs.

*She asked me to help her.*

**CD3 43** Listen and check.

### She didn't say that!

6 **CD3 44** Listen to the conversations. What mistakes do the people make when they report the conversations?

1 *Merinda called from work. She said she'd call you again later.*

*She didn't say she'd call later. She asked Jenny to call her.*

2 *I got a job as manager! I'm going to earn \$50,000 a year!*

3 *My mom said you couldn't have a turn.*

4 *James — Sue called. Meet her outside the theater at 7:45.*

5 *Tom offered to fix my computer. He said he was sure he could do it. He wanted \$130!*



# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Ways of speaking

1 There are many verbs that describe ways of speaking.

to discuss to promise to agree

Add two more verbs from the box to each category in the speech bubbles on the diagram.

advise	chat	scream	fight	accuse
recommend	whisper	criticize	gossip	
order	quarrel	demand	protest	deny

2 Write in a verb from the diagram. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

- \_\_\_\_\_ to a colleague in the office about football
- \_\_\_\_\_ with your parents about staying out late
- \_\_\_\_\_ at the kids because they're annoying you
- \_\_\_\_\_ that you made a mistake
- \_\_\_\_\_ to the waiter about the cold soup
- \_\_\_\_\_ if you see blood/your favorite movie star/a rat
- \_\_\_\_\_ against the war/about pay and conditions
- \_\_\_\_\_ that your friend should see a doctor

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition (or no preposition).

- I talk \_\_\_\_\_ my kids \_\_\_\_\_ everything.
- My boss criticizes \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ my work.
- I agree \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ most things, but not politics.
- I discuss \_\_\_\_\_ everything \_\_\_\_\_ my wife.
- People love gossiping \_\_\_\_\_ celebrities.
- The teacher accused me \_\_\_\_\_ cheating on the test.

4 Work with a partner. Think of a sentence to complete these ways of speaking.

*My mother told me to clean up my room.*

1 My mother	advised	me	to ...
The teacher	told	the students	
My doctor	persuaded	...	

2 My friends	suggested	that	we ...
I	admitted		the teacher ...
My brother	complained		...

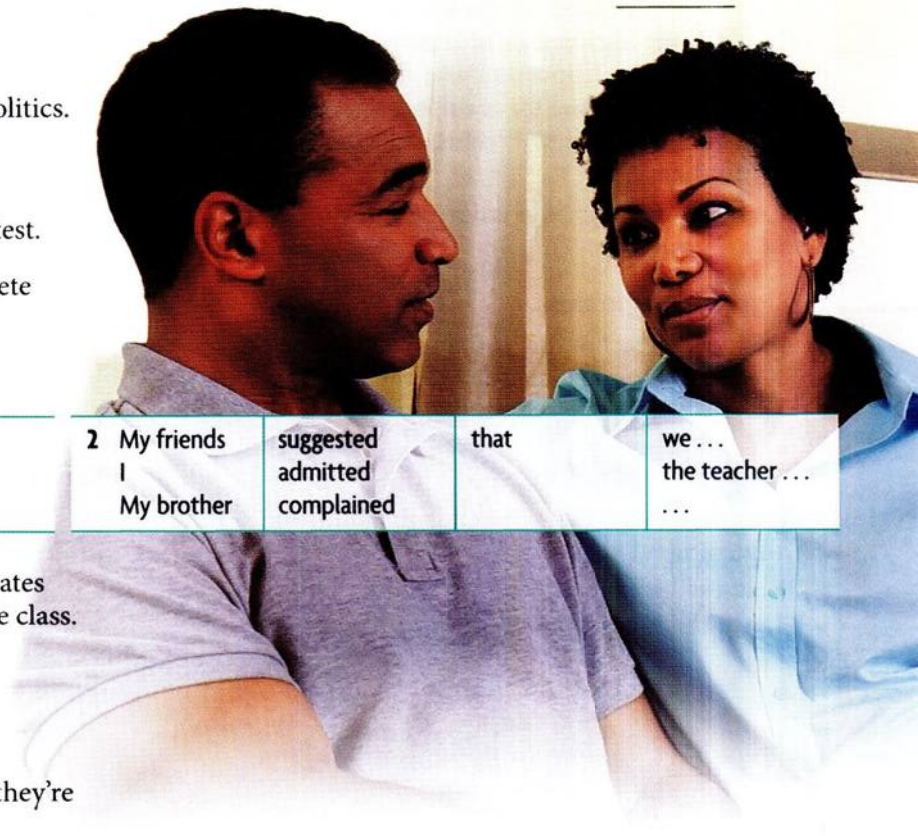
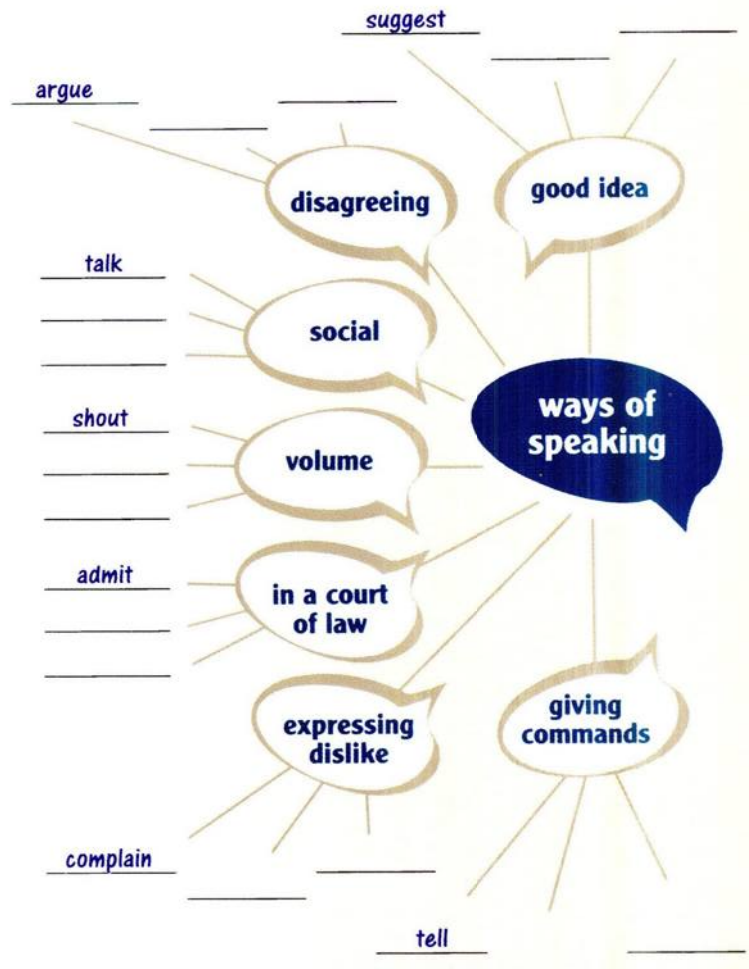
5 With your partner, write a conversation that illustrates some of the verbs on this page. Act it in front of the class.

A *Have you been out spending money again?*  
*We just can't afford it!*

B *Don't be so cheap! It's only a few dollars!*

The others must say who the people are and what they're talking about.

*It's a husband and wife. They're arguing. He's complaining that she spends too much money. She accuses him of being cheap.*





## READING AND SPEAKING

### People who changed the world

- 1 Do you have a hero or heroine?  
Is he/she in the world of ...?

art	politics	entertainment
style	science	sports

Tell the class.

- 2 Read the introduction to "Movers and shakers." Look at the pictures of the four people. Write down anything you know about each person.  
Compare your lists as a class.
- 3 Work with a partner. Discuss these questions. How many can you answer?
- 1 Who is known simply as "The King"?
  - 2 Who was the most prominent women's rights leader in the United States?
  - 3 Who is referred to as the "father of modern science"?
  - 4 Who is known as the "Great Master"?

Read the four texts *quickly* to check.

- 4 With your partner choose one of the texts and answer the questions.
- 1 What century did he/she live in?
  - 2 What was his/her area of activity (politics, science ...)?
  - 3 What was an important year for him/her? Why?
  - 4 Why were his/her ideas opposed?
  - 5 What did he/she say? What did others say about him/her?
- Compare and exchange information with other students.
- 5 Discuss the questions.
- 1 How did each of the people change the world?
  - 2 What prevailing ideas did they challenge?
  - 3 What happened as a result?

### What do you think?

- What *mover and shaker* would you add from your country?
- What did he/she do?
- How did other people react?

# MOVERS

**It's hard to imagine that what we now believe to be true wasn't always so. There was a time when people believed the earth was flat ...**

**Every now and then, someone comes along with new ideas. ANN WILSON profiles five people who left the world a different place.**

## Confucius 551 BCE–479



Confucius was a Chinese thinker and social philosopher known as the "Great Master." He spoke and dreamed of a world where happiness, good, and peace would replace misery, corruption, and war. He established principles for life that have lasted over 2,500 years. Perhaps his most famous is the Golden Rule, or ethic of reciprocity, that

teaches the importance of treating others with respect.

Confucius traveled throughout China encouraging people to trust their own moral judgment. He taught that rulers should lead by example to create a truly great empire. He was persecuted by his critics, who feared that these thoughts might lead to chaos and rejection of the ruling system. Once, he was imprisoned and nearly starved. In 484 BCE, at the age of 67, he returned home and spent his last years writing. These writings formed the basis for the dominant Chinese ideology known as *Confucianism*.

His teachings and philosophy have deeply affected Chinese, Korean, Japanese, and Vietnamese thought and life and have influenced thinkers worldwide.

### HE SAID

**"What you do not wish for yourself, do not do to others."**

### THEY SAID

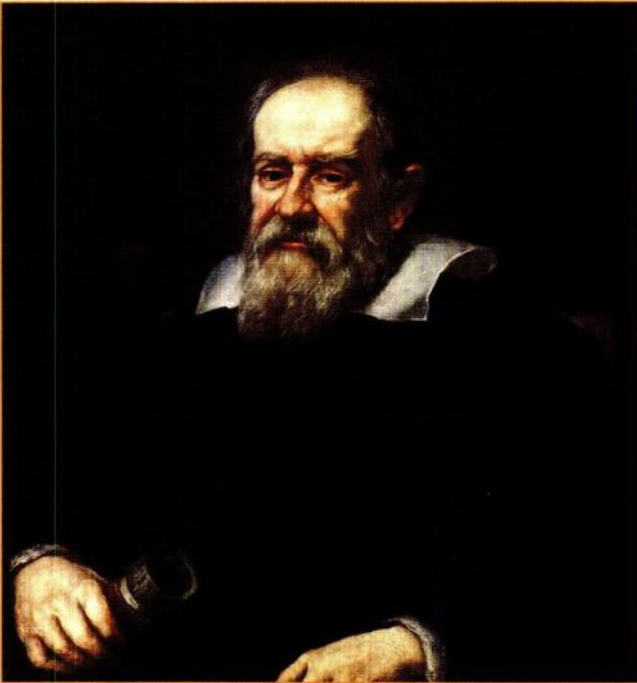
**"In a society where relationships are considered more important than laws, there will be corruption and nepotism."**



# AND

# SHAKERS

Galileo Galilei 1564–1642



Galileo was born in Pisa, Italy. He spent years observing the movements of the planets through a telescope. At the time it was generally thought that the earth was the center of the universe. Galileo believed, as Copernicus had done seventy years before, that the earth rotated on its axis once daily and traveled around the sun once every year. At the time, this was a fantastic concept that was considered dangerous by the Church.

In 1633 he was found guilty of heresy and spent the final years of his life imprisoned in his own home.

Galileo is referred to as the "father of modern science." He paved the way for the separation of science and religion.

## HE SAID

***"All truths are easy to understand once they are discovered; the point is to discover them."***

## THEY SAID

***"The proposition that the sun is in the center of the world is absurd, philosophically false, and heretical; it is contrary to Holy Scriptures."***

Susan B. Anthony 1820-1906



Susan B. Anthony was the most prominent American women's rights leader in the 1800s. She fought for women's right to vote. Women were not allowed to vote because they were considered incapable of rational thought. Many people believed that their place was in the home.

Anthony felt that women should have the same rights as men. She began by speaking about her beliefs at conventions and meetings. Later, she helped to run a civil rights newspaper called *The Revolution*.

Along with Elizabeth Cady Stanton, Anthony founded the National Women's Suffrage Association in 1869. Through this organization, Anthony worked to get women the right to vote. She voted in the November 1872 elections, even though it was illegal. She was fined \$100, which she never paid. For 37 years, Anthony fought for what she believed in. In 1920, 14 years after her death, women were finally given the right to vote.

## SHE SAID

***"There never will be complete equality until women themselves help to make laws and elect lawmakers."***

## THEY SAID

***"A woman who takes proper care of her household has no time to know anything about politics."***



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### What the papers say

- Which news source in your country ...?
  - has the best reputation
  - is the most popular
  - is the best for sports
  - is the best for entertainment
- Do you believe everything you read in the news?  
Do you think some stories are made more sensational?
- CD3 45** Listen to an interview with the singer Jamie Seabrook. Answer the questions after each part.

#### Part 1

- What are some of the highs and lows of Jamie's career?
- What was he doing in Texas?
- What does he like about all the media attention?  
What doesn't he like about it?
- What does he think of reporters?



#### Part 2

- Complete the chart.

	What did they say about him?	What did he say?
reporters		
ex-friends		
police officers		
Barbara James		

- Why did he go into the clinic?

#### Part 3

- How has Jamie's life changed?
- Why has he changed his attitude to life?
- What did the news anchor refuse to do? Why?
- How does Jamie reply? What does he say about himself?

**BOY SUES BURGER CHAIN**  
"Eating burgers made me fat"

**DOG WITH TWO HEADS**  
**BITES MAILMAN—TWICE!**

**SCIENTISTS DISCOVER**  
**A CURE FOR CANCER—BANANAS!**

**JAMIE CHECKS INTO**  
**PRIVATE CLINIC**  
Last chance to save my marriage,  
says pop star Jamie Seabrook

#### SPOKEN ENGLISH *don't mind / don't care*

- Look at these sentences from the interview.  
*I don't mind* the media attention.  
*I don't care* what people think.  
*I don't mind* = It doesn't upset me. I'm easygoing.  
*I don't care* = Other people's opinions aren't important to me. (Careful! This can sometimes sound rude.) OR I don't have a strong opinion.
- Reply to these sentences with *I don't mind* or *I don't care*.
  - "Tea or coffee?" "\_\_\_\_\_. Whatever you're making."
  - "Sorry, I can't have lunch with you today." "That's okay, \_\_\_\_\_. I'm actually really busy at work today."
  - "What should we do today?"  
"\_\_\_\_\_. I'm happy doing whatever."
  - "She's so upset!" "\_\_\_\_\_. That's *her* problem."

#### What do you think?

- Who do you believe — Jamie, or all the other people in his life?
- When you read a story in the news, how do you know whether to believe it?
- What are the big stories (political, environmental, sports, scandal) in the news right now?  
What are the different angles on the story?  
Do people agree on the basic facts, or are there different opinions?



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

You know what they say . . .

- 1 Some people like to bring a conversation to an end with a cliché. Nothing else needs to be said, the cliché says it all! Underline the clichés in these conversations.

*"I didn't get that job I applied for. They said I need more experience."*

*"Oh, well! You win some, you lose some."*

*"Did you know 25% of the world speaks English?"*

*"Is that right? You learn something new every day!"*

- 2 Match the lines in A with the clichés in B.

A	B
1 I'm so fed up! I lost my cell phone yesterday! I got the time wrong, and I missed my plane.	Never mind. We all make mistakes. Cheer up! It's not the end of the world.
2 I forgot to send her a birthday card, so I sent her a text. Hey! You're reading the same book as me!	Better late than never. Great minds think alike.
3 Tim's strange. He's not like me at all. I studied so hard for that exam, and I still failed.	You did your best. You can't do any more. It takes all kinds to make the world go round.
4 I have ten exams in the next two weeks. I have three months' vacation!	Better you than me. Lucky you.
5 I'm going to pack some anti-malaria tablets. I haven't heard from my kids for weeks!	No news is good news. Good idea. Better safe than sorry.
6 That party was awful. I hated it. I couldn't stand it. I backed into a wall and broke a taillight.	It could be worse. You can say that again. It was really boring.
7 She's been so sad since her husband died. I wonder if their relationship will last.	I'm sure it's tough, but time heals all wounds. Time will tell.
8 Our neighbors are extreme right-wing. I trusted Peter, and he stole all my money!	Oh, well. You live and learn. Live and let live. That's what I say.

- 3 CD3 46 Listen and check.

And finally . . .

In the words of William Shakespeare . . .

*All's well that ends well.*





# Writing Contents

 UNIT 1 <b>A BLOG</b> p. 99	Finding and correcting language mistakes in a blog post
 UNIT 2 <b>LETTERS AND E-MAILS</b> p. 100	Formal and informal language, beginnings and endings
 UNIT 3 <b>TELLING A STORY (1)</b> p. 101	Linking ideas in a narrative
 UNIT 4 <b>A BIOGRAPHY</b> p. 102	Combining sentences to avoid repetition
 UNIT 5 <b>WRITING FOR TALKING</b> p. 103	Planning and writing a talk
 UNIT 6 <b>DESCRIBING A PLACE</b> p. 104	Describing a room using relative pronouns and participles
 UNIT 7 <b>DESCRIBING A PERSON</b> p. 105	Describing physical appearance; character; habits
 UNIT 8 <b>TELLING A STORY (2)</b> p. 106	Organizing a narrative and creating interest
 UNIT 9 <b>PROS AND CONS</b> p. 108	Presenting an argument for and against
 UNIT 10 <b>A FAMOUS TOWN OR CITY</b> p. 110	Developing a piece of writing from notes
 UNIT 11 <b>EXPRESSING ATTITUDE</b> p. 112	<i>in fact, actually, of course, naturally</i>
 UNIT 12 <b>A THANK-YOU E-MAIL</b> p. 113	Finding and correcting language mistakes in an e-mail

## REFERENCE

Audio Scripts p. 114

Grammar Reference p. 129

Extra Materials p. 143

Word Lists p. 148

Verb Patterns p. 154

Irregular Verbs and Phonetic Symbols p. 155





- 1 It is important to try to correct your own mistakes when you write. Look at the symbols in the box. What kind of mistakes do they signify?
- 2 Read the blog post that Valeria, an exchange student from Argentina, has written. Use the symbols to help you correct her mistakes.

T Tense	WW Wrong word
Prep Preposition	P Punctuation
Gr Grammar	Sp Spelling
WO Word order	λ Word missing

## BLOG | LIFE AS AN EXCHANGE STUDENT

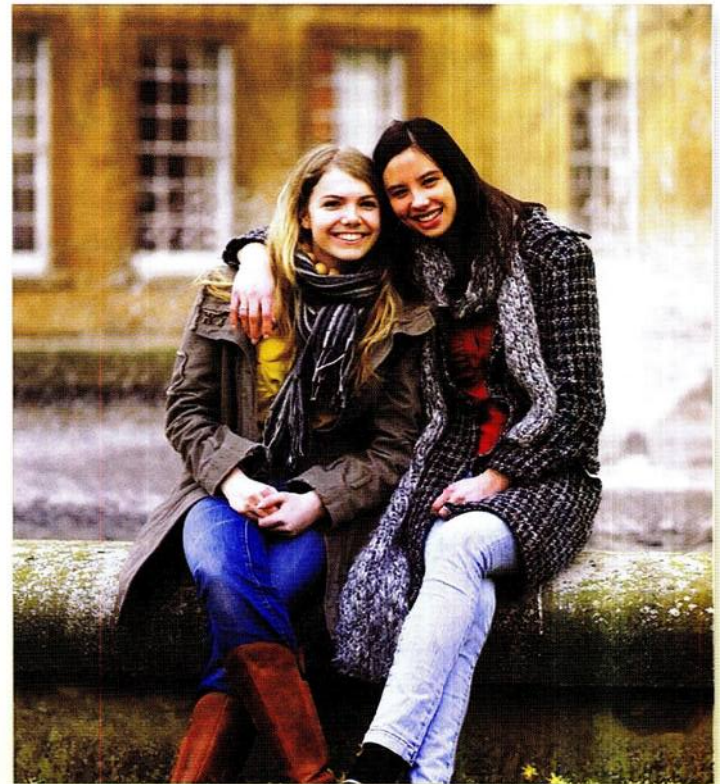
1 day ago



Hi, everyone. <sup>Gr</sup>Thank's for reading my blog about life as an exchange student! I came <sup>Prep</sup>in Boston two weeks ago to study at a language school. I want <sup>Gr</sup>learn english because <sup>λ</sup>is a very important language. I'm <sup>Gr</sup>stay with <sup>Gr</sup>a American family. They have two <sup>Gr</sup>son and a <sup>Sp</sup>daught<sup>Gr</sup>er. Mr. Kendall is teacher and Mrs. Kendall <sup>Gr</sup>work in a hospital. The Americans <sup>Gr</sup>is very kind, but they speak very quickly!

I study in the morning. My teachers <sup>P</sup>name is Ann. She <sup>WW</sup>said me that my English is OK, but I <sup>WW</sup>do a lot of mistakes. Ann <sup>Gr</sup>don't give us too much homework, so in the afternoons I <sup>WO</sup>go <sup>WO</sup>always sightseeing. Boston is much <sup>Gr</sup>more <sup>Gr</sup>big than my town. I like <sup>WO</sup>very much <sup>Gr</sup>art and I'm very interesting <sup>Gr</sup>for <sup>Prep</sup>history, so I visit monuments and museums. I met a girl named Carla. She <sup>T</sup>came from Mexico and <sup>Gr</sup>go to Boston College. Last night we <sup>T</sup>go to the movies, but the movie wasn't very <sup>Sp</sup>exiting.

- 3 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Where is Valeria? Where is she staying?
  - 2 Why is she there?
  - 3 What does she do each day?
  - 4 What does she do in her free time?
  - 5 Who has she met?
- 4 Imagine that you are a student in another town. Answer the questions in exercise 3 about you.
- 5 Write a similar blog post. Swap posts with a partner. Try to correct your partner's post using the symbols.



900 SHARES | 9 COMMENTS

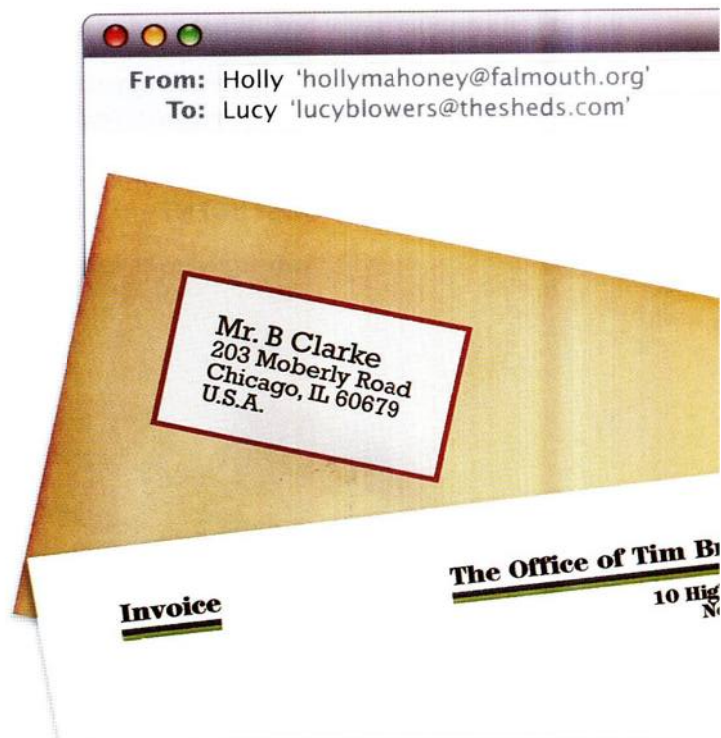




1 Read lines 1–10 from some letters and e-mails. Which are formal and which are informal? Which are beginnings? Which are endings?

- 1 *Great to hear from you again.*
- 2 *I am writing in response to your posting on Careers.com for an IT consultant.*
- 3 *Give my regards to Robert and the rest of the family.*
- 4 *I'm sorry I haven't been in touch for so long, but you know how it is.*
- 5 *Thank you for your invoice of April 16th. Please find enclosed a check for the full amount.*
- 6 *E-mail me soon.*
- 7 *We trust this arrangement meets with your satisfaction.*
- 8 *Just want to say thank you so much for hosting me last weekend.*
- 9 *Take care. I can't wait to see you next week.*
- 10 *I look forward to hearing from you at your earliest convenience.*

2 Read the **beginnings** of these letters and e-mails. Match them with their **next lines** and **endings**.



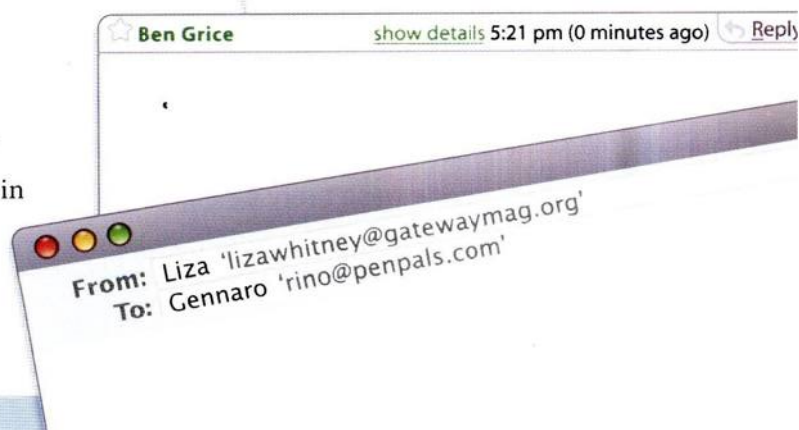
Beginnings	Next lines	Endings
1 Dear Jane, thanks for your e-mail. It's great to hear from you after so long.	a We had no idea John was such a good cook!	e Let me know a.s.a.p. All the best, Danny
2 Dear Mr. Smith, We have received your employment application.	b It's good to catch up on all your news. I've been pretty busy lately, too. I've just started a new job.	f After you send it to us, we'll be happy to consider your application. Yours sincerely, Harriet Berman, Human Resources Manager LJ Industries, Inc.
3 Hi Pete, Any chance you're free next Saturday evening?	c Unfortunately, we cannot consider your application without a CV.	g Let's get together soon. Give my love to Alan and the boys. Yours, Julie
4 Dear John and Liz, Thank you so much for a great evening and meal.	d Chris and Nick are coming over and we wondered if you'd like to join us.	h Thanks again. We hope to see you both soon. Love, Vicky and Jamie

3 Which letter or e-mail in exercise 2 is ...?

- an invitation
- a formal request
- exchanging news
- saying thank you

Underline the words or phrases which helped you decide.

4 Write an email to an old friend who you haven't talked to in a long time. Give news about your personal life and work. Ask about his/her news.







- 1 Read the story. Look at the picture. Who are the people?

## The Farmer and his Sons

There was once an old, dying farmer (1) \_\_\_\_\_. Before he died, he wanted to teach his three sons how to be good farmers. So, he called them to his bedside and said, "My boys, I have an important secret to tell you: there is a great treasure buried in the vineyard. Promise me that you will look for it when I am dead."

The sons gave their promise and (2) \_\_\_\_\_, they began looking for the treasure. They worked very hard in the hot sun (3) \_\_\_\_\_. They pictured boxes of gold coins, diamond necklaces, and other such things. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, but they found not a single penny. They were very upset (5) \_\_\_\_\_. However, a few months later the grapes started to appear on the vines. Their grapes were the biggest and best in the neighborhood and they sold them for a lot of money. Now the sons understood (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and they lived happily ever after.



- 2 Where do clauses a–f go in the story?

- a ☐ as soon as their father died  
 b ☐ who had worked hard in his vineyard all his life  
 c ☐ what their father had meant by the great treasure  
 d ☐ and while they were working, they thought about what their father had said  
 e ☐ because they felt that all their hard work had been for nothing  
 f ☐ Soon they had dug up every inch of the vineyard

- 3 Read the lines from another story. Who are the people in the picture?

## The Emperor and his Daughters

There was once an emperor (1)\_\_\_\_\_ lived in a palace. He had three daughters (2)\_\_\_\_\_ no sons. He wanted his daughters to marry (3)\_\_\_\_\_ he died. He found three princes. (4)\_\_\_\_\_ his daughters didn't like them. They refused to marry the princes, (5)\_\_\_\_\_ the emperor became very angry. He said they must get married (6)\_\_\_\_\_ they were 18 years old. The three daughters ran away (7)\_\_\_\_\_ the night and found work on a farm. They fell in love with the farmer's sons (8)\_\_\_\_\_ they were working there. They married the sons (9)\_\_\_\_\_ they were 18.

before	as soon as	while	during
when	but	However,	so
			who



- 4 Complete the lines using a linking word from the box.

- 5 In what ways are the lines below different from the ones in exercise 3?

*There was once an old emperor who lived in an enormous, golden palace in the middle of the city Ping Chong. He had three beautiful daughters, but unfortunately no sons ...*

Continue rewriting the story, adding more detail to make it more interesting.

- 6 Write a folk tale or fairy story that you know. Write about 200 words.

Begin: *There was/were once ...*

End: *... and they lived happily ever after.*



## Mother Teresa of Calcutta (1910–1997)

- 1 What do you know about Mother Teresa? Share ideas as a class.
- 2 Work with a partner. Look at the information about Mother Teresa's *Early years*. Compare the sentences in **A** with the paragraph in **B**. Note the different ways the sentences combine.

### **A Early years**

Mother Teresa was a missionary.  
She worked among the poor people of Calcutta, India.  
She was born Agnes Gonxha Bojaxhiu.  
She was born in Skopje, Macedonia.  
She was born on August 26, 1910.  
Her father was Albanian.  
He died when she was eight years old.  
Her mother was left to raise the family.

### **B**

Mother Teresa was a missionary who worked among the poor people of Calcutta, India. She was born Agnes Gonxha Bojaxhiu, in Skopje, Macedonia on August 26, 1910. Her father, who was Albanian, died when she was just eight years old, leaving her mother to raise the family.

- 3 Read the sentences in *Working as a teacher*. Work with your partner and use the information in **A** to complete the paragraph in **B**.

### **A Working as a teacher**

Agnes was very young.  
She wanted to become a missionary.  
She left home in September 1928.  
She joined a convent in Ireland.  
She was given the name Teresa.  
She was sent to India in January 1929.  
She taught in St. Mary's High School Convent.  
St. Mary's was in Calcutta.  
She worked in St. Mary's for over 20 years.  
At first she was called Sister Teresa.  
She was called Mother Teresa in 1937.

### **B**

From a very young age Agnes had wanted ..., so in September 1928 she ... to join ... in Ireland, where she was given ... A few months later, in ..., she was sent to ... to teach in ... in Calcutta. Here she worked for ..., first as Sister ... and finally, in 1937, as Mother Teresa.

- 4 Do the same with the information in *Working with the poor*. Read your completed paragraph aloud to the class.

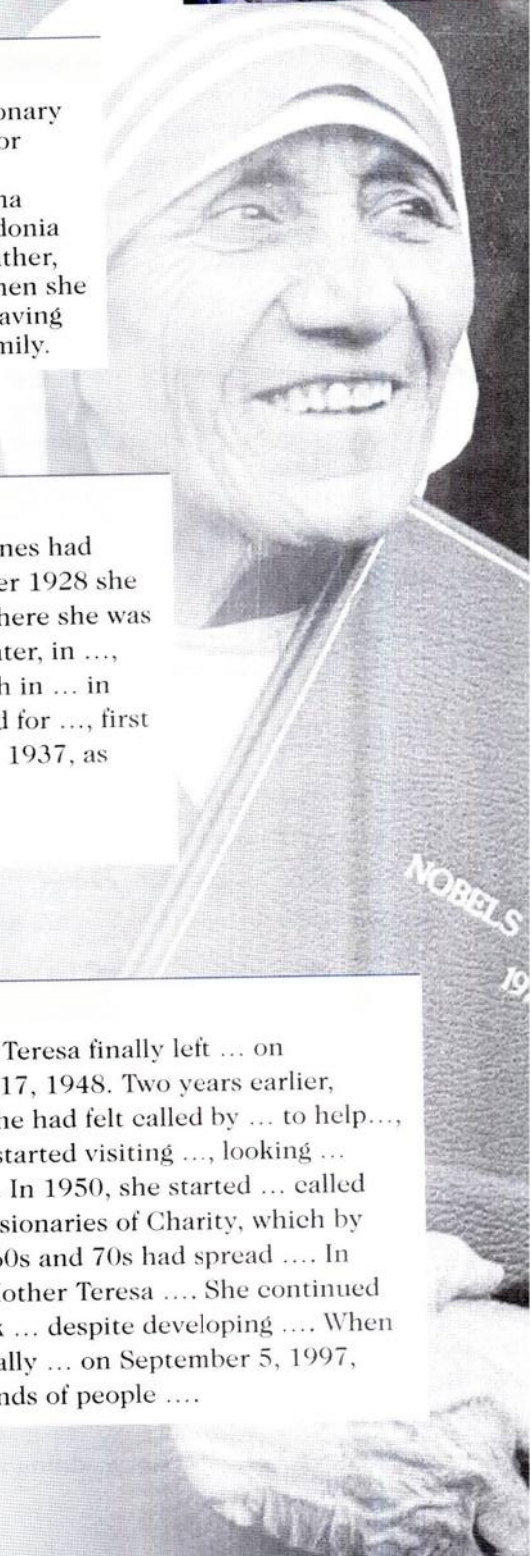
### **A Working with the poor**

In 1946 Mother Teresa felt called by God.  
She was called to help the poorest of the poor.  
She left St. Mary's convent on August 17, 1948.  
She started visiting families in the slums of Calcutta.  
She looked after sick and dying children.  
She started a religious community in 1950.  
It was called the Missionaries of Charity.  
The communities spread all over the world in the 1960s and 70s.  
Mother Teresa was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1979.  
She developed severe health problems.  
She continued to work amongst the poor.  
She died on September 5, 1997.  
Thousands of people from all over the world came to her funeral.

### **B**

Mother Teresa finally left ... on August 17, 1948. Two years earlier, in ..., she had felt called by ... to help..., so she started visiting ..., looking ... sick .... In 1950, she started ... called the Missionaries of Charity, which by the 1960s and 70s had spread .... In 1979 Mother Teresa .... She continued to work ... despite developing .... When she finally ... on September 5, 1997, thousands of people ....

- 5 Research some facts about a famous man or woman, dead or alive, that you admire. Write a short biography.







- 1 What topics are in the news at the moment? Are they national or international? Are they about the environment, politics, crime, sports ...? Discuss any that concern you with the class.
- 2 **CD2 10** Read and listen to a girl talking about a topic that concerns her.
  - 1 What is her cause for concern?
  - 2 Why does she have a personal interest?
  - 3 How did Craig use to be?
  - 4 What does research tell us about the addiction?
  - 5 Do most children become addicts?
  - 6 What concerns Dr. Griffiths?
  - 7 What other concerns does the girl have?
- 3 Now read the speech carefully and answer the questions.
  - 1 Underline the phrases that introduce each paragraph. Why are these words used?
  - 2 Find examples of the speaker talking from her own experience.
  - 3 Find examples where she quotes research.
  - 4 How does the girl conclude her talk?
  - 5 Read the paragraph beginning "Research shows ..." aloud to a partner.

### Preparing your talk

- 4 Choose a cause for concern from the topics you discussed. Make notes. Say why it concerns you.
- 5 Write a speech to give to your class, of 200–300 words. Use your notes and these guidelines to help.
  - 1 Introduce your topic  
*My cause for concern is ...*  
*I want to talk about X because ...*
  - 2 Give the reason why  
*Let me explain why.*  
*Two years ago ...*  
*I've always been interested in ...*
  - 3 List your research  
*Research shows that ...*  
*A recent study found that ...*  
*I read in the newspaper/heard on the news that ...*
  - 4 Introduce new points  
*I have two more concerns.*  
*Firstly, ... secondly, ...*  
*Another thing is ...*
  - 5 Conclude  
*Finally, I'd like to say ...*  
*Thank you all very much for listening to me.*  
*Are there any questions?*



## My cause for concern

The thing I'm concerned about at the moment is the influence that video games may have on children.

Let me explain why. I've been reading lots of articles on this topic, and I also have a personal interest in it. You see, I have a younger brother, Craig; he's 13 years old, and I'm afraid he's becoming a video game addict. Just a few years ago, Craig had many interests. He played basketball, he was learning judo, he went out on his bike with his friends. He was a happy, fun-loving boy. Now he spends hours every day in front of a screen, in a virtual world, playing virtual games, usually violent ones, and he becomes really angry if our parents tell him to stop.

Research shows that today, many children start using computers at a very young age. By the time they're five, many have developed an interest in video games. This is not a problem for most of them. However, by their early teens, a small minority have become addicts, playing for at least 30 hours a week. Dr. Mark Griffiths, an expert in video addiction, finds this figure very worrying. He says that children may become so addicted that they stop doing homework, start missing school, and even steal money in order to buy the games.

I have two more concerns. First, I worry that the violence in the games could cause children to become more violent. My brother isn't violent, but he is certainly bad-tempered if he is stopped from playing. Second, I worry that sitting without exercise for so long is unhealthy. Craig often plays five hours a day, and some days his thumbs are really sore and he can't sleep because he is overexcited. His schoolwork is going from bad to worse.

Finally, Dr. Griffiths says that more research is needed, but I don't need to read more research to conclude that video games cause problems. He should come and meet my brother. That's all the evidence he needs.

- 6 Practice reading your speech aloud first to yourself, then to a partner. Give your speech to the class. Answer any questions.





- 1 Think of your favorite room. Draw a plan of it on a piece of paper. Write down why you like it and some adjectives to describe it.

My favorite room is ... I like it because ...

Show a partner your plan and talk about your room.

- 2 Read the description "My favorite room." Why is this kitchen more than just a room where you cook and eat?
- 3 Complete the description using the relative clauses below:

... which tells the story  
 ... that we're going to next Saturday  
 ... where we cook and eat  
 ... whose family has emigrated  
 ... which is the focal point of the room  
 ... which means  
 ... we haven't seen  
 ... I like best  
 ... who are irritable and sleepy  
 ... where family and friends come together



### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Underline the relative pronouns in exercise 3. What do they refer to? When do we use *which*, *who*, *that*, *where*, and *whose*?

- 2 Look at these sentences. We can omit the relative pronoun from one in each pair. Which one? Why?

This is the room **that** I like best.

This is the room **that** has the best view.

He's a friend **who** we haven't seen for years.

He's a friend **who** lives in London.

- 3 Look at these examples of participles. Rewrite them with relative pronouns.

I have so many happy memories of times spent there.

There is a large window looking out on two apple trees in the garden.

►► Grammar Reference 6.3 and 6.4 p. 136



## My favorite room

The room in our house (1) \_\_\_\_\_ is our kitchen. Perhaps the kitchen is the most important room in many houses, but it's particularly so in our house because it's not only (2) \_\_\_\_\_ but also the place (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

I have so many happy memories of times spent there: ordinary daily events such as making breakfast on dark, cold winter mornings for children (4) \_\_\_\_\_ before sending them off to school; or special occasions such as family reunions or cooking holiday dinners. Whenever we have a party, people gravitate to the kitchen. It always ends up the fullest and noisiest room in the house.

So what does this special room look like? It's pretty big but not huge. It's big enough to have a good-sized rectangular table in the center, (5) \_\_\_\_\_. There is a large window above the sink looking out on two apple trees in the garden. There's a big, old stove at one end and at the other end a wall with a huge bulletin board (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of our lives, past, present, and future: a school photo of the kids; a postcard from Aunt Nancy, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to Canada; the menu from a takeout Chinese restaurant; an invitation to a wedding (8) \_\_\_\_\_; the printout of an email from a friend (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for years. Our whole world is there for everyone to read!

The front door is hardly ever used in our house, only by strangers. All our friends use the back door, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ they come straight into the kitchen and join in whatever is happening there. Without doubt, some of the happiest times of my life have been spent in our kitchen.

- 4 Link these sentences with *who*, *which*, *that*, *where*, and *whose*.

1 The blonde lady is Pat. She's wearing a black dress.

2 There's the hospital. My sister works there.

3 The postcard arrived this morning. It's from Aunt Nancy.

4 I passed all my exams. This made my father very proud.

5 Did you meet the girl? Her mother teaches Portuguese.

- 5 Complete the sentences with a word from the box in the present or past participle.

play	give	stick
listen	arrange	

1 I spend hours in my room \_\_\_\_\_ to music.

2 I have lots of posters \_\_\_\_\_ on the walls.

3 My brother is in his bedroom \_\_\_\_\_ on his computer.

4 There are photos of my family \_\_\_\_\_ on my shelves.

5 I also have a drum set \_\_\_\_\_ to me on my last birthday.

- 6 Write about your favorite room. Use relative pronouns and participles.





- 1 Think of someone in your family and write three sentences about them. Read your sentences aloud to the rest of the class.
- 2 Which relative did you choose? Why? Did you write about their character, their appearance, or both?
- 3 Read the description of crazy Uncle Joe. Which sentence below accurately describes the writer's opinion of him?
  - *The writer likes Uncle Joe but is critical of his way of life.*
  - *The writer admires everything about Uncle Joe.*
- 4 The text consists of *factual description* and *personal opinions*. Work with a partner and read through the text again. Underline like this \_\_\_\_\_ what is factual, and like this \_\_\_\_\_ what is personal opinion.
- 5 Find words and lines which describe:
  - his physical appearance
  - his character
  - his past life
  - his current lifestyle
- 6 Find the following words:

<b>much</b> (line 2)	<b>really</b> (line 13)
<b>so</b> (line 4)	<b>pretty</b> (line 13)
<b>completely</b> (line 10)	<b>particularly</b> (line 15)
<b>absolutely</b> (line 11)	<b>extremely</b> (line 18)

How do they change the meaning of the adjectives which follow them?

- 7 Write a similar description of a member of your family in about 200 words. Include your sentences from exercise 1 and the following:
  - your relation to him/her
  - your opinion of him/her
  - a little about his/her past life
  - his/her physical appearance
  - his/her character
  - his/her current lifestyle

## MY CRAZY UNCLE JOE

Of all my relatives, I like my Uncle Joe the best. He's my mother's much younger brother. He was only nine when I was born, so he's been more like a big brother to me than an uncle. He is in his mid-20s now and he is always so fun to be with.

He studied at a drama school in California, and then he moved to New York a year ago to try his luck in the theater. He shares an apartment with three other aspiring actors, and he works as a server and a part-time DJ. He's passionate about his music. His enthusiasm is infectious. He's absolutely great! I'm proud that he's my uncle.

Also, I think he is really good-looking. He's pretty tall with dark hair, and twinkly, dark brown eyes. He's had a lot of friends, but I don't think there is anyone particularly special at the moment. He has a great relationship with his roommates, they are always laughing and joking together. He knows how to have fun, but he's also an extremely caring person. I can talk to him about all kinds of problems that I could not discuss with my parents. He's very understanding of someone my age.

He works hard, and he plays hard. He's had a lot of auditions for various theatrical roles. He hasn't had much luck yet, but I'm sure that one day he'll be a highly successful actor. I think he's really talented, but he says he doesn't want to be rich or famous, he just wants to prove to himself that he's a good actor.

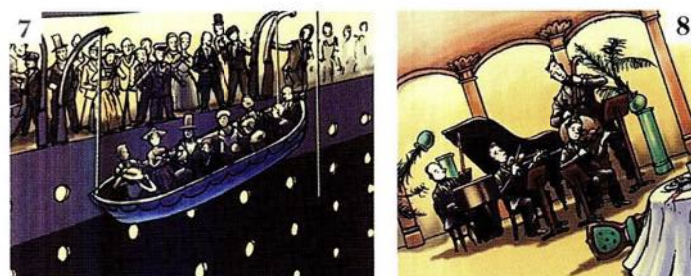
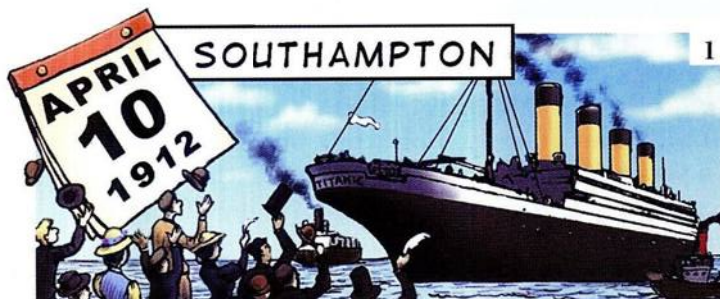




1 What do you know about the sinking of the Titanic?

*It happened at the beginning of the twentieth century.  
There was a movie about it starring Leonardo DiCaprio.*

2 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and tell the story in your own words. Then read **Text A**, and match the lines with the pictures.



**Text A The Unsinkable Titanic, 1912**

On April 10, 1912, the Titanic left Southampton on her way to New York. There were many rich passengers on board. Everyone believed the ship was unsinkable, so she didn't have many lifeboats.

On the night of April 14, the passengers were having dinner and listening to the band. The Titanic was traveling fast because the owner wanted his ship to beat the record for crossing the Atlantic. Some ships nearby warned of icebergs, but the messages were not delivered. A look-out sounded the alarm, but it was too late. The Titanic hit an iceberg, and the ship sank quickly. The band played until it sank. The lifeboats only saved some of the people. Most of them died in the sea.

People today are still interested in the Titanic. The movie *Titanic* was very popular.

3 Now read **Text B**. Compare it with **Text A**. Which is the more interesting text? Why? Give some examples.

**Text B The Unsinkable Titanic, 1912**

On April 10, 1912, the liner Titanic, the luxurious ship they called unsinkable, left Southampton on her maiden voyage to New York. Her passengers were a mixture of the world's wealthiest in their magnificent first-class accommodations and immigrants packed into steerage. The ship was believed to be so safe that she carried only 20 lifeboats, enough for only half her 2,235 passengers and crew.

On the evening of April 14, there was no wind and the sea was calm. The band was playing as the rich enjoyed their evening meal in the sumptuous dining room. At 9:40 p.m. nearby ships warned of icebergs. However, the messages were not delivered. The Titanic was traveling at 22 knots. The owner of the ship was on board, encouraging the captain to go faster to beat the record for crossing the Atlantic. Finally, a look-out on the bridge sounded the alarm, but it was too late. At 11:40 p.m. the Titanic struck an iceberg. Passengers felt only a slight bump and carried on dancing and dining. After all, this ship was unsinkable. In fact, the ship was sinking fast, but it was not until nearly 12:45 that an SOS signal was sent and the first lifeboat was lowered. The last one was lowered at 2:05 a.m., and at 2:20 a.m. the ship sank, just two hours and forty minutes after hitting the iceberg. 713 people were saved. The remaining 1,522 all met their death in the dark waters of the Atlantic Ocean. These included most of the men and third-class passengers, the crew, and all of the band members. Amazingly, they had kept playing until the ship disappeared beneath the waves.

The ship sank over 100 years ago, but interest in the Titanic continues. Books and movies have kept its memory alive. *Titanic* is the most watched film in movie history. Incredibly, in 1985, the wreck itself was discovered and photographed on the sea bed.



- 4 Go through the Titanic texts again with your partner. Discuss the differences. Consider the following questions.

### The general organization

How is the scene set?  
What forms the main part?  
How is the story concluded?

### Telling the story

What information is given?  
How is interest created?  
What is the order of events?

### The language

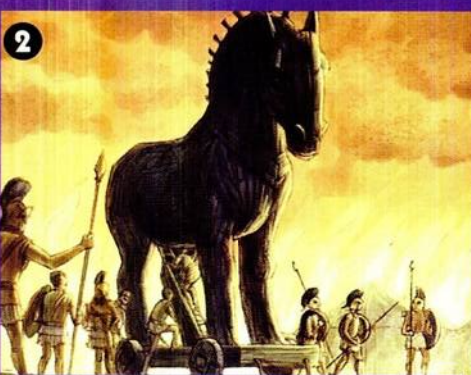
Which adjectives and adverbs are used?  
How are the sentences constructed?

- 5 With your partner, discuss what you know about the story of the Trojan Horse. Look at the pictures and prompts to help.

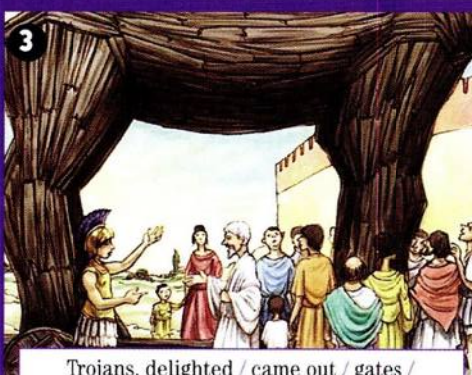
## THE TROJAN HORSE



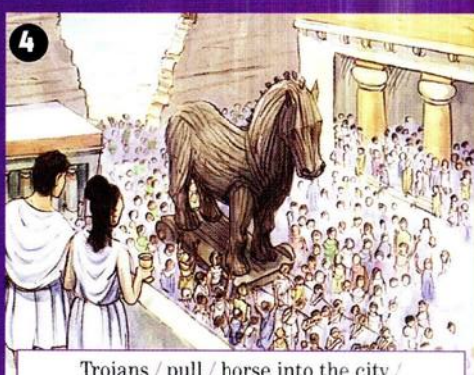
Greek army / camped / the city of Troy / Greek king Odysseus / good idea / decided / build a huge, hollow, wooden / big enough / soldiers / hide.



horse / built / soldiers / inside / others set fire / camp / pretended / sail back / Greece / hid nearby.



Trojans, delighted / came out / gates / found / horse / very curious / Greeks / left one soldier / Trojans asked about / said / offering to / goddess Athena.



Trojans / pull / horse into the city / so big / tear down / city wall / took to / temple of Athena / big party / celebrate / end of the war.



finally / asleep / Greek soldiers crept out / killed guards / signaled / Greeks / to attack Troy.



bloody battle / Greeks won / Trojan men / killed women / children / back to Greece / slaves.

- 6 Work together to write the story. Remember to set the scene, create interest, and use adverbs and adjectives. Begin like this: *The Greeks and the Trojans had been at war for ten years.*

- 7 Read some of the stories aloud to the class. Compare with the story on pages 146–47.





- 1 Do you think childhood is the best time of your life? Discuss as a class.
- 2 Read the text about the pros and cons of childhood. Replace the underlined words and phrases in the text with those in the box.

For instance  
One advantage is that  
pros and cons  
One disadvantage is that  
Finally,  
All things considered  
in my opinion,  
In conclusion  
In fact,  
Another point is that  
Moreover,

- 3 There are four paragraphs. What is the purpose of each one?

# PROS and

## Childhood — the best time of your life?

- 1 Some people say that childhood is the best time of your life. However, being a child has both advantages and disadvantages.
- 2 On the plus side you have very few responsibilities. For example, you don't have to go to work, pay bills, or do the shopping, cooking, or cleaning. This means you have plenty of free time to do whatever you want – watch TV, play on the computer, go out with friends, play sports, or pursue other hobbies. On top of that, public transportation, movie theaters, and sports centers cost much less for children. All in all, being a child is an exciting, action-packed time in life.
- 3 However, for every plus there is a minus. For one thing, you have to spend all day, Monday to Friday, at school. Studying usually means you have to do homework, and you have to take exams. What is more, you may have a lot of free time, but you are rarely allowed to do whatever you want. You usually have to ask your parents if you can do things, from going shopping in town to staying out late or going to a party. Last of all, although there are often cheaper prices for children, things are still expensive – and parents are not always generous with allowance. There's never enough money to do everything you want. The reality is that sometimes there's not enough to do anything at all!
- 4 To sum up, although some people see childhood as the best time in life, I think that children have no real choice, independence, or money. Nevertheless, it is true that choice, money, and independence all bring responsibilities and restrictions – which increase with age.





# CONS

**No Pressure**

**EXAMS**

**No Money**

**SCHOOL**

**FREE TIME**

**VACATION**

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

4 Match the pros with the cons.

pros	cons
1 don't have to go to work	are never given enough allowance
2 can go out to parties with friends	have to do homework and take exams
3 don't have to cook and clean	have to go to school Monday to Friday
4 pay less for things	need to ask your parents' permission

5 Work with a partner. Choose one of these topics and briefly discuss the pros and cons.

- 1 Restorative justice (where criminals meet their victims to talk about the effect of their crimes)
- 2 Getting older
- 3 Having children while young

6 Work together to complete these phrases with your ideas from exercise 5.

On the plus side ...

For example, ...

Another point is that ...

However, there are also disadvantages ...

For instance, ...

What is more, ...

Last of all, ...

In my opinion, ...

In conclusion, ...

7 Use the ideas from exercises 5 and 6 to write four paragraphs on your chosen topic. Read your essay aloud to the class. Do they agree with your conclusion?





- 1 Write down everything you know about New York City. Collect all your ideas as a class.
- 2 Work with a partner and study the diagram about New York. Compare the information with your ideas.

# NEW YORK

**“The Big Apple”**

**NEW YORK CITY**

**“The city that never sleeps”**

## Geography

- Hudson River
- same latitude as Naples and Madrid

## History

- Dutch 1614 / New Amsterdam
- British 1664 / New York
- 19th c./ immigration
- 20th c./ economic boom
- Sept. 11, 2001

## Its people

- densely populated / 8,336,397
- 36% foreign born
- 170 languages

## Transportation

- 13,000 taxis
- 3 airports
- Grand Central Station
- subway / 1.7 billion passengers

## Sports

- baseball
- marathon / 50,000 runners

## Tourism

- shopping / 5th Ave.
- Empire State Building, etc.
- 54 million visitors

## Food

- variety
- haute cuisine / hot dogs

Although New York City is not the capital of the United States, its influence is seen throughout the world. Its nickname, (1) “\_\_\_\_\_,” was given to it by early immigrants because the city seemed so huge and full of promise.

## Geography

It is located at the mouth of the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and lies on the same latitude as the European cities of (3) \_\_\_\_\_.

## History

The Dutch founded the city in 1614, calling it (4) \_\_\_\_\_. However, in (5) \_\_\_\_\_ it was captured by the British and renamed New York. The city grew in importance and was the U.S. capital until 1790. During the 19th century it was transformed by (6) \_\_\_\_\_, and from the early 20th century, it became a world center for industry, commerce, and communication. With the economic (7) \_\_\_\_\_ came the construction of its distinctive skyline of skyscrapers, two of which, the Twin Towers of the World Trade Center, were destroyed in the attacks of (8) \_\_\_\_\_, when nearly 3,000 people died.

## Its people

New York is the most (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and cosmopolitan city in the United States with 8,336,397 inhabitants speaking (10) \_\_\_\_\_ languages. 36% of the city's population is (11) \_\_\_\_\_. Five of the largest ethnic groups are: Puerto Ricans, Italians, West Indians, Chinese, and Irish.



# CITY

## Transportation

One in three New Yorkers uses public transportation to get to work, whereas in the rest of the U.S. 90% of commuters go by car. The New York City Subway, which is open 24/7, is used by (12) \_\_\_\_\_ a year. New York is also home to the famous Grand Central Station, three major airports, and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ distinctive, yellow taxi cabs.

## Sports

The New York Marathon, held annually on the first Sunday of November, is the largest marathon in the world. It attracts (14) \_\_\_\_\_. However, many New Yorkers prefer a less energetic jog around Central Park. New Yorkers are also passionate (15) \_\_\_\_\_ fans. The two most popular teams are the New York Yankees and the New York Mets.

## Tourism

About (16) \_\_\_\_\_ tourists visit New York City each year. Major attractions include the Empire State Building, the Metropolitan Museum of Art, Times Square, Central Park, and, of course, the (17) \_\_\_\_\_ along Fifth Avenue. Tourists are also attracted by the incredible (18) \_\_\_\_\_ of places to eat, from diners, with their burgers, bagels, and pizza, to many of the finest haute cuisine restaurants in the U.S., not forgetting the Grand Central Oyster and the steaming (19) \_\_\_\_\_ sold on every street corner.

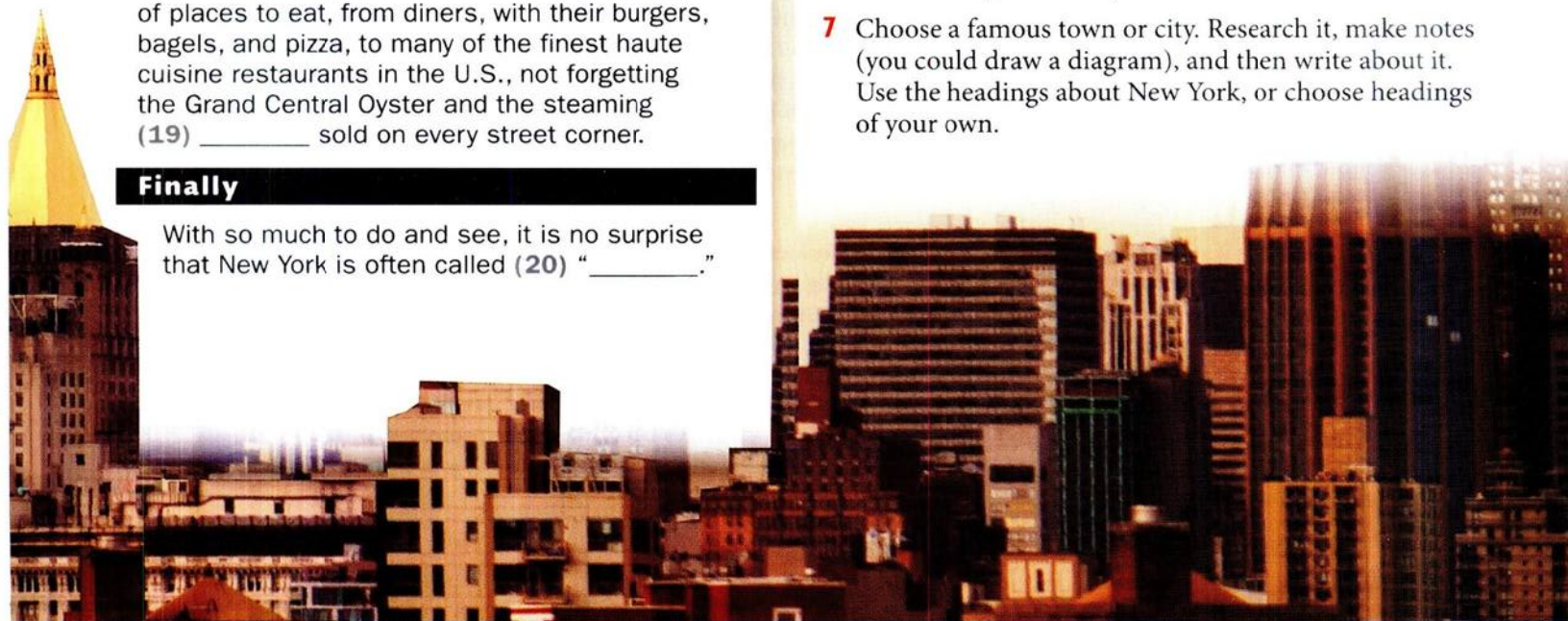
## Finally

With so much to do and see, it is no surprise that New York is often called (20) “\_\_\_\_\_.”

- 3 Read and complete the text using the information from the diagram in exercise 2.
- 4 Read the text again. What extra information not in the diagram can you find? Give some examples.
- 5 Find these words and expressions in the text and discuss why they are used.

Although	its	However	distinctive
two of which	whereas	is home to	with (so much to do)

- 6 Complete these sentences with the words or expressions from exercise 5.
  - 1 Tokyo is the biggest city in the world. \_\_\_\_\_ population is over 37 million.
  - 2 The U.S. has many big cities, \_\_\_\_\_ are Chicago and Los Angeles.
  - 3 Mexico City \_\_\_\_\_ one of the biggest stadiums in the world, Estadio Azteca.
  - 4 The temperature in Canada often goes below 0°F in the winter. \_\_\_\_\_, in summer it is often over 86°F.
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ most people in Canada speak English, French is also an official language.
  - 6 It is easy to recognize pictures of San Francisco because of its \_\_\_\_\_ bridge.
  - 7 Brasilia is located in the center of Brazil, \_\_\_\_\_ Rio de Janeiro is on the coast.
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ so much to see, it is impossible to do a tour of the city in two days.
- 7 Choose a famous town or city. Research it, make notes (you could draw a diagram), and then write about it. Use the headings about New York, or choose headings of your own.








- 1 Combine the sentences in different ways using the words in parentheses.
- George was rich. He wasn't a happy man. (*but / although / however*)
  - Jo called me on a friend's phone. She lost her cell. (*because / so*)
- 2 Look at these words and expressions. They prepare people for what you are going to write or say next. Read and complete the sentences with your own ideas.

**in fact**  
**actually**  
**of course**  
**naturally**  
**fortunately**  
**unfortunately**  
**nevertheless**  
**anyway**

- In fact/Actually** (*I'm going to add more information to support this statement.*)  
 Peter doesn't like working in Houston. **In fact**, he's thinking of changing jobs.  
 Alice and I are in love. **Actually**, we \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Of course/Naturally** (*What I am going to say is obvious.*)  
**Of course**, having a baby has totally changed our lives.  
**Naturally**, when I was a child I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Fortunately/Unfortunately** (*What I am going to say is/is not good news.*)  
 She tried really hard, and **fortunately**, she passed the exam.  
 She stood and waited for over an hour, but **unfortunately**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Nevertheless** (*I am going to tell you about a result or effect which is unexpected.*)  
 The accident wasn't her fault. **Nevertheless**, she felt terrible.  
 My father didn't do very well in school. **Nevertheless**, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Anyway** (*I am going to finish talking about the subject and move on to something new.*)  
 What traffic! I thought I'd never get here. **Anyway**, now let's get on with the meeting.  
**Anyway**, you've heard enough about me. What \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Read the e-mail and write the word or words that fit best.

**To:** melody2@mail.com

**Subject:** update



send

Hi Melody,

I hope you're doing well. Things are busy here. Maya moved out last week. She found a small apartment not far from here, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (*so / anyway*) we still see her all the time. She also got a new job at a radio station. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, (*Unfortunately / Because*) it doesn't pay very well, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (*of course / but*) at least she likes it. Now that Maya has moved out, it's only Joe and me at home. After 24 years of having kids around the house, it's a little strange to have the place all to ourselves. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, (*However / In fact*) it's nice to come home to a clean house at the end of the day.

Samantha is going to graduate from Columbia University this year. We're all very proud, and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (*however / of course*) we're going to have a party for her. (6) \_\_\_\_\_, (*So / Actually*) it's going to be a surprise party! So, shhh! Samantha says she wants to travel somewhere interesting in the fall, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (*but / because*) she hasn't decided where to go yet. Joe's fine, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (*although / so*) he's been in a bad mood lately. He hasn't been able to do much in the garden (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (*because / actually*) it's rained every day for the last two weeks! (10) \_\_\_\_\_, (*In fact / Nevertheless*) it's been the rainiest summer in 20 years. (11) \_\_\_\_\_, (*Anyway / Of course*) that's enough of our news. How are you all? What are you up to?

Tell me everything!

Jackie





- 1** Valeria was a student of English in Boston, where she stayed with the Kendall family. She has now returned home. Read the e-mail she has written to Mr. and Mrs. Kendall. Her English has improved, but there are still over 25 mistakes. How many can you find?

**To:** GillandBobKendall@lightspeed.net  
**Subject:** Hello from Valeria

**Attachment:** GoodbyeUSA.jpg

**Dear Mr. and Mrs. Kendall,**

I am home now since two weeks, but I have to start work immediately, so this is the first time is possible for me to write. How are you all? Are you busy as usual? Does Tim still work hard for his exam next month? I am miss you a lot and also all my friends from Boston. :-)

Yesterday I've received an e-mail from my Mexico friend, Carla, and she told me about some of the other people I met. She say that Atsuko and Yuki will write me from Japan. I am lucky because I made so many good friend during I was in the U.S. It was really interesting for me to meet people from so many different countries. I think that we not only improved our English (I hope this!) but we also knew people from all over the world, and this is important.

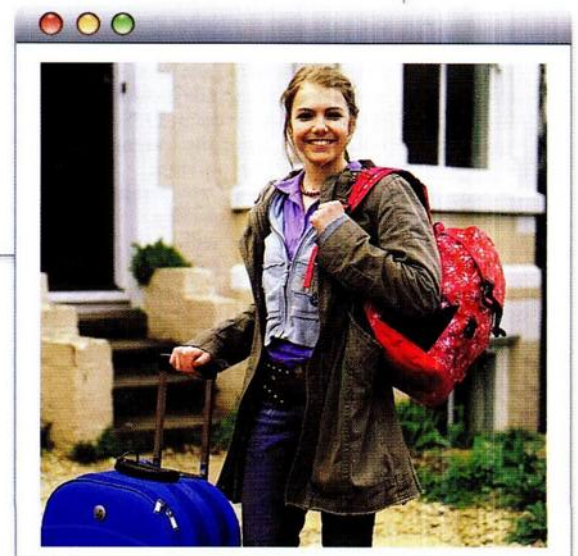
My family are fine. They had a good summer vacation at the beach. We are all very exciting because my brother will get married in December, and we like very much his wife. They have looked for an apartment in the city, but it is no easy to find one. If they won't find one soon, they will have to stay here with us.

Please can you check something for me? I can't find my red scarf. I think maybe I have forgotten it in the closet in my bedroom.

Please write soon. My family send best wishes to you all. I hope I can come back next year. Stay with you was a very wonderful experience for me. Thank you for all things, and excuse my mistakes. I already forget much words.

**Love and best wishes to you all,**  
**Valeria x x**

P.S. I hope you like the attached photo. It's nice, isn't it? It's the one you took when I was leaving!



- 2** Compare the mistakes you have found with a partner. Correct the e-mail.
- 3** Write a thank-you e-mail to someone you have stayed with.



# Audio Scripts



## UNIT 1

### CD1 2 One World Quiz

- In which country do men and women live the longest?  
Women and men live the longest in Japan. Women live on average 86 years and men 79. The average life expectancy in Japan is 81.25. In the U.S. it is 77.8 and in Germany 78.8.
- In which year did the world population reach 7 billion?  
The world population reached 7 billion in 2012. There are now over 7.3 billion people in the world.
- If you are standing on the equator, how many hours of daylight do you have?  
If you are standing at the equator you have 12 hours of daylight every day of the year. You also experience the fastest sunrise and sunset in the world, between 128 and 142 seconds depending on the time of year.
- Where does most of the world's oil come from?  
Most of the world's oil comes from the U.S. It produces 12 million barrels per day. Saudi Arabia produces 11 million, and Russia produces 10 million.
- Which of the seven wonders of the world is still standing?  
Of the seven wonders of the ancient world only the pyramids of Egypt are still standing. The Colossus of Rhodes and the Lighthouse of Alexandria were destroyed by earthquakes hundreds of years ago.
- Why didn't dinosaurs attack humans?  
Dinosaurs didn't attack humans because they became extinct 65 million years ago. Human beings didn't appear on earth until 130,000 years ago.
- Where was the Titanic sailing to when it sank?  
The Titanic was sailing to New York from Southampton when it hit an iceberg on April 14th, 1912.
- How long has Hawaii been a U.S. state?  
Hawaii has been a U.S. state since 1959. It was the 50th state to be admitted to the union.
- How many people have won the Nobel Peace prize since it started in 1901?  
103 people have won the Nobel Peace prize since it started in 1901. These include Nelson Mandela in 1993 and Mother Teresa in 1979.
- How long have people been using the Internet?  
People have been using the Internet since 1969. It was invented by the U.S. Department of Defense as a means of communication. It first went live in October 1969, with communications between the University of California and the Stanford Research Institute.
- Which language is spoken by the most people in the world?  
Chinese is spoken by the most people in the world. Over one billion people speak it. English is the second most spoken language in the world, with about half a billion speakers.
- In which country were women first given the right to vote?  
New Zealand was the first country in the world to give women the right to vote in 1893.

Canadian women were given the right to vote in 1917, but women in Paraguay weren't allowed to vote until 1961.

### CD1 3 You're so wrong!

- A Chichen Itza is in Costa Rica.  
B No, it's not. It's in Mexico.
- A Shakespeare didn't write poems.  
B You're wrong. He wrote hundreds of poems, not just plays.
- A Vegetarians eat meat.  
B Of course they don't eat meat. They only eat vegetables and sometimes fish.
- A The Internet doesn't provide much information.  
B That's not true! It provides a lot. Sometimes I think that it provides too much!
- A The world is getting colder.  
B It isn't getting colder, it's getting hotter. Haven't you heard of global warming?
- A John F. Kennedy was traveling by plane when he was killed.  
B No, you're wrong. He wasn't traveling by plane. He was traveling by car, in Dallas, Texas.
- A Brazil has never won the World Cup.  
B Brazil has won it, five times. My dad goes on about it all the time.
- A The 2012 Summer Olympics were held in Tokyo.  
B No, they weren't held in Tokyo. They were held in London.

### CD1 4 is or has?

- My brother's just started a new job.
- He's working in South America.
- He's been there three months.
- He's having a great time.
- He's never worked overseas before.
- His company's called Intext Worldwide.

### CD1 5 Making conversation

- R = Ruth (mother), N = Nick (son),  
L = Lily (daughter)
- R So kids, did you have a good day at school?  
N No.  
L Yes, I did. We were practicing for the school concert.  
R Oh, wonderful! Do you have a lot of homework?  
L Ugh! Yes, I do. I have Geography, Spanish, and Math! Do you have a lot, Nick?  
N Yeah.  
R Nick, did you remember your soccer uniform?  
N Um ...  
L No, he didn't. He forgot it again.  
R Oh, Nick, you know we need to wash it. Are you playing soccer tomorrow?  
N No.  
R Lily, do you need your uniform tomorrow?  
L Yes, I do. I have a softball game after school. We're playing our rival team.  
R Didn't they beat you last time?  
L Yes, they did. But we'll beat them tomorrow.  
N No, you won't! Your team's terrible.  
R OK. That's enough, children. Put on your seatbelts! Let's go!

### CD1 6

- R So kids, did you have a good day at school?  
N No, I didn't. Not really. We didn't have any of my favorite subjects.  
L Yes, I did. We were practicing for the school concert.  
R Oh, wonderful! Do you have a lot of homework?  
L Ugh! Yes, I do. I have Geography, Spanish, and Math! Do you have a lot, Nick?  
N Yes, I do. I have to work on my science project. I have to finish by Friday!  
R Nick, did you remember your soccer uniform?  
N Oh no, I didn't—sorry, Mom.  
R Oh, Nick, you know we need to wash it. Are you playing soccer tomorrow?  
N No, I'm not, thank goodness. The game was cancelled.  
R Lily, do you need your uniform tomorrow?  
L Yes, I do. I have a softball game after school. We're playing our rival team.  
R Didn't they beat you last time?  
L Yes, they did. But we'll beat them tomorrow.  
N Ummm—I'm not so sure about that.  
R OK. That's enough, children. Put on your seatbelts! Let's go!

### CD1 7 see page 5

### CD1 8 A world in one family

#### An interview with Xavier

- I So, Xavier—how old are you?  
X I'm 21.  
I And I know you have an interesting background. What nationality are you?  
X Well, I have an American passport ...  
I ... so you're American, but your parents—what nationality are your parents?  
X Well, my dad's Peruvian. He was born in Peru, in South America, but he's had an American passport for the last 20 years. My mom was born in Spain, in the Basque country, and she still has her Spanish passport.  
I So, how did they meet and end up having children in the U.S.?  
X Ummm ... they met when they were both studying English in the U.S. Ummm ... and um ... and about three years after that they got married and here I am, and then my brother.  
I And what was it like growing up in the U.S. with a Spanish mother and a Peruvian father?  
X I don't think I actually noticed nationality for years—um ... probably the first time I really noticed a difference was in high school. The U.S. was playing Spain in the Olympic Games, and my classmates made me choose which country to support.  
I So which country did you support?  
X I stayed neutral. Actually, I didn't care which team won.  
I And which nationality do you feel now?  
X I'd say I was American—um, but I'm also very proud of my parents' heritage, half Basque and half Peruvian. I like that.  
I What contact have you had with your family abroad?  
X Well, I've only actually been to Spain once—um, when I was a baby. I've had more contact



- on my dad's side. My Peruvian grandparents visit us in the U.S., and when I was growing up, we always went to Peru in the summer, and ...
- I Very nice.
- X ... and if I'm home I speak to them—um, to my grandparents, on the phone—um ... maybe once a week.
- I And do you think that your Spanish heritage has influenced you at all?
- X Well, yes, I think so. I think it influenced my degree choice. I'm studying modern languages at Syracuse University—Spanish and French. I'm in my third year. I have one more year to go.
- I And what are you hoping to do in the future?
- X Umm—That's a very good question. Um ... hopefully find a job that offers some kind of opportunity to travel, but ultimately, I want to settle down for good in the U.S. I've always been interested in my background, but I think that I realize the U.S. is my home and it's where I see myself living.
- I Thank you very much, Xavier.
- X You're welcome.

### CD1 9

I = Interviewer, A = Ana

- I Ana, you're Spanish, aren't you?
- A Yes, I am. I'm from Bilbao, in the Basque country.
- I And how long have you lived here in New York?
- A Um ... 23 years.
- I And how did that happen?
- A Well, I wanted to improve my English so I came to the U.S. to study. Originally, I came for six months but—um ... I met my husband—um ... we met at the college—actually we met on the way to the college, in the street.
- I You met in the street?
- A Yes, it was the first day and I was walking up the hill to the college, and Teo, that's my husband, was driving up the hill, and he stopped and offered me a ride, which I refused.
- I You refused?
- A Yes, but we ended up in the same class. I went into the class, and there he was.
- I And your husband's from Peru, isn't he?
- A Yes, he is.
- I So that means you speak the same language.
- A Yes, Spanish.
- I So, why did you decide to live in the U.S.?
- A Well, mainly because my husband had a job here and, um—we kind of decided we wanted a place in the middle, between Spain and Peru.
- I A nice idea. And you have two sons.
- A Yes, I do. Xavier is 21, nearly 22, and James is 19.
- I So, what's it been like for them growing up in the U.S. with parents of different nationality?
- A Well, I think because we live in New York, a cosmopolitan city, they didn't notice it too much.
- I They are both bilingual presumably?
- A No, not really.
- I Oh.
- A ... because, when they were children, even though we spoke to them in Spanish, they always replied in English.
- I Um, interesting. Tell me, how much contact has your family here had with the families in Spain and Peru?
- A I think more with my husband's family in Peru because it's closer. We always spent summer there—um—two or three weeks usually.
- I And the Spanish side?

- A Well, I keep in touch all the time, but my family has never been here.
- I Never?
- A Never. We went to Spain once when Xavier was 18 months old. James has never been.
- I So what are the children doing now?
- A Xavier's in college and James just finished school. He's been working in a restaurant, saving money to travel.
- I And what do they want to do in the future?
- A Well, James, he's going to travel to Spain at last! Then he's going to college to study Biology.
- I And Xavier?
- A I think he wants to work in foreign affairs.
- I Ana, is it possible to sum up the pros and cons of bringing up a family in another country?
- A Well, I think in a way it's good because you can take the best things from both cultures, but I don't think my sons will ever feel 100% American because their parents aren't American. It's very tricky.

### CD1 10 Pronunciation

- 1 rose goes does toes  
2 meat beat great street  
3 paid made played said  
4 done phone son won

### CD1 11

mother enjoy apartment holiday  
population

### CD1 12 Everyday situations

- 1 A How many bags are you checking in?  
B Just the one.  
A And did you pack it yourself?  
B Yes, I did.
- 2 A A medium latte and a muffin, please.  
B For here or to go?  
A Here, please.  
B That'll be \$3.90 please.
- 3 A I can't make the meeting. I'm stuck in traffic.  
B Don't worry. We'll start without you and brief you later.  
A Oh, hold on! We're moving again. I should be there in about an hour.
- 4 A Can you put in your PIN number and press "Enter"?  
B Oh, no! I can't remember my number for this card. Oh, what is it?  
A Do you have another card you could use?
- 5 A Bottled or tap? And do you want ice and lemon in it?  
B Bottled, please. Ice but no lemon.  
A No problem. Is that all?
- 6 A I don't think you've met Greg. He's joining us from our New York office.  
B Hello. Good to meet you. I've heard a lot about you.  
C Yeah, at last we meet. I'm looking forward to working together.
- 7 A I need to make an appointment. It's pretty urgent. I've lost a filling.  
B We have a cancellation this afternoon. 2:45, if that's OK?  
A That's great. I'll be there.
- 8 A The elevator's on your right. Would you like someone to help you with your bags?  
B No, thank you. I'll manage.  
A OK. If you insist. Here's your key. Enjoy your stay.
- 9 A Please hold. Your call is important to us. All our operators are busy at the moment, but one of them will be with you shortly.

- B If I have to listen to that again, I'll go crazy!  
C Can I help you?  
B At last a real person! Do you know how long I've been waiting?
- 10 A There are still tickets for the 5:45 performance, but the 8:45 is sold out, I'm afraid.  
B That's fine. We'll have two, please, one adult, one child.  
A Right. Two for 5:45. The doors open at 5.

### CD1 13 Role play

- 1 A Maria, this is my friend Peter. We came to the U.S. together. We come from the same town in Canada.  
B Hello, Peter. Nice to meet you. I hope you're having a good time.
- 2 A Excuse me. I don't think this is mine. I ordered a medium latte and a muffin.  
B Oh, sorry. My mistake. This is for the next table.
- 3 A Good evening. Reception? I'm in room 216, and my TV isn't working. Can you send someone to fix it?  
B Of course, sir. I'll send someone immediately.
- 4 A Excuse me. Can you tell me which is the check-in desk for Bangkok? I can't see my flight on the screen.  
B Oh no. You're at the wrong terminal. Flights to Bangkok leave from Terminal 2. You can take a bus to the terminal over there.
- 5 A OK, everyone. Dinner's ready! Can you all come to the table? Bring your drinks and just help yourselves to the food.  
BCD Mmmm. It smells good. Can we sit where we like?



## UNIT 2

### CD1 14 "Blue Monday" by Fats Domino

Blue Monday, how I hate Blue Monday  
Got to work like a slave all day  
Here come Tuesday, oh hard Tuesday  
I'm so tired got no time to play

On Wednesday, work twelve hours, then  
Go home, fall into bed at ten  
'Cause Thursday is a hard working day  
And Friday I get my pay

Saturday morning, oh, Saturday morning  
All my tiredness has gone away  
Got my money and my honey  
And I'm out on the town to play

Sunday morning my head is bad,  
But it's worth it for the fun that I had  
Sunday evening it's goodnight and amen  
'Cause on Monday I start again

### CD1 15 My favorite day of the week

Vicky  
I go to a boarding school, so I don't live with my parents during the semester. Um ... what I like is being with my friends all the time. Whether we're working or just chatting, it's great to know there's always someone there. There's also a lot of freedom. I don't have to tell my parents where I'm going, who I'm going with, you know ... Normally Monday is my favorite day because I only have two classes on a Monday, but I'm



having a very bad day today because I have homework from every one of my teachers, and I have to do it now!

### Terry

I work in a restaurant in Miami. I have two days off a week, usually Monday and Wednesday, but my favorite day of the week is in fact Friday, even though I work that day. It's the best night because all my friends come into the restaurant, and we have a great time. There's a real buzz to the place, and it doesn't feel like work at all. Time just flies by. The restaurant's being redecorated right now, so everything's a little crazy.

### Dave

I'm a police officer. I like my job because it's challenging, but I live for surfing. I go as often as I can. I'm opening two shops that sell surfboards in the next few months. The boards are made here in the U.S. Sunday is my favorite day of the week. I hardly ever work on a Sunday. I get up as early as I can, and spend the day at the beach.

### Jenny

Mike and I live on a beautiful farm in Missouri. I know we're very lucky, but it's hard work. We never have a day off on weekends or holidays, or any day of the year. We have to feed the animals and take care of the fields. Now we're harvesting, so we aren't getting any rest at all. But I suppose our favorite day is Wednesday because that's the day we generally get together with friends and prepare a wonderful meal.

## CD1 16 see page 11

## CD1 17 Questions and answers

- Where does he live?  
In Los Angeles, California.
- Is he married?  
No, he is single.
- Why doesn't he like the morning shift?  
Because he has to get up at 4:30.
- How many hours a day does he work?  
Ten.
- What does he like about his job?  
He likes it because it's challenging, and he likes working in a team.
- What does he think about while he's surfing?  
He only thinks about surfing, nothing else.
- Where's he going next month?  
Costa Rica.
- Is his business doing well?  
Yes, it is. He's opening two shops.
- What do he and his friends do on Sunday evenings?  
They eat burgers and relax.

## CD1 18 The office

A = new employee, B = established employee

- A Gosh! I don't know anybody! Can you help me? Who are all these people?
- B Uh, well, that's Nate. He's sitting at the head of the table reading something.
- A He's the one wearing a sweater, right?
- B Yeah, that's him.
- A And what does he do?
- B He's the Chief Executive Officer. He's the man in charge.
- A The boss, in other words.
- B Uh-huh. He yells a lot, but he listens, too. Then there's Alex. He's wearing a suit. He's standing up talking to Anna. Alex is the sales director. He's charming. He always has something nice to say to everyone. Anna's standing next to

him. She's drinking coffee. She's wearing a jacket and she has a scarf around her neck.

- A And Anna is the ...?
- B Anna's the accountant. Money, money, money. Very bright, very quick.
- A Oh, OK. And who's that talking on her phone?
- B In the blue skirt? That's Jenny, the Human Resources Manager, HR manager. She deals with all the personnel. She's a sweetheart. Everyone loves her. Then there's Matthew. He's the IT manager. He's only working here for a few months. He's from our New York office. I don't really know him very well.
- A He's the guy working on his laptop?
- B That's him. Wearing a shirt, no tie. He knows everything about technology. And finally that's Christina talking to Nate. She's his PA. She ...
- A Sorry. What was that?
- B She's Nate's PA, Personal Assistant. She organizes his schedule, but she helps all of us, really. We couldn't cope without her. She runs the whole place, actually. She's the one in a black suit and cool earrings. Very sharp.
- A Alright. I think I got all that ...

## CD1 19 Who earns how much?

### Part 1

- A Well, I guess that doctors earn a lot.
- B Yeah. I think so, too. They have a lot of responsibility and a lot of training. I'd say that doctors get about ... \$180,000? What do you think?
- A Could be ... or it could be even more, \$200,000.
- B One of those two, anyway. Should we look at the high earners first?
- A Uh-huh. \$750,000 ...
- B There's one higher ...
- A Oh, is there? Oh, yes. A million. Mmm.
- B I'd say ... that has to be the basketball player.
- A Yes, definitely. They do earn ridiculous amounts of money, don't they? So what about \$750,000? Who earns three quarters of a million?
- B Um ... I think that's the lawyer.
- A As much as that? What about the CEO? Do lawyers earn more than them?
- B Maybe, maybe not. I suppose the lawyer could be \$180,000, and the CEO \$750,000. CEOs are in charge of huge companies.
- A OK. Now ... the pilot. Pilots earn a lot, don't they? They need a lot of experience. They have people's lives in their hands ... I think they get ... oh, at least a hundred, a hundred and fifty.
- B Mmm. I know what you mean, but I don't think they get that much.
- A Don't they? Oh! Anyway, there isn't 150 on this list, so ...
- B I guess pilots get about \$115,000 ...
- A OK. I'd say that's about right ...

## CD1 20

### Part 2

- B Let's go on down to the bottom. What's the lowest salary?
- A \$20,000. I guess that's the supermarket cashier. They don't get paid much, cashiers.
- B I thought they earned more than that, actually. I know they don't get much, but still ...
- A Then there's \$30,000, and the next up is \$50,000.
- B Oh, look! Maybe nurses make about \$50,000?
- A OK. That seems about right. What about farmers? How much do they get?

- B I don't know. It depends what kind of farmer. They can earn a fortune, can't they?
- A I suppose so, yes ... But they're always complaining that supermarkets don't pay them enough for what they produce.
- B I still think they get a decent salary. They own so much land! I bet they get 50 or 60 thousand.
- A No, I think it's much lower. I'd say \$30,000.
- B Hmm. Not so sure. Then we have ... teachers. What do they earn?
- A I guess they get ... um ... \$60,000?
- B But it all depends how many years they've worked and how many qualifications they have.
- A Yes, I know, but we're talking about the average.
- B Don't teachers and police officers earn about the same?
- A Do they? I'm not so sure. I'd say that police officers get more. What do we have? \$60,000 ... \$70,000.
- B I think 60 for the police officer and 70 for the teacher.
- A Well, actually I'd say the other way around. 70 for the police officer and 60 for the teacher. My mother's a teacher, and she doesn't earn anything like that!
- B What does that leave? We haven't decided about the farmer or the nurse yet.
- A I think the nurse gets less than the farmer. She gets the least.
- B Why she? Nurses can be men, you know.
- A True. Sorry. Nurses—men and women—earn less than farmers.
- B Men AND women.
- A Absolutely.

## CD1 21 Free time activities

### John

My favorite hobby is cooking, and that's a thing you do at home, obviously. I cook most days, though not every day. We also like eating out. What clothes and equipment do I need? Well, I often wear an apron to protect my clothes, because you can make a mess when you're cooking, and tomatoes and spices change the color of your clothes forever! The most important piece of equipment is knives, and I'm very particular about my knives. They're German, and very sharp, and I really take care of them. Obviously in the kitchen you need all sorts of things like pots and pans and baking dishes and chopping boards and food mixers, but I don't really have a lot of gadgets. I like to keep things simple. What I like about cooking is the fact that it's creative and it's real. We have to eat, and what we eat is really important, so I like to know that what I'm eating, and what my family is eating, is good. I actually like all the preparation. Going out shopping, seeing the food, feeling it, smelling it, talking to the people who are selling it, is half the fun. People often ask me what I like cooking, and I don't really have an answer. Whatever looks good, and whatever I feel like cooking that day. The best part is of course seeing people enjoy my food, but what's also very important to me is seeing everyone happy, and enjoying being at the table. It's about the occasion as much as the food.

## CD1 22

A = Ann, J = Joaquim

- A So what do you think of Chicago, Joaquim?
- J It's really interesting. Chicago's such a great city. There are some beautiful buildings, and the people are so friendly!



- A Yes, they are. When did you get here?  
 J Two days ago. I took a flight from Miami. We were a bit late landing, but it didn't matter.  
 A Oh, good. Where are you staying in Chicago?  
 J At the Avenue Hotel. It's very convenient for the office. My room isn't very big, but it's OK.  
 A That's too bad! Don't worry. Where are you from?  
 J From Brazil. I was born in São Paulo, but I live in a suburb of Rio de Janeiro. It's very pretty, and it's not far from the sea.  
 A Really? It sounds beautiful. Your English is very good. Where did you learn it?  
 J That's very kind of you, but I know I make a lot of mistakes. I learned it in school for years, and I've been to the U.S. many times.  
 A Oh, have you? How interesting! And what are you doing here in Chicago, Joaquim?  
 J I'm attending a conference. I'm here for five days, and I'm going home on the 17th.  
 A Oh, so soon! And have you managed to get around our city yet?  
 J I haven't seen very much. I've been for a walk along the lakefront path and I've taken a boat tour from the Navy Pier, but I haven't been to the John Hancock Observatory yet.  
 A Well, I hope you enjoy it. Don't work too hard!  
 J I'll try to enjoy myself! Bye. It was nice to talk to you.

### CD1 23

- 1 Who do you work for?
- 2 Do you enjoy your job?
- 3 Where do you come from?
- 4 Have you been to New York?
- 5 What do you do when you're not working?
- 6 The weather's amazing right now, isn't it?
- 7 Are you going on vacation this year?
- 8 This city's very exciting, isn't it?
- 9 What's your favorite TV show?

### CD1 24

- 1 A Who do you work for?  
B Siemens. I've been with them for four years. They're a good company. How about you?
- 2 A Do you enjoy your job?  
B Yes, I do. It's quite hard, but it's very challenging. I don't earn very much. What about you? Do you like your job?
- 3 A Where do you come from?  
B I was born in Michigan, and I've lived there all my life with my parents. I'd like to live abroad some time.
- 4 A Have you been to New York?  
B No, I haven't, but I'd love to. I've heard it's one of the most amazing cities in the world. Have you been there?
- 5 A What do you do when you're not working?  
B Well, I like horseback riding, and I play golf. And I love music, so I often go to concerts. Do you?
- 6 A The weather's amazing right now, isn't it?  
B Yes, it's so mild. We haven't had any real cold weather at all! Have you heard a weather forecast for the weekend? It's supposed to be good, isn't it?
- 7 A Are you going on vacation this year?  
B Yes, I'm going to Mexico with some friends. I haven't been there before, so I'm really looking forward to it. What about you?
- 8 A This city's very exciting, isn't it?  
B Really? Do you think so? There isn't very much to do. I get so bored here. What do you find to do?

- 9 A What's your favorite TV show?  
B I like soaps and documentaries. And game shows. And the news. I suppose I like everything. What about you?



## UNIT 3

### CD1 25

- 1 When was he born?  
He was born in 1984.
- 2 Where did he grow up?  
He grew up outside of Atlanta, Georgia.
- 3 Where did he go to college?  
He went to the University of Georgia.
- 4 What did he study in college?  
He studied history.
- 5 What was his first job?  
His first job was in finance.
- 6 Where was his first job?  
His first job was in Chicago.
- 7 When was he fired from his job?  
He was fired from his job after he had worked there for three years.
- 8 What was his hobby?  
His hobby was photography.
- 9 Where did he travel after he left Chicago?  
He traveled to New Orleans, Pittsburgh, and Philadelphia.
- 10 Why did he move to New York?  
He moved to New York to be a photographer.
- 11 What problems did he have after he moved to New York?  
He was broke and lonely.
- 12 What did he take pictures of in the beginning?  
In the beginning, he took pictures mostly of objects.
- 13 What did he take pictures of later?  
Later, he took pictures of people.
- 14 When was his book published?  
His book was published in 2013.

### CD1 26 see page 19

### CD1 27

- /t/ worked published  
 /d/ studied traveled arrived loved moved  
 /ɪd/ decided posted

### CD1 28 I didn't do much

- 1 I didn't do much. I just had something to eat, watched TV for a while, and then had an early night. I was in bed by ten.
- 2 I went to my yoga class, then went out to eat with a couple of friends. I got home about nine and did a bit of housework, and that was it.
- 3 I went out with some people from work, so I didn't get home until about midnight. Well, after midnight, actually. It was a very late night for me!
- 4 I met some friends in town for coffee, and we talked for a while. Then I went home and did some stuff on the computer, you know, Facebook, then went to bed about eleven thirty.

### CD1 29 Wayne Wade should have stayed home

On July 30, the Florida man robbed an apartment in the town of Hollywood, only to encounter the apartment's tenant on his way out the door. "Uh-oh, now she knows what I look like. I need to get out of here!" Wade thought. So he ran out the

door. As he was driving home, he realized that he had left his cell phone in the home he had robbed. "Uh-oh, now the cops have my fingerprints and lots of other information about me. I have to get that phone back!"

So he called his phone. Maybe he hoped that the person who answered would return the phone to him. Instead, the phone was answered by a detective who was in the house. The detective was investigating the robbery. Wade told the detective his name and said he needed his phone back. Instead, he was arrested, and the fingerprints from his phone were used to tie Wade to five other unsolved robberies.

In court later that week, Wade told a judge that his phone had been stolen. But the judge didn't believe him!

### CD1 30

#### D = Detective, T = Tenant

- D Could you please tell me exactly what happened this afternoon?  
 T Well, I came home from work. I opened my door, and there was a strange man in my apartment. He was standing in front of that table over there. When he saw me, he ran out the door.  
 D Okay .... And what did he look like?  
 T Um, well, let's see. He was tall and thin, and ... um, he was wearing jeans. Yeah, jeans, and a black shirt.  
 D All right. So then what did you do?  
 T I ... I called the police.  
 D Right. And was anything stolen?  
 T Um, yes, some jewelry. A ring, and a few necklaces. Some other things were in a bag on the table, like my laptop and a painting. Fortunately, the thief ran off without the bag.  
 D Good, good. So, is there anything else you can tell me?  
 T No ... No, I think that's it.

### CD1 31 see page 21

### CD1 32 Words that sound the same

knew/new read/red wore/war  
 threw/through flew/flu

### CD1 33 see page 21

### CD1 34 see page 21

### CD1 35 see page 21

### CD1 36 see page 22

### CD1 37 The first time I fell in love

#### Sarah

The first time I fell in love was when I was 13. It was with a boy named Max. We were on a school trip, a geography trip, so a whole group of us were traveling together for a week. I'd never really noticed this boy before, because we used to hang out with different people, but I suddenly started looking at him, and I remember thinking, "Hmm! You're nice!" and I couldn't understand why I hadn't looked at him before. He was very quiet, and he had dark eyes that seemed to see everything, and he made me go all weak at the knees. We kind of started going out. When we held hands, it was electric! I'd never felt anything like it in my life! Wow! I don't think he felt the same way. He was very cool about everything. It only lasted a few months. Then he went back to his friends and I went back to mine.



**Tommy**

- T Well, I fell in love with a girl called Clara, but it didn't last very long.  
 I How long did it last?  
 T Well ... about two weeks. It all ended last Friday.  
 I Really? What happened last Friday?  
 T I decided that I'd had enough of being in love. I didn't like the feeling.  
 I Was Clara upset?  
 T Not really. She didn't know anything about it.  
 I What?  
 T No. I hadn't told her that I was in love with her, so she didn't know that it had ended.  
 I Was it so bad?  
 T Oh, yes. I couldn't sleep, I used to get this funny feeling here in my tummy when I saw her coming, and my heart went bang, bang, bang. It was horrible!  
 I So how did you manage to stop loving her?  
 T Well, I'm only 9, and I figured that I'm too young to only love one person for the rest of my life.  
 I Fair enough. I'm glad you didn't hurt her feelings.  
 T I'm glad it's all over.

**James**

Well, I've only been in love once in my life, and that was when I was 22. I'd had other friends, of course, but it was never more than that. Just a friend. And then I met this other girl, Ruth, and my whole life just turned upside down. I remember thinking at the time that I'd never felt anything like it. Nothing looked the same, felt the same, life had never been so amazing, so colorful. I wanted to do everything—climb mountains, fly like a bird, stay up all night—life was far too amazing to sleep. It's funny, I never used to care what I looked like, but suddenly I started to care. I wanted to look good for this girl in my life. I felt that I hadn't really lived until that moment, until I'd met her and fallen in love. Thank goodness she felt the same! We're still together. Thirty years and four kids later. Amazing, huh?

**CD1 38** see page 25**CD1 39**

- 1 We had a great time in Thailand, didn't we?
- 2 The weather was great, wasn't it?
- 3 The French really love their food, don't they?
- 4 It's a lovely day today, isn't it?
- 5 Karen and Tom are a really nice couple, aren't they?
- 6 Tom earns so much money, doesn't he?
- 7 They want to get married, don't they?

**CD1 40**

- 1 A She's very nice.  
B She's absolutely wonderful!
- 2 A The movie was good.  
B The movie was just great!
- 3 A The hotel's all right.  
B The hotel's really fabulous!
- 4 A I like dark chocolate.  
B I absolutely adore dark chocolate.
- 5 A I like Peter.  
B I really love Peter.
- 6 A The book wasn't very good.  
B The book was absolutely awful!
- 7 A I don't like noisy restaurants.  
B I just can't stand noisy restaurants!

**UNIT 4****CD1 41** see page 27**CD1 42** Giving advice**Conversation 1**

- A Are you going to Charlotte's party?  
 B I don't know if I should go or not.  
 A What do you mean?  
 B Well, her parents are abroad, and they told her she wasn't allowed to have friends over while they were away.  
 A Oh, come on! You have to come. It's a party. Everyone has parties when their parents are away.  
 B Yeah, but her mom and dad are best friends with mine.  
 A Look. You don't have to tell your mom and dad. Just go to the party and help clean up after.  
 B I'm not sure.

**Conversation 2**

- A Do you see that woman over there?  
 B Yeah, what about her?  
 A She's eating!  
 B So?  
 A You're not allowed to eat in this store.  
 B Well ...  
 A Do you think I should tell her to stop?  
 B No, no, you shouldn't say anything. It's embarrassing. The sales assistant will tell her.  
 A No! I can't just sit here. I have to say something. Um—excuse me ...

**Conversation 3**

- A I'm so mad!  
 B Why?  
 A I got a parking ticket. I had to go to the store for my dad, and when I got back to the car, there was a ticket on the windshield.  
 B Oh, that's bad luck!  
 A I think *he* should pay the fine.  
 B Who? Your dad? Why? He wasn't driving.  
 A Yeah, but I was doing *his* shopping.  
 B But he didn't tell you to park illegally.  
 A OK, OK, so it's my fault. Um—I still think *he* should pay it.

**CD1 43****Rules for life****1 Millie**

Well, so many teenagers seem to think life is about just one thing, you know—money and fame, they think it will bring them happiness. Honestly, I would hate to be famous. When I read the magazines and see all the photos of these rich, famous movie stars, athletes and the like, it frightens me. They can't move without being followed and photographed. Usually they have bodyguards. When I grow up I just want to enjoy my work. If I earn lots of money, fair enough, but if I don't, I'll still be happy. I never want to be famous. That's scary stuff.

**2 Richard**

My rule for life is that you only get out of life what you put in. I mean, you should never ask that question people always ask "Why are we here? What is the meaning of life?"—you'll never find the answer. You've got to *give* meaning to your life by what you *do* with your life—um ... and I think

you can do this in all kinds of ways. It doesn't matter if you are president of your country or a janitor. You have a place in the world, you have a part to play.

**3 Frank**

I believe you've got to look for the good in people and things. So many people my age do nothing but complain about today's world—oh, on and on they go about—oh, how bad the traffic is, or how cell phones are such a menace. Oh, and most of all they complain about young people—they're loud, they're impolite, not like in the "good old days." Well, I don't agree with all that. There's always been good and bad in the world, and I think we should look for the good. The rule I try to live by is find three things every day to be happy about.

**CD1 44** Spoken English

- 1 "Isn't your mom away this week?"  
"Yeah, so Dad's got to do all the cooking, and I've got to do the ironing."
- 2 "Where's my briefcase? I've got to go to work."  
"It's where you left it when you came home. In the hallway by the front door."
- 3 "Mom, why can't I go out now?"  
"You've got to clean up your room first. Your friends will just have to wait."
- 4 "Won't you be late for work?"  
"Oh, no. Look at the time. I've got to go now. We'll catch up later. Bye!"

**CD1 45** "I Believe"

I believe in bottle banks  
 And beauty from within  
 I believe in saying thanks  
 And fresh air on the skin

I believe in healthy walks  
 As tonic for the feet  
 I believe in serious talks  
 And just enough to eat

**Chorus**

That's what I believe  
 Surprising as it seems  
 I believe that happiness  
 Is well within our dreams

I believe in being nice  
 In spite of what you think  
 I believe in good advice  
 And not too much to drink

I believe in being true  
 In everything you try to do  
 I believe in me and you  
 I hope you share my point of view

**Chorus**

I believe in being kind  
 Especially when it's hard  
 I believe an open mind  
 Can show a fine regard

I believe that manners make  
 A person good to know  
 I believe in birthday cake  
 And going with the flow

**Chorus**

That's what I believe  
 Although it seems naïve  
 I believe that peace and love  
 Are there to be achieved  
 That's what I believe ...



**CD1 46 Phrasal verbs**

- 1 A Who do you take after in your family?  
B Mmm ... I don't think I take after anyone in particular. Although the older I get, the more I think I'm like my mother. Humph!
- 2 A Do you get along with both your parents?  
B Yes, I do. Most of the time. I do a lot of stuff with my dad. Baseball and things.
- 3 A Have you recently taken up any new sports or hobbies?  
B Me? No! My life's too busy already!
- 4 A Do you often look up words in your dictionary?  
B Sometimes, if I'm really stuck.
- 5 A Are you looking forward to going on vacation soon?  
B I wish! But I just went on vacation, so I have to wait until the holidays now.
- 6 A Do you pick up foreign languages easily?  
B Well, I picked up Italian quite easily when I was living in Milan, but I already knew Spanish, so I think that helped a little.
- 7 A Do you have any bad habits that you want to give up?  
B Yes, I bite my nails. I just can't stop and I'm a teacher, so I have to hide my hands from the kids because I don't want to set a bad example.

**CD1 47** see page 33**CD1 48****Conversation 1**

- A Hello, it's me again. I just remembered that I have a doctor's appointment in the morning. Could we possibly make it lunch instead of coffee?
- B Um ... no problem. I can do lunch, too. How about 12:30 in the usual restaurant?

**Conversation 2**

- A Would you mind if we didn't go out to eat after work? I want to watch the game on TV.
- B Hey, we could have dinner at Morgan's. They have a huge screen. We could both watch the game there.
- A You're on. Great idea!

**Conversation 3**

- A So, anyway, there I was just finishing my report, when suddenly the boss calls me into his office and he starts ...
- B Sorry, darling, I really do want to hear all about it, but the baby's crying. Do you think you could go and check him? He might need a new diaper.

**Conversation 4**

- A Help! Ugh ... I don't know what's wrong with my computer. The screen's frozen again.
- B I'll try and fix it if you like. I'm pretty good with computers.
- A Go ahead. Be my guest. I've had it with this machine!

- D Hang on! We haven't had our baby yet. I'm not thinking about grandchildren!
- H I know, but having a baby makes me wonder—what will the world be like when he or she grows up? Look at these pictures. Don't they make you worry about what could happen in the future?
- D Mmm—OK, of course things are going to change a lot in the next hundred years, even in the next fifty, but ...
- H I know, and I'm getting worried. Everyone says global warming is a fact nowadays. No one says it *may* get warmer or it *might* get warmer anymore. Scientists say that it *definitely will* get warmer. It's going to be a very different world for our children and grandchildren.
- D Look, Hannah, it's no good worrying. Not *all* scientists think the same ...
- H Yes, I know, but *most* do. It says here over 2,500 climate scientists agree. They say temperatures might rise by up to 39°F before the end of the century. Dan, this is the world our son or daughter is going to grow up in.
- D Hannah, you have to take it easy. You're having a baby soon and ...
- H I can't help being worried. If the Arctic ice melts, there'll be floods, and the polar bears will have nowhere to live. Oh, and look at this ...
- D Come on, Hannah. Look here, it also says humans are clever enough to find solutions. We'll do our part, and we'll bring up our baby to do the same. Every little bit helps ...
- H OK, but maybe it won't help. It may be too late already.

**CD2 3**

- 1 A Do you think the earth will continue to get warmer?  
B Yes, I do. The more I read about it, the more I think it will. A few years ago I wasn't so sure.
- 2 A Do you think all the ice will melt at the Poles?  
B Well, I don't think *all* the ice will melt, but a lot has melted already. Do you know a new island near Greenland has just appeared? They thought it was part of the mainland, but it was just an ice bridge and it melted. It's called Warming Island. A good name, don't you think?
- 3 A Do you think polar bears will become extinct?  
B I think they might. They only live in the Arctic, and I read that the ice there has decreased by 14% since the 1970s.
- 4 A Do you think more people will travel by train?  
B Definitely. I think lots more people will choose train travel when they can, especially across Europe. Of course it won't always be possible to.
- 5 A Do you think that air travel will be banned to reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions?  
B Well, I think it could become much more expensive to travel by air, but I don't think it'll be banned.
- 6 A Do you think new sources of energy will be found?  
B I hope so. Some people say nuclear energy is the only answer, but I think this could cause more problems. Actually, I like wind farms. They look amazing. But I know some people hate them.
- 7 A Do you think there'll be more droughts or floods in the world?

- B I don't really know. There might be both drought and floods. I think parts of New York City may be flooded, including most of lower Manhattan.
- 8 A Do you think our lifestyles will have to change?  
B Definitely. They're already changing. We're told all the time to do things like drive smaller cars, use cleaner gas, and recycle our trash. That worries me a lot—the amount of trash we make.

**CD2 4** see page 35**CD2 5****1 Thailand**

A prolonged period of heavy rain and thunderstorms will affect parts of the country on Friday and into Saturday. Rainfall could total 1 to 2 inches in the south, but there may be up to 2 to 4 inches in the north. The heavy rain might lead to flooding in some areas.

**2 Canada**

High winds following in the path of Hurricane Gloria will head north from the U.S. overnight. They could reach up to 100 miles per hour and may cause damage to buildings across northwest Ontario. These winds are going to bring with them high temperatures across the country and thunderstorms in many areas.

**3 The U.S.**

The country's heatwave is going to continue. Temperatures could rise to more than 100 degrees Fahrenheit by midday tomorrow. New York City's mayor is going to send out teams of workers to distribute 22,000 bottles of drinking water to local people. Meteorologists say that temperatures will continue to rise until the end of the week.

**4 Mexico**

Tropical storm Barbara is forming rapidly off the coast and will move towards land. Winds of 68 miles per hour are expected, and they could reach the popular resort of Acapulco over the next few days. Hotels and houses may have to be evacuated. Meteorologists say that the winds might even reach hurricane status.

**5 South Africa**

For the first time in 25 years forecasters in Johannesburg are predicting snow. Up to 4 inches could fall during the night, and this is causing much excitement throughout the city. SABC News is reporting that some parents are going to take their children to the local parks after midnight to play in the snow. Tambo International Airport may be affected.

**CD2 6**

- 1 I think it'll be a cold night tonight. Wear warm clothes if you go out.
- 2 I think I'll get a new laptop. I want a touch screen this time.
- 3 I think I'll take a cooking class. I can't even boil an egg.
- 4 I think you'll like the movie. It's a great story and really well cast.
- 5 I think we'll get to the airport in time. But we'd better get moving.
- 6 I think you'll get the job. You have all the right qualifications.

**CD2 7**

- 1 I don't think it'll be a cold night tonight. You won't need to take a jacket.

**UNIT 5****CD2 2** Things our grandchildren may never see**H = Hannah, D = Dan**

- H Do you ever worry about what the world will be like when our grandchildren grow up?

irLanguage.com



- 2 I don't think I'll get a new computer. It may seem old-fashioned to you, but it's OK for me.
- 3 I don't think I'll take a cooking class. I'll get lessons from my mom.
- 4 I don't think you'll like the movie. It's not really your kind of thing.
- 5 I don't think we'll get to the airport in time. There's too much traffic.
- 6 I don't think you'll get the job. You're too young, and you have no experience.

### CD2 8 Rocket man

I = Interviewer, S = Steve

- I Steve Bennett's ambition was to be a rocket scientist. A few years ago, he almost won a \$16 million prize, the X prize. Now Steve's building a rocket that will take him and two passengers up into space. He believes that space tourism is not really that far away.
- S Space tourism is just about to happen. There are a lot of people around the world who are actually putting a lot of money into space tourism. It's simply a question of *when*, not *if*. You know, just as the Internet made billionaires, well, space tourism is going to make trillionaires. And all the big names are at it—you have Jeff Bezos, he did Amazon.com, he's building his own spaceship; you have Richard Branson, even he is commissioning someone to build a spaceship for him. So it really is going to happen.
- I And what are you intending to take people into space in? What is your rocket?
- S A rocket that can carry three people into space. We're not going into orbit. It's going straight up and straight down, but it will go into space. It'll give you about three or four minutes of weightlessness, you'll see the blackness of space, the curvature of the earth, and you really will truly become an astronaut just like the early American astronauts.
- I And you are going to be one of the people who goes up, so it's going to be you and two space tourists. Have you been up in this exact rocket before, Steve?
- S No, we're still working on this one. We've launched about 16 big rockets to date but this actual space rocket, called *Thunderstar*, we're still working on it, we're still building it. I was influenced as a small child watching too many episodes of "Thunderbirds," I think.
- I Were you very much struck by the first moon landings as well?
- S Yup. I was about five years old when they landed on the moon. Um, my parents wouldn't let me stay up to watch the actual landing, which was a shame.
- I How mean!
- S Yeah ... yeah. Well, they just didn't get it. "Oh, it's marvelous, but they should spend the money on something better" kind of attitude.
- I Lots of young boys will have had exactly that kind of experience themselves, but very few of them will now have a business that's making rockets and thinking about taking people up into space. Did you always feel you eventually would get to do it professionally?
- S I kept it pretty quiet. Ten, fifteen years ago you start talking about space tourism and people, they think you're nuts, so you keep that kind of thing to yourself.
- I Why do we really need to do that, though? I mean, is there actually any necessity to have more humans in space?

S Well, that's pretty much where the human race needs to be in terms of expansion. You know, there's enough resources in space to allow the human race to grow and expand for the next 10 thousand years.

- I What kind of training do you have to do in order to go up in the rocket?
- S Actually, one of the most important things we do is skydiving training. We feel that if you don't have what it takes to jump out of an airplane with a parachute, you really shouldn't be strapping yourself to the top of a 17-ton rocket.
- I These two other people who've already booked their place on your *Thunderstar*, do you know who they are?
- S Absolutely. I've taken their money.
- I Right.
- S Well, it's a couple. It's two people who want to fly in space. They came to me a few years ago and basically they said, "Steve, we want to fly in the rocket. Here's the money." They gave me half a million dollars for it.
- I And how often do you consider the possibility that something might go wrong?
- S I think about it every day, you know? I've built a lot of rockets, most of them have worked really well. Some haven't, and I think about that every day.

### CD2 9 Spoken English

- 1 A Did your team win?  
B No, but they did pretty well.
- 2 A You haven't lost your cell phone again!  
B No, no. I'm pretty sure it's in my bag somewhere.
- 3 A Do you enjoy skiing?  
B I do, but I'm pretty hopeless at it.
- 4 A What do you think of my English?  
B I think it's pretty good.

### CD2 10 see page 103

### CD2 11

- 1 Carlos and Diana don't get along at all. They disagree about everything.
- 2 Money does not always lead to happiness.
- 3 My aunt says today's kids are all rude and impolite.
- 4 Thanks for your advice, it was really helpful. I really appreciate your kindness.
- 5 My dad is useless at fixing his computer. I always have to help him.
- 6 Please don't misunderstand me. I didn't mean to be unkind. I'm really sorry.
- 7 Timmy fell off his bike and hit his head. He was unconscious for a few hours.
- 8 What was your wife's reaction when she heard you'd won the lottery?

### CD2 12 see page 40

### CD2 13

- 1 A The doctors are going to operate on my grandma's knee.  
B Oh, no!  
A Don't worry, it's not a serious operation.
- 2 A Did you explain the homework to Maria?  
B I did, but I don't think she understood my explanation.
- 3 A I couldn't find the book I wanted in the library.  
B Did you ask the librarian? She'll tell you if they have it.

- 4 A Can I have a copy of that photograph?  
B Yes, of course. I'm not a great photographer, but this one's OK, isn't it?  
A It is. Usually I can't stand photos of me.

### CD2 14 Arranging to meet

G = Gary, M = Mike

- G Mike, it's me, Gary.
- M Gary! Long time no see. How are you doing?
- G Good, thanks. Listen, I'm coming up next weekend, and I was wondering if we could meet.
- M I'd love to, but this weekend of all weekends, I am *so* busy.
- G Look, you must have some free time.
- M Yeah, I'll pull up my calendar. Hold on ... OK ... shoot!
- G Right. What are you doing Friday evening?
- M Friday evening? Um ... that's my Spanish class. Our company's going to do a lot of work in Mexico, so we're all learning Spanish. But I finish work early on Friday. I could meet you in the afternoon.
- G No, I'm afraid that's no good. My train doesn't get in until 7 o'clock. Do you have any free time on Saturday?
- M Um ... let me see. What about Saturday afternoon? I'm having my hair cut in the morning and then I'm meeting my sister for lunch, but I'm free in the afternoon.
- G Oh, no, sorry, Saturday afternoon, I can't. I have an appointment with a real estate agent. I'm going to look at one of those amazing new apartments by the river. Didn't I tell you? I'm changing jobs and moving back to the big city.
- M Hey, great news, Gary. I knew small town life wasn't your thing!
- G So, what about Saturday evening? Is Saturday evening any good?
- M Sorry, the evening's out for me. I'm going to the theater with friends. We've had it booked forever. But ... hold on, what time are you leaving on Sunday?
- G Late morning. I'm taking the 11:55 train.
- M Hey, I have a good idea. Why don't we meet at the station?
- G Good idea, we could have coffee together.
- M I have an even better idea. They make great pancakes at the cafe. Let's meet there for breakfast. How about ten o'clock?
- G Sounds good to me. But can you make it 10:30? It is Sunday.
- M Fine. 10:30 it is. I'll see you then. Bye, Gary! Hope you like the apartment.
- G Fingers crossed. Bye, Mike. See you Sunday.



## UNIT 6

### CD2 15 see page 42

### CD2 16 see page 43

### CD2 17 Describing things

- 1 What brand is it?  
Sony.
- 2 How much does it weigh?  
3 pounds.
- 3 What's it made of?  
Carbon and titanium.
- 4 What's this button for?  
It turns it on.



- 5 How big is the screen?  
13.2 inches.
- 6 How long is the battery life?  
Eight hours.
- 7 What size is the hard drive?  
256 gigabytes.

### CD2 18

- 1 What kind of bread do you have?
- 2 What flavor ice cream would you like?
- 3 Which way do we go?
- 4 What type of laptop do you have?
- 5 What kind of food do you like?
- 6 Whose top are you wearing?
- 7 How long does it take to get to the airport?
- 8 How far is your house from the beach?
- 9 How often do you go to the movies?
- 10 How many of you want coffee?
- 11 What size shoes do you wear?

### CD2 19

fresh fruit  
latest fashions  
pretty woman  
clear sky  
fast food  
crowded restaurant  
casual clothes  
close friend  
handsome man  
straight hair  
cozy room  
challenging job

### CD2 20

- 1 Peter and I lived together in college.
- 2 He's a good student. He tries hard.
- 3 A Where's the town hall?  
B Go straight ahead.
- 4 Say that again. I didn't hear you.
- 5 Don't talk so loud! Everyone can hear you.
- 6 Why do you drive so fast? Slow down!
- 7 His wife's name is Mariana, not Maria! Get it right.
- 8 The vacation was a disaster. Everything went wrong.
- 9 This room is cool, even in summer.
- 10 A Are you ready?  
B Almost. Give me another five minutes.

### CD2 21 My most treasured possession

**1 Amy**  
I would have to save my photo albums. They have all the photos of my kids, when they were babies, their first steps, you know, when they walked for the first time, their birthday parties, their first day at school. And all the holidays we spent together. All those memories are irreplaceable.

**2 Jack**  
I know it sounds a little sad, but I would have to save my computer. Not very sentimental, but very practical. It has all my work, all my e-mail contacts, several thousand photos, address books, work calendar for the next year. I just couldn't live without it.

**3 Lucy**  
I have a matching hairbrush and hand mirror that belonged to my grandmother. She was given them as a wedding present, and she gave them to me before she died. I don't use them, but they're always on the shelf in my bedroom, and every time I see them I think of her. They're solid silver, and they're pretty heavy. They're not particularly nice, but they have immense sentimental value.

### CD2 22

**Jen**

The person that I'm closest to in my family is probably my mother. She's the kind of person you can talk to about anything. She's very open, my mother, and I can talk to her about friends, stuff that's bothering me at work, friendships, anything. We have our ups and downs, of course, but basically we have an easy relationship. We go shopping together. What I like about her is her attitude. She's young at heart, like me, not old-fashioned or anything like that.

**Brett**

I'm closest to my grandmother. Um, my father I don't really get along with. We don't really see eye to eye on anything. My mother I hardly ever see. She's too busy. My grandmother and I like doing the same things. Um ... we like watching TV and having lunch together. We love playing cards. And I think emotionally I'm closer to her than I am to my parents ... because she and I have a similar attitude to life. I think we both like people. We're very outgoing, sociable, and open.

**Julia**

The person I'm closest to in my family, I think, would be my father. We stay up late listening to music and talking a lot. What I like about him is that he's interesting and interested. He has a curiosity about life. We can talk about anything and everything. We have the same sense of humor, the same love of life. My friends all love him because he's so funny. He doesn't care what people think of him, and I guess that's great. He's pretty cool, my dad.

**Susan**

I think the person that I'm probably closest to is my sister. The thing I love about her is the way everyone knows her. It doesn't matter where we go, everyone says, "Hi, Sarah! How you doin'?" I'm just her little sister. People call me "Baby Sarah," but that's fine. We're so different. We have big fights. She's so hyperactive and loud, she can't sit still, she has to have people around her, and everyone loves her. In many ways she drives me crazy. She just can't think straight. Me, I'm a lot quieter. I'm happy on my own. But we're so proud of each other.

**Chris**

I'm closest to my twin, Nick. Obviously, we have so much in common. The same friends. The same soccer team. The same music. We go everywhere together. But we have crazy arguments about everything. We're like oil and water. I'm like my Mom—calm and easygoing. Nick's like my Dad—very bad-tempered. They fight like cats and dogs. But things have changed now that we're older. We appreciate each other more. The biggest difference is probably interests. I'm into all things history and politics, and Nick's interested in science and nature. But of course we're a lot closer than just brothers and sisters. In a way we're like one. I would trust him like I would trust no one else.

### CD2 23 In a department store

- 1 A Morning!  
B Hello. I'd like to try on these shoes, please.  
A Certainly, sir. What size do you wear?  
B Nine. That's 41, isn't it?  
A Uh, no, I think you'll find 43 would be more comfortable, sir.

- 2 A Do you have these soccer shorts for age 10–11?  
B I'm afraid that's all we have. We're sold out of that size.  
A Will you be getting any more in?  
B We should be getting a delivery by the end of the week.
- 3 A Do you have any sofas like this in stock?  
B No, we don't. They all have to be ordered.  
A How long does delivery take?  
B It all depends, but on average about eight weeks.
- 4 A Yes?  
B I'd like this fruit bowl, please.  
A Certainly. Is it a present?  
B Yes, it is.  
A Would you like me to gift wrap it?  
B Ooh, that would be great! Thank you so much!
- 5 A I like this.  
B How does it feel?  
A I love the color, but the size is wrong. It doesn't fit me. It's too tight.  
B Too bad. It really suits you. What's it made of?  
B Cashmere. It's so soft.
- 6 A Yes, sir?  
B I'll have this coffee maker, please.  
A Certainly. Do you have a store card?  
B No, just a debit card.  
A That's fine. Pin number, please.  
Keep your receipt. That's your warranty.  
B How long is the warranty for?  
A For a year.



## UNIT 7

### CD2 24 see page 51

### CD2 25

- 1 Where and when was she born?  
She was born near Bristol, in England, in 1965.
- 2 When did she write her first story? What was it about?  
She wrote her first story when she was six. It was about a rabbit with measles.
- 3 What was she doing when she had the idea for Harry Potter?  
She was traveling by train between Manchester and London.
- 4 Where did she teach English?  
In Portugal.
- 5 When was the first Harry Potter book published?  
In 1997.
- 6 How long has she been writing the books?  
Since 1990.
- 7 How many did she write?  
Seven.
- 8 How many children has she had?  
Three.
- 9 How many Harry Potter books have been sold?  
Over 500 million copies.
- 10 Which books have been made into movies?  
All of them.
- 11 How much money has she made?  
She's made over one billion dollars.
- 12 How many authors have become billionaires?  
Only one—her.



**CD2 26****I = Interviewer, J = Jack**

- I So, Jack, I know you love Harry Potter. How long have you been a fan of the books?
- J I think since I was about five, but I was so small I couldn't read yet and my mom read them to me.
- I How many of the books have you read?
- J I've read them all—well, not all, exactly.
- I What do you mean?
- J Well, I didn't like *Harry Potter and the Half-blood Prince*, so I didn't finish it.
- I Which did you like best?
- J I liked all the others but not that one. It was boring because it was just like the one before.
- I Have you seen any of the Harry Potter movies?
- J Yes, I have.
- I Which have you seen?
- J I've seen them all, every one.
- I And did you like them all?
- J Yes, I did. I thought they were fantastic, but my brother didn't, he got scared. He didn't like the Chamber of Secrets, the part where the Basilisk ...
- I The what?
- J The Basilisk. It's kind of a huge snake, and it attacked Harry Potter.
- I Oh, I bet a lot of children were frightened by it.
- J I wasn't.
- I Jack, do you have any idea how many Harry Potter books have been sold in the world?
- J Um—I dunno. Um—millions, maybe 20 million.
- I Um—not really. It's 500 million.
- J 500 million. Wow! That's a lot of books.
- I And what do you know about the author?
- J I know it's J.K. Rowling, and she has two children. I wonder if they've read their mom's books.
- I She has three children, actually. Have a lot of your friends read the books?
- J Yes, every single one.
- I What? All your friends?
- J Yeah, definitely—all of them.
- I That's amazing. Now, I know that as well as Harry Potter, you have another passion.
- J Yeah, soccer.
- I And how long have you been playing soccer?
- J Since I could walk. I'd rather play soccer than do anything else in the world.
- I So, if I asked you—what would you rather do this afternoon? Read Harry Potter or play soccer?
- J You know the answer.

**CD2 27** see page 52**CD2 28****Jason Wu – a passion for fashion**

- 1 A How long has Jason Wu been designing clothes?
- B Since he was about 9.
- 2 A How did he learn to sew?
- B He learned to sew by designing and sewing clothes for dolls.
- 3 A Where did he go to college?
- B At the Parsons School of Design. He studied there for three years, but he didn't graduate.
- 4 A What different kinds of products has he designed in his career?
- B He's designed handbags, eyewear, jewelry, scarves, and clothes.
- 5 A How many awards has he won?
- B He's won two awards. He's also been nominated for several others.

- 6 A How long has he been designing clothes for celebrities?
- B Since he was 26. Wu designed First Lady Michelle Obama's dresses that she wore at President Barack Obama's inaugural balls in 2009 and 2013.
- 7 A How long has he been designing handbags?
- B Since 2001. His most expensive handbags cost about \$3,000.
- 8 A What is he doing these days?
- B He's still designing clothes and other products.

**CD2 29**

- 1 A How long are you here for?
- B Four more days. We came two days ago.
- 2 A How long have you been here?
- B Since Monday.
- 3 A How long are you here for?
- B Until Friday. We're leaving Friday morning.
- 4 A How long have you been here?
- B Over half an hour! Where have you been?
- 5 A How long are you here for?
- B We're staying a month altogether.

**CD2 30****Things I'm passionate about****Julia**

I'm really passionate about playing tennis. I've been playing nearly 20 years. I was about 7 or 8 when I started taking lessons, and I had a fantastic teacher. I think that's why I still love it—she was passionate about the sport and that influenced me. I have played in competitions, mainly when I was at school. I still do sometimes. I enjoy it, I think, because it's a very psychological game. I mean, if you're playing badly, you have to push yourself to continue; it's a challenge not to give up. It's also a very sociable sport—I've made lots of friends playing doubles, and, it's a game that doesn't have to be expensive—anyone can play—all you need is a tennis racket. You don't need expensive clothing or equipment like you do for skiing, and it's a fantastic way to keep fit all year round—there's only about three months that you can't play. When I lived in Australia, I played every week of the year. I adored that, it was great.

**Paul**

My passion at the moment is horseback riding—it's strange to hear myself say that because I've only been doing it about a year and I never imagined I'd be so into it. It all happened because I was talking to someone who rode horses and I said that stupid thing people often say, "Oh, I've always wanted to do that," and she said, "Why don't you then?" And I thought, "Why not?" I've always liked horses, they're so big and powerful, but so beautiful when you see them racing around a field or on a track. It amazes me that they let people ride on their backs. Riding is very physically demanding because your body has to be in harmony ... um, it has to move with the horse, but it keeps you fit. Of course, I have fallen off a few times, but it seems that the more you fall, the less it hurts. Also, you have to try and understand your horse. They have moods. You never quite know what a ride is going to be like—a horse you had a great ride on one week can be slow and miserable the next week. I really like that about horses—they have personalities.

**Andrew**

I'm passionate about poetry—I studied English Literature in college, but it wasn't until after

I graduated that I really got into poetry and I started writing some myself. And I met some other people who wrote poetry and I heard them read it aloud and that was amazing. I felt the power of the words—the thing I like so much about it is that you can say so much with just a few words. So little means a lot. Each word, each noun, adjective, preposition has to work hard. There's a poem by Simon Armitage called "To His Lost Lover"—it's a poem of regret, about not saying the things you should have said in a relationship. It has it all for me—poetry's all about saying what often goes unsaid, and with passion. It can be such a help in your life—if you feel tired or depressed, you can always find a poem that will help—it can be short or long, it doesn't matter.

**James**

The thing I'm passionate about, and this may surprise many people, is—um, Seattle weather. I know lots of people can't stand our weather—um, they complain about it all the time, but I love it. You see, when I was a child my family lived in California for five years and we had about 365 days of sunshine every year. It was so boring. I was ten when we came back to Seattle and I just loved all the changes in the weather. Here, you really appreciate the sunshine, and you notice the seasons. For me, one of nature's miracles is after a long hot, sunny day there's a thunderstorm or a downpour of rain and you go outside and you can smell the freshness in the air. The world has been washed clean and bright. It's magic. And you know it's a myth that it rains all the time; it doesn't. It rains less here than in New York or Atlanta!

**Kim**

Something I feel really passionately about is fishing. My father and uncles have always been into this sport and I started when I was about 6. We usually go fishing in Cape Cod, Massachusetts. We go out from about 5:30 in the morning, and we don't get back until late in the day. And the thing I love best about it is that you're away from everything and everyone, out in the water, just waiting, with nothing around you. In fishing, patience is the key to success. You have to keep quiet and still for hours on end until the fish bites the hook. But in my family we only catch, never kill the fish. Once we capture it, we carefully release it, and it's not harmed.

**CD2 31**

- A My grandfather hasn't been doing too well lately.
- B Oh, no!
- A He's 79. Don't you think at his age he should slow down a little?
- B Absolutely.
- A But he won't listen to me. He says he wants to enjoy his life to the fullest.
- B That makes sense.
- A Last summer he went on a two-week cycling trip in South America.
- B You're kidding!
- A We're going to give him a big party for his 80th birthday.
- B That's great.
- A But before that I'm going to have a word with him and tell him to take things easier.
- B Good for you.

**CD2 32**

- 1 A My boyfriend just asked me to marry him.
- B Did he? Good for you! Did you say yes?



- 2 A Will spaghetti Bolognese be OK for dinner?  
B Of course. That's great. It's one of my favorites.
- 3 A There's a strike at the airport so my trip's been cancelled.  
B Oh, no! That's a shame. Will you get your money back?
- 4 A I failed my driving test again.  
B You didn't! That's too bad. Better luck next time.
- 5 A We're expecting a baby.  
B Are you? Congratulations! When is it due?
- 6 A So you think I should save to buy a car, not borrow the money?  
B Definitely. You already have too many debts.
- 7 A I told him I never wanted to see him again.  
B You're kidding! What a shame. I always thought the two of you were so good together.



## UNIT 8

irLanguage.com

**CD2 33** see pages 58–59

**CD2 34**

- When we saw the photos we couldn't help feeling worried.
- The photos made it look worse than it really was.
- Your friends must promise to keep their room clean.
- It's really kind of you to let them stay.
- Did Victor help you escape from the crocodiles?
- He warned us not to go swimming.
- We couldn't help feeling a little scared.
- Have you decided to come home yet?

**CD2 35**

**M = Mom, K = Kate**

- M Kate! It's so good to hear from you. Are you OK?
- K Oh, Mom, I'm really sorry for worrying you so much. I really didn't mean to.
- M We opened your messages, and we were so delighted to see all your photos, and then we saw that one.
- K I didn't want my friends to post it. I asked them not to.
- M But, Kate, all those stitches, and you went to the hospital. We couldn't help feeling worried.
- K I know, but honestly, Mom, my friends made me go to the hospital. I really didn't need to.
- M How is your head now?
- K Absolutely fine. Honestly. I'll send you some more photos, and you can see for yourself.
- M OK. Don't forget to.
- K I'll call again soon, and I promise to text regularly. Bye.
- M Bye. Take care!

**CD2 36** Spoken English

- A Did you mail my letter?  
B Oh, sorry, I forgot to.
- A I can't go out with you this evening. Sorry.  
B Oh, but you promised to.
- A Why did you e-mail your mother again?  
B Because she asked me to.
- A Do you think you'll apply for that job?  
B Yes, I've definitely decided to.

- 5 A Are you taking your brother to the airport?  
B Well, I offered to, but he said he didn't want me to.

**CD2 37** Fears and phobias

**1 Jodie**

I have a really unusual phobia. It began when I was a little girl. I was staying with my grandmother and she asked me to go upstairs and get her cardigan sweater. I opened the cabinet and saw this big, dark green sweater with huge, black buttons hanging there—I was terrified. I started screaming. My grandmother rushed upstairs and finally managed to calm me down, but from then on it was a problem. It was the buttons—all buttons made me feel uncomfortable. It's difficult for me to buy clothes—I try to find skirts and pants with just belts and zippers, but it's not easy. About a year ago a button came off a colleague's jacket at work, and I had a panic attack. I've decided to see a therapist, but I'm embarrassed to say, "I'm scared of buttons." It sounds silly.

**2 Dave**

I'm not sure what first started my phobia, but my dad used to go fishing and afterwards I didn't like watching him cleaning the fish in the kitchen sink. Then, when I was about seven, I started feeling afraid when I saw him coming home with the fish. He had to stop catching it. As I grew up the problem got worse and worse. I couldn't go into supermarkets—the sight of fish made me feel sick. When I started going out with my wife, I had to ask her never to eat fish. I wouldn't go to restaurants because once I saw someone eating an oyster, and I had a panic attack. I can only eat in hamburger restaurants now. It makes life very difficult for my whole family. I've started to see a psychologist, but I haven't succeeded in conquering my phobia yet.

**3 Melissa**

I'm 13 years old and I've been terrified of balloons since I was five. I was trying to blow one up and it popped in my face. I can remember feeling the rubber on my skin—ugh, it was awful. My friends don't understand. They enjoy chasing me around with blown up balloons because they think it's fun to see me cry. Last time, we were in the school playground, and I had a panic attack. At first they refused to believe me and they didn't get the teacher, but then they saw how bad it was—I was having difficulty breathing and they got frightened. The worst thing is that I can't go to parties; if I do, I have to ask them not to have balloons. I can't imagine ever blowing one up. I can't even look at them on TV. I start to shake. I want to see somebody about it. My teacher says I have to.

**CD2 38** The psychologist's view

Human beings are programmed to be afraid of things that can hurt them. Show a baby a picture of a snake or a big, poisonous spider and the baby will show fear. It's in our DNA. We are all afraid of some things and that's good. But a phobia causes absolute terror, with physical symptoms such as a racing heart, sickness, and panic attacks. Phobias are usually the result of a bad experience, for example, a car crash can cause a fear of driving, but it's often just of ordinary things like balloons or a particular food. Some people are more likely to get phobias than others. It's in their genes. My job is to train people to conquer their phobia. First, we just talk about it, and help the patient

relax. Then, we might show just a picture or cartoon of their phobia. After that, we sometimes show a movie, and finally, we ask them to touch the object. In this way, phobias can normally be treated in just three or four sessions.

**CD2 39**

- The cat got up the tree easily enough, but I had to climb a ladder to get her down.
- Daniel, stop staring out of the window, and get on with your work!
- Since you whistled that tune I can't get it out of my head.
- I hate it when my Aunt Mary hugs me close. She wears this disgusting perfume, and I smell like it afterwards.
- Bob's hopeless at all sports. He can't even kick a soccer ball.
- You better lick your ice cream—it's melting.
- When I saw the penny on the floor, I knelt down to pick it up. It's good luck!
- I keep trying to stop biting my nails but I can't. It's a terrible habit.
- I'm terrified of blowing up balloons in case they go "pop."
- Don't scratch that insect bite. You'll get an infection.
- By the end of the concert we were all clapping our hands in time with the music.
- The tour guide pointed at a place on the map.
- My dad's useless at doing things around the house. He can't even hit a nail with a hammer.
- My two-year-old nephew is so cute. He loves marching up and down like a soldier.

**CD2 40** see page 65

**CD2 41** see page 65

**CD2 42**

**A = Airline ticket agent, B = Passenger**

- A Good morning. Where are you flying to?  
B Dubai.
- A And how many bags do you want to check?  
B Just this one.
- A Fine. Put it on the scale, please ... Oh, no.  
B What's the matter?
- A I'm afraid it's overweight. It's almost 60 pounds, and you're only allowed 50.
- B What can I do?
- A Well, you can pay for excess baggage. The rate is \$10 per pound.
- B So, that's um ...  
A That's \$100.
- B Wow. That's a fortune, but I'll just have to pay it.
- A OK. And just the one piece of carry-on?  
B Yes, just this bag.
- A That's fine. Here's your boarding pass. You're boarding from Gate 6 at 9:20. The gate will open 45 minutes before the flight. Have a good trip.
- B Thank you.

**CD2 43**

**A = Amtrak employee, B = Passenger**

- A Good morning. Amtrak. Can I help you?  
B Oh, yes, I was trying to book train tickets online and it didn't work.
- A That's OK. Where and when do you want to travel?
- B I want to go from New York, Penn Station to Boston on the 13th of March.



- A March 30th?  
 B No, no, March 13th. I want to go on the 13th and return on the 30th.  
 A OK, the 13th to the 30th—so you want a roundtrip ticket. And do you want to travel in the morning or the afternoon?  
 B Well, I want to travel up mid-morning if possible, but I'd like to come back on an evening train.  
 A Right. There's a train at 10:30 A.M., it arrives in Boston at 2:45 P.M.  
 B Sounds good. And returning?  
 A For the return there's one at 8:00 P.M., arrives back in New York just after midnight.  
 B Mmm ... is there an earlier one?  
 A There's the 6:30. It arrives back in New York at 10:28.  
 B That sounds perfect. I'll take it. How much is that?  
 A It's \$135. Is that OK?  
 B Fine.  
 A Can you give me your credit card details?  
 B Yes, it's a Visa card. The name on the card is K. Farnham. The number is 0494 7865 4562 1320.  
 A The expiration date?  
 B 05/18.  
 A And your address?  
 B 15 Wilson Road.  
 A Did you say 50 ...?  
 B No, 15, one, five Wilson Road.

## UNIT 9

### CD3 2 Billy's story

- I'd organize a school day which tried to educate everyone about bullying, and I'd invite social workers, police, and psychologists.
- I'd get my dad to speak to them ... if I was older, I'd speak to them myself!
- I'd ask Billy to try to understand the bullies. I'd get all the parents to meet together.
- I'd move so we could change his school and start again somewhere new.
- I'd get really angry and yell at them.
- I'd run away.

### CD3 3 see page 67

### CD3 4

- If they'd understood, he wouldn't have run away.
- If he'd gone to Kidcare, he could have talked about his problems.
- If he hadn't left, Billy might have felt more secure.
- If they hadn't threatened him, he wouldn't have run away.

### CD3 5 You're an idiot!

- "I went walking in the mountains for three days with no food or equipment."  
"You're an idiot! You could have died! You could have starved to death or died in the cold!"
- "I didn't feel like going to work, so I called in sick. I went shopping instead."  
"You're such an idiot! Your boss might have seen you. You could have gotten fired."

- "I had a temperature of 102, but I went out dancing all night."  
"That's so stupid! You could have been really sick. You should have gone to bed."
- "I told Sandra I couldn't see her, then went out with Danielle."  
"That was a really dumb thing to do! Sandra might have seen you out with Danielle."
- "I used to be really good at tennis—I was an under-14 champion—but then I gave it all up."  
"That's such a shame! You might have been a champion! You might even have won the U.S. Open."

### CD3 6 A social conscience

- I was in the bank the other day, and waiting in line. I'd just reached the front of the line when this guy jumped in front of me and said, "I just need to ask a quick question." I wasn't very happy and I hate making a scene, so I let him. But then it started taking forever. He looked back at me and grinned. He was so pleased with himself, and I was just furious! What could I do? I said nothing.
- I was in the park, right, and there was this woman with three kids. She'd obviously had a bad day, yeah, she'd just been shouting at the kids for messing around. One of the kids, the eldest boy, about eight, bumped into his little sister and knocked her over. The mother turned on this kid, the boy, and she hit him really hard. I went over to her and told her to stop. She told me to mind my own business, and said some very rude words and stormed off, screaming at this poor boy. He was just a kid!
- My neighbor always lets his dog do his ... you know ... business in front of my front door, and I always clean it up, day after day, because it just stinks! So the other day I asked him if he could get his dog to do its business somewhere else, or could he pick it up because I didn't like it in front of my front door. He was absolutely awful and said he didn't care! So I suppose I'll just carry on picking it up. What else can I do?
- I was on the bus the other day. There was just me and a couple of kids. These two kids had their feet on the seat in front of them, so I asked them to put their feet down. These kids, they must have been about sixteen or seventeen, came over to me, pushed me onto the floor, and started kicking me. I have bruises everywhere!
- I was walking down the street coming home from work about ten at night, it was dark, and this guy jumped out of nowhere and said, "Gimme your wallet and phone!" He was a big guy and he had a knife. I didn't say anything. I was just terrified! I thought he was going to kill me. I just handed over both and he ran away. I was trembling for ten minutes. I couldn't move. I have never been so frightened in all my life.

### CD3 7

- Miwako isn't here. She just left.
- I'm sorry I'm in a bad mood. I'm just tired, that's all.
- I just love your new coat!
- I just finished the most wonderful book! You have to read it!
- I don't want any coffee. Just a glass of water, please.
- John's so generous. I think he's just amazing!

- "Who's coming tonight?" "Just me."
- Hold on a minute. I'm just going to the restroom.

### CD3 8 Dealing with money

- A Here's your check.  
B Thank you. Is the tip included?  
A No, it isn't. I hope you enjoyed your meal.
- A How much is a standard room?  
B \$120 per night.  
A Does that include everything?
- A I'll pay for the tickets with my MasterCard.  
B Can you give me your number?
- A Could you give me the balance on my account?  
B Sure. Tell me your account number.
- A Can I have a cappuccino and two bottles of water, please?  
B Sure. That's \$14.50.  
A Thank you.  
B And here's your change. 50 cents.

### CD3 9 Dealing with money

- A Here's your check.  
B Thank you. Is the tip included?  
A No, it isn't. I hope you enjoyed your meal.  
B It was very nice, thank you.  
A Can you sign here? And here's your card and your receipt.  
B Thanks. That's for you.  
A That's very kind of you. I hope to see you again soon.  
B Bye!
- A How much is a standard room?  
B \$120 per night.  
A Does that include everything?  
B That includes the room for two people, but it doesn't include breakfast.  
A Is that extra?  
B Yes, I'm afraid it is. But the \$120 does include tax.
- A I'll pay for the tickets with my MasterCard.  
B Can you give me your number?  
A 5484 6922 3171 2435.  
B What's the expiration date?  
A 09/18.  
B And the three-digit security number on the back?  
A 721.
- A Could you give me the balance on my account?  
B Sure. Tell me your account number.  
A 4033 2614 7900.  
B Bear with me one moment. The current cleared balance on that account is \$542.53 in credit.
- A Can I have a cappuccino and two bottles of water, please?  
B Sure. That's \$14.50.  
A Thank you.  
B And here's your change. 50 cents.  
A Thanks. Um ... How much did I give you? I think you've made a mistake!  
B Sorry?  
A I think you must have made a mistake. I gave you \$20, but you've given me change for \$15.  
B No, I don't think so.  
A Well, I'm pretty sure I gave you a twenty dollar bill.  
B Oh, did you? Um ... sorry about that. Here you are.  
A Thanks.





## UNIT 10

### CD3 10 The first computer

Charles Babbage (1791–1871) was a scientist and an engineer. He had the idea for the first programmable computer. He wanted to build a machine that could do calculations without making the mistakes that human “computers” made. He designed a machine called the Difference Engine, and the British government provided funds. The machine was never completed because Babbage ran out of money. In 1991, a team of engineers from the Science Museum in London built one of Babbage’s machines using his original designs, and it worked perfectly.

### CD3 11

- Where did you have lunch today?
- Where’s your mother this morning?
- Do you prefer tea or coffee?
- What’s the name of the river in Washington, D.C.?
- Do you have a pet? What’s its name?
- What’s your father’s job?
- How do you get to school?
- What’s the name of the book?
- Who’s sitting next to the window? Next to the teacher?
- Where are you going after the class?

### CD3 12

- Living in New York has its disadvantages.
- To start with, there’s a lot of traffic.
- New Yorkers like their parks and open spaces.
- For them it’s important to escape from busy city life.
- New York’s full of young people, and they’re always on the move.
- The elderly have their parts of town, and young people have theirs.

### CD3 13

**1 Jacob**  
Well, I’m a huge baseball fan. I like to go on baseball forums and talk to other fans about our favorite teams and players. I also watch streaming baseball games, and I usually tweet about them while I’m watching.  
I do some baseball blogging as well. I even get paid a little bit for it sometimes. I’m hoping to maybe turn it into a job someday, but for right now it’s just a hobby.

### 2 Amelia

I watch a lot of movies. Yeah, I’m a total Netflix addict. Classics, new releases, foreign films ... especially French ones, they’re really awesome. I watch bad movies, too. [laughs] I don’t care ... Alone or with friends, day and night. And after I watch a movie, I usually read reviews of it. It all sucks up way too much time, actually. I never get enough sleep.

### 3 Katsu

My favorite thing is definitely socializing, mostly with my good friends from school. Every night when we’re trying to study, we spend most of our time on group chats. A lot of times we have chats so we can study together, but most of the time we just end up complaining about our classes or making weekend plans. We gossip quite a bit as well.

### 4 Arturo

Hmm. Let me think. My favorite website these days is Wolfram Alpha. It’s like Google, except it tells you the answer to your question instead of giving you webpages with information. I use it to figure out the solutions to difficult calculus problems and to balance chemical equations. I also use it to research papers. I guess you could say I’m kind of a nerd!

### 5 Samantha

Oh, well I’m really into fashion, so I love shopping online. I get a lot of ideas on Pinterest and other websites like that. And then I order lots of clothes and shoes from a bunch of different stores. I do a lot of comparison shopping so I can get the best deals. Also I’m patient, and I wait for sales before I buy stuff.

Sometimes I shop at the mall, too, but I do most of my shopping online. It’s just more convenient, and I save a lot of money. If things don’t fit, I just send them back. It’s no big deal.

### CD3 14 21st century city

- Singapore has 17 water reservoirs.
- The pool on the roof of the Marina Bay Sands Hotel is 57 stories high.
- 13 million tourists visit Singapore every year.
- Ten percent of Singapore’s land is nature reserves.
- Singapore’s area is 277 square miles.
- Singapore’s supertrees are 50 meters tall.
- Singapore has a population of 5.5 million people.
- Singapore is located one degree north of the equator.
- The slide in Singapore’s airport is four stories tall.
- Singapore has 18 man-made supertrees.

### CD3 15 see page 80

### CD3 16 “I need one of those things ...”

- I need one of those things you use when you want to open a bottle. You know, you pull and it goes “pop.”
- I’m looking for some of that stuff you use when you want to clean between your teeth ... It’s like string. It’s white.
- They’re long and thin, and the Chinese use them to pick up food.
- It’s made of plastic, and it’s used for killing flies. SHPLAT! SHPLOUFF!
- They’re things you use when you’re cooking and you want to pick up something that’s hot.

### CD3 17

- It’s one of those things you use in the kitchen. You use it to do the dishes.
- It’s long and thin and sharp at one end. Usually you have two, one in each hand. You can make things out of wool with them.
- It looks like a cell phone; it has buttons you push, but you use it to change channels on the TV.
- It’s the stuff you wash clothes with. You put it in the washing machine. It’s a powder. It smells ... aaaah!
- It’s used for sticking things on the wall, like pictures or posters. It’s soft and sticky.
- They’re made of metal. You can also use them to stick things on the wall, but they’re sharp. It makes a hole. You use them on a notice board.
- It’s a kind of ruler. You use it to measure things that are very long, like a room. It’s made of metal, sometimes.

- It’s something you put on a cabinet or chest so no one can get into it. You have a key to open it, to take it off.
- You know! It has a round, metal part at one end, and the other end is made of glass. You put it in a lamp to make light.

### CD3 18

- It’s one of those things you use in the kitchen.
- It’s long and thin and sharp at one end.
- It looks like a cell phone.
- It’s the stuff you wash clothes with.
- It’s used for sticking things on the wall.
- They’re made of metal.
- It’s a kind of ruler.
- It’s something you put on a cabinet or chest.
- You know! It has a round, metal part at one end.

### CD3 19

#### Conversation 1

- A Yes. How can I help you?  
B I’m looking for a thing you use in the house ...  
A Yes, now, what do you do with it exactly?  
B Well, it’s not one thing. It’s two things. And they’re usually made of plastic.  
A Uh-huh.  
B You know if you make a mess, like you drop bread or break a glass, and there are pieces all over the floor ...?  
A And you need to pick them up?  
B Yes! You go like this ... SHUP! SHUP!  
A What you’re talking about is ...

#### Conversation 2

- A Can I help you?  
B Yes. I don’t know how you say this in English. I’m looking for a thing you use in the kitchen ...  
A OK.  
B It’s like a thing with, you know, holes ...  
A Uh-huh. What’s it for?  
B Well, it’s for cheese or vegetables like carrots.  
A And what do you do with it?  
B If you don’t want a big piece of cheese, or a whole carrot, but you want little pieces, you can push ... you can move ... I don’t know how you say it. Like this!  
A Ah! OK! What you mean is ...



## UNIT 11

### CD3 20 Optical illusions

- A How many colors can you see?  
B Um, three, if you don’t include white—um green, pink, and red.  
A No, look again. There’s only two, pink and green. When the pink’s next to the green it looks red.  
B Really? I don’t think so. They can’t be the same color. Well—um, maybe. What about this one, the girl? That must be a candlestick in front of her face.  
A Yes, you can see one girl behind a candlestick or two girls looking at each other.  
B Oh, yes, amazing, three girls then! And that one, it looks like a man playing the saxophone.  
A Or ... another girl. Look, in the shadows.  
B Yes, I can see her now—she’s wearing a hat and lipstick.



- A Do you think so? Can you see any more people?
- B Yes, that looks like someone wearing glasses and that one is an old lady, and, I'm not sure, but I think she might be wearing a feather in her hat.
- A I can also see a young lady with a feather and a fur coat. And I can see the word "liar."
- B Really? I can't see either of those.
- A OK. Try this. Count the legs on that elephant.
- B One, two, three—um, it can't have five legs. That's a clever drawing. So is that one, it could be a duck or a rabbit. It depends how you look at it.
- A The square looks strange, don't you think?
- B Yeah, it looks wobbly, like jelly.
- A Hmmm, but the lines are all straight and parallel.
- B No, they can't be.
- A Well, they are. If you look line by line, you'll see.
- B I suppose. The dots must be creating the illusion.
- A And the last one. Which line's longer?
- B Well, the one on the left must be longer.
- A Get your ruler and measure.
- B Um—They're the same size—of course. I should have known!
- A Interesting, isn't it, the tricks your eyes can play?

### CD3 21 Fact or fiction?

- Lightning never strikes in the same place twice.**  
This is completely untrue. Lightning often strikes in the same place over and over again—high trees, tall buildings, mountaintops. In fact the purpose of lightning conductors is to be struck time and time again.
- Hurricanes always have female names.**  
This used to be true. From 1953 to 1979 only female names were used, but now both men's and women's names are used. One name for each letter of the alphabet. The same lists are reused every six years. These are the first six names for 2016: Alex, Bonnie, Colin, Danielle, Earl, Fiona.
- Women have a higher pain threshold than men.**  
Some research suggests the opposite, but most people still believe this to be true because women have to give birth. We will never know how men would cope with this experience.
- The sea is blue because it reflects the sky.**  
This is true in a way. The white light from the sun is a mixture of all the colors of the rainbow, but the air reflects blue light more than other colors so we see a blue sky. Then when the sky is brilliant blue, the sea is also, because the water reflects the blue of the sky.
- A penny dropped from a skyscraper can kill a person.**  
Not true. It might give you a cut or a bruise but it is not likely to kill you.
- Hair and nails continue to grow after death.**  
Not true. This is an optical illusion. After death the body quickly dehydrates and the skin shrinks, which gives the illusion that both nails and hair are still growing.
- Birds are bird-brained and stupid.**  
Not true. Some birds are the cleverest animals known to science. For example, crows are

smarter than chimpanzees, and some parrots don't just mimic but understand human speech.

- No two snowflakes are the same.**  
This could be true. No one has yet found two identical snowflakes, but out of all the zillions that fall, it is likely that two may be the same.
- Bats are blind.**  
Not true. Bats have excellent eyesight. People think they must be blind because they have a sound radar, which means they can hunt insects at night. But it doesn't mean that they can't see.

### CD3 22

- A I think I lost my passport.  
B You must be very worried.
- A Your phone's ringing!  
B It might be Jane.
- A Paul's taking his umbrella.  
B It must be raining.
- A Marcelo and Valeria never go on vacation.  
B They can't have much money.
- A Hannah's not in class.  
B She could be in the coffee shop.
- A Look! Three fire engines!  
B There must be a fire somewhere.
- A Tom hasn't seen Zoe in a long time.  
B They can't be going out together anymore.
- A Whose jacket is this?  
B It might be John's.
- A You got the highest score in the class!  
B You must be joking!

### CD3 23 What are they talking about?

- A A cup of coffee and glass of water, please.  
B Tap or bottled?  
A Bottled, please.  
B Did you want ice and lemon with that?  
A Just ice, thanks. How much is that?
- A I can't believe it. My screen's frozen again.  
B Unplug it and take the battery out. Then start it up again. That sometimes works for me.  
A OK. Here we go.
- A So how did it go?  
B Not too bad, thanks.  
A Were you very nervous?  
B Yeah, but I tried not to show it.  
A When will you hear?  
B In a couple of days. They said they'd call me at the end of the week and let me know if I'd gotten it.
- A Do you have any idea what to get them?  
B Not really, but it should be something special.  
A Yeah, 25 years is a long time.  
B It would be nice to get something silver.  
A Yeah. Why don't we get something from both of us, then we can afford something really nice.  
B Good idea. Mom and Dad would love that.
- A Do you come here a lot?  
B What?  
A I said DO YOU COME HERE OFTEN?  
B Yeah, me and my friends come every Saturday night. This your first time?  
A Yeah, here. We usually go clubbing at the Zanzibah.  
B Wow—I've heard the Zanzibah's awesome.  
A Yeah, how'd you like to try it with me next Saturday?

### CD3 24 see page 84

### CD3 25

R = Rachel, C = Christina

- R Hello.
- C Rachel? It's me, Christina. Something awful has happened.
- R Hi, Christina, what on earth's wrong? Tell me.
- C My apartment's just been broken into.
- R Oh, no! That's terrible. When?
- C Well, I discovered it when I came in from work, two hours ago. The door was wide open.
- R They must have known no one was at home. What did they take?
- C Well, my laptop, of course ...
- R Did you save everything?
- C Yes, fortunately most of it was on the cloud.
- R Thank goodness. What else is missing?
- C My camera, and a whole bunch of Lisa's jewelry and her new leather jacket.
- R Not your camera! Well at least you still have your photos. Oh, but Lisa's expensive leather jacket! Does she know?
- C No, she doesn't. She's not back from class yet.
- R She's going to be so shocked when she gets back—and she has her final exams soon.
- C I know, but at least she had her laptop with her so they didn't get that.
- R Yeah, that's good. I know she always takes it with her to lectures. Have you called the police?
- C Oh, yes, they're here now.
- R Good. Do they have any idea who might have done it?
- C Well, they say there have been many burglaries in the area and the apartment above me was also broken into.
- R So, it wasn't just *your* apartment then. Is it messy? Did they turn the place upside down?
- C The mess is terrible. Whoever did it emptied out all my drawers and my clothes are all over the bedroom floor.
- R Oh, how awful! Your nice clothes. Did they take any of them?
- C I don't know, I haven't checked. The police have told me not to touch anything.
- R Yes, of course, and anyway, it must be really difficult to see exactly what's missing.
- C Oh, it is. Oh, Rachel, it's just chaos here.
- R Look, Christina, you're obviously really upset. I'm coming over. I'll help you clean up. I'll be there in 15 minutes.
- C Oh, Rachel. You're a great friend. Thanks so much.

### CD3 26 see page 85

### CD3 27

- A I can't carry all these shopping bags.  
B What on earth have you bought?
- A Tom's broken his arm in three places.  
B How on earth did he do that?
- A There's someone at the door!  
B Who on earth could it be at this time of night?
- A My aunt left all her money to her cat.  
B Why on earth did she do that?
- A I can't find my car keys.  
B Where on earth have you put them?

### CD3 28 see page 85

### CD3 29 see page 85

### CD3 30

- A I can't find my ticket.  
B You must have dropped it.



- 2 A John didn't come to school yesterday.  
B He must have been sick.  
3 A Why is Isabel late for class?  
B She might have overslept.  
4 A I can't find my notebook.  
B You must have left it at home.  
5 A The teacher's checking Maria's exercise.  
B She can't have finished already!  
6 A Why is Carl looking so happy?  
B He may have done well on the test.

### CD3 31 The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes

SH = Sherlock Holmes, HS = Hilton Soames,  
G = Mr. Gilchrist, W = Dr. Watson,  
B = Bannister

HW Holmes, Watson! At last! Tell me. What have you found out? Can the Greek examination take place?

SH Absolutely, the mystery is solved.

HS Really? But who ...? Which student ...?

SH Dr. Watson, can you please ask Mr. Gilchrist to join us.

W Of course. Mr. Gilchrist, Mr. Gilchrist, can you join us, please?

G What is it? What's happened?

SH Close the door, Mr. Gilchrist. Now, sit down and tell me honestly, why did you do it? How did you do it?

G What! Oh, no! How did you find out? I'm sorry, so sorry.

SH Come, come, Mr. Gilchrist, perhaps it's easier if I speak. You see, when I learned that you were an athlete and a long jumper, I worked it out immediately.

HS How? I don't understand.

SH Let me continue. This is what must have happened. Yesterday afternoon, you, Mr. Gilchrist, were returning from practicing your sport. You were carrying your jumping shoes, which, as we all know, have spikes on their soles. You passed your tutor's window, and because you are over six feet tall, you could see into his room. You couldn't help but notice the examination papers on his desk. As you passed the door, you tried it. Amazingly, it opened ...

HS What? How ...?

SH Yes, Bannister had forgotten to lock it. Is that not true, Bannister?

B Oh dear, Mr. Holmes. Mr. Soames, sir, I'm sorry, sir. Mr. Holmes could be right, I was in a hurry.

SH So, Gilchrist, you entered the room, put your shoes down on the desk, and moved to the window to copy the papers and watch for your tutor. Am I right so far?

G Yes, yes.

SH Suddenly, you heard your tutor coming in at the side door. Quickly, you picked up your shoes, scratching the top of the desk with the spikes in your haste and leaving a lump of black mud. You ran into the bedroom. You didn't notice that another lump of mud fell to the floor from your shoes. This morning at 6:00 A.M., I went to the sports ground and collected a sample of mud. It was the same black mud.

W Brilliant, Holmes! Just brilliant.

SH Elementary, my dear Watson. Is this all correct, Mr. Gilchrist?

G Absolutely correct. I feel so bad, so guilty and ashamed. But can I just show you this, Mr. Soames?

HS What is it?

G It's a letter. I wrote it in the middle of the night. Read it, please. In it I say how sorry I am for what I did.

HS Ah, yes. And you say you are not going to take the examination. Oh, and you're going to leave the university and the country.

G Yes, I am. I'm going to work in Africa.

HS Gilchrist, I am really pleased to hear that.

B Oh, Mr. Soames. Mr. Gilchrist. It's all my fault. I'm so sorry.

G Absolutely not your fault, Bannister. I am the guilty one.

SH Well, Mr. Soames, Mr. Gilchrist, time for Watson and myself to have breakfast, I think. I hope the exams go well, Mr. Soames. Good luck in Africa, Mr. Gilchrist. Goodbye.

HS Thank you, Mr. Holmes. It was such a lucky chance that you were staying in town at this time.

### CD3 32

- 1 You need to learn to relax. Why don't you take up yoga?
- 2 He's just come up with a brilliant plan to save the business.
- 3 There's no dessert until you've eaten up all your meat and vegetables.
- 4 Anne and Tony aren't talking to each other. They may even have broken up.
- 5 Did you hear the news? Three dangerous prisoners have broken out of the local prison.
- 6 You must learn to sort out your problems without your parents' help.
- 7 We're saving up so we can buy a house.
- 8 Have you found out why you didn't get the job?

### CD3 33

- 1 A I've just found out that I've won the lottery!  
B Congratulations!
- 2 A I never eat out because I can't really afford to.  
B Me neither.
- 3 A I can't figure out if I feel warm or cold today.  
B Yeah. It's one of those days.
- 4 A I'm saving up to take my grandma on vacation.  
B That's nice.
- 5 A I need to sort out my life. I have problems at work and I have problems with my girlfriend ...  
B Poor you. Come on, let's go out for a walk. Take your mind off things.
- 6 A I've just come up with a fantastic idea.  
B Uh! I'll believe it when I hear it.
- 7 A It's important to make up after an argument.  
B Yeah, kiss and make up. Never let the sun go down on an argument.

### CD3 34 see page 89

### CD3 35

"Did you hear about Marcos? You know, the guy who works in my office. Well ... apparently, he is going to be promoted. To be honest, I don't understand why. Personally, I think he's hopeless at his job. He never does any work. In fact, all he does all day is talk to his friend on the phone and drink coffee. Unfortunately, his desk is next to mine. Presumably, he'll move to another office now, so hopefully I won't have to work with him anymore. Anyway, enough about me. How's your work going? Are you still enjoying it?"

### CD3 36

- 1 A Hi! You're Emily, aren't you?  
B Actually, no, I'm not. Emily's over there talking to Robert.
- 2 A What did you think of the movie? Great, wasn't it?  
B Personally, I thought it was terrible. I just don't like all that blood and fighting.
- 3 A What's the latest gossip about Kate and her boyfriend?  
B Apparently, she's going to dump him. She met someone else.
- 4 A What's the weather like in spring?  
B Generally, it's warm during the day, but you still need to wear a jacket or sweater in the evening.
- 5 A What time will we arrive?  
B Hopefully, in the next hour, unless there's another traffic jam.
- 6 A I've called and left him a message, but no reply.  
B Presumably, he doesn't check his voicemail much. Try texting him.
- 7 A What did you do when you saw the accident?  
B Obviously, we called 911 immediately. Then we went to see if we could do anything to help.
- 8 A How did you feel when they offered you the job?  
B To be honest, I was amazed. I didn't expect to get it, but of course I was delighted. It'll be a challenge.



## UNIT 12

### CD3 37 I read it in the news ...

A three-year-old boy used his mother's computer to buy a \$15,000 car on the Internet auction site eBay.

Jack Neal's parents only discovered their son's successful bid when they received a message from the website.

The message said they had bought a pink Nissan Figaro.

Mrs. Neal, 36, said that they couldn't understand it. She had been on the Internet the day before but hadn't bought anything.

"Jack kept telling us that he was so happy, and that we would soon get a big surprise."

Mrs. Neal, from Houston, Texas, thought Jack was joking. He often used the computer, and she was pretty sure that he knew her password.

Her husband, John, 37, called the seller of the car, and explained that there had been a mistake.

"Fortunately, he saw the funny side and said he would advertise the car again."

Mr. Neal has told Jack to be more careful, and he has asked his wife to change her password.

### CD3 38

- 1 Mrs. Neal said her son was very clever.
- 2 She told me he usually played computer games.
- 3 His father explained that he had bought the computer for his work.
- 4 Mrs. Neal decided that she wouldn't use eBay anymore.
- 5 Jack said he didn't know how it had happened.
- 6 He told reporters that he had always liked computers.
- 7 His mother asked Jack to clean up his room.
- 8 His father told him to go and play soccer.



### CD3 39 Man throws away \$30,000 in town center

A mystery man started a riot in a busy town center yesterday by hurling \$30,000 into the air.

Traffic was stopped at 11:00 a.m. as money rained down from the sky.

Local store clerk Anthony Jones, 55, said, "I couldn't understand it, so I asked my neighbor what was happening." They saw people on their hands and knees grabbing money. "No one knew where the money came from," he said. "They were just stuffing it in their pockets."

Passerby Eleanor Morris said, "I wondered if there had been a road accident, because the traffic was at a complete standstill."

Florist Jane Thomas saw the man, who was wearing a red shirt. "I asked him why he was giving away all his money, but he didn't answer. He just laughed."

Police asked Jane if she knew the man. "I told them I'd never seen him before. He certainly wasn't from around here."

The police confirmed that a local forty-year-old man had been questioned. "He refused to tell us why he'd done it," a spokesman said, "so it's a complete mystery. He wanted to know if we were going to arrest him, but giving away money isn't against the law."

### CD3 40

- A I was coming home from the gym the other night and I was stopped by the police.  
B Were you? Did they ask you a lot of questions?  
A They certainly did. They asked me where I was going and where I'd been, and they wanted to know if I lived in the area.  
B Were you scared?  
A You bet!  
B What else did they ask?  
A Well, they wondered how old I was, and they wanted to know if I'd been with friends.  
B Huh! I'm glad I wasn't with you.  
A They also asked if I could remember when I'd left home.  
B Do you know why they were asking all this?  
A No idea. They wouldn't tell me.

### CD3 41 But you said ... !

- 1 A Bill's coming to the party tonight.  
B Really? I thought you said he wasn't feeling well.  
2 A I'm making dinner for Joe tonight.  
B I didn't know you could cook!  
3 A Oh, no! I spilled ketchup on my white shirt!  
B I told you to be careful. I knew you'd do that.  
4 A Did you get me something to eat?  
B Sorry. I didn't realize you were here. What would you like?  
5 A I'm 25 today!  
B Are you? I didn't know it was your birthday. Hope you have a great day!  
6 A Oh, no! It's raining!  
B Really? But the weather forecast said it was going to be a nice day.  
7 A You left the doors and windows of the apartment open this morning.  
B I'm sorry. I was pretty sure I'd closed all the doors and windows.  
8 A Where did Tom go last night?  
B I have no idea where he went.

### CD3 42 The interview

They wanted to know how old I was.  
They asked me what I was doing at the moment.

They asked me how much I was earning.  
They asked where I'd worked before.  
They asked me if I liked working in a team.  
They wanted to know when I could start!

### CD3 43

- 1 She asked me to help her.  
2 He reminded her to mail the letter.  
3 She promised to study hard for her exams.  
4 He invited me to his party.  
5 She encouraged me to travel.  
6 He offered to give me a lift to the airport.  
7 He persuaded me to apply for the job.  
8 She explained that she'd been very busy.

### CD3 44

- 1 **Merinda calling Jenny**  
A Can I speak to Jenny, please?  
B I'm afraid she isn't here right now. Who's calling?  
A This is Merinda, from work. Could you give her a message?  
B Sure.  
A Can you ask her to call me as soon as she's back? It's very important.  
B I'll give her your message.  
2 **Peter is talking to his boss**  
A Currently, we can offer you the job as Assistant Manager. I hope that's acceptable. The salary is \$50,000 a year.  
B That's fine. I'll take the job.  
A There's a possibility of promotion in the next six months, if everything works out.  
B Great!  
3 **Caroline is talking to her son, Ben**  
A Now, Ben, you can play on the bike for a bit, but then you have to let Mike have a turn. OK? You have to learn to share your toys.  
B OK, Mom.

### 4 Sue leaving a message for James

This is a message for James. It's Sue here. I got movie tickets for 8:00, so I'll see you inside the theater at about 7:45. Hope that's OK. See you later.

### 5 Tom is talking to Sue

- A I'll look at your computer for you, but I can't promise to fix it. I'm not an expert.  
B Will you charge me for it?  
A Don't be silly. Of course not. I'll do it for nothing.

### CD3 45 What the papers say

An interview with Jamie Seabrook

#### Part 1

- A And now for my final guest. He's a singer and songwriter who's been in the music business for twenty years. He still performs sell-out concerts in front of fifty thousand people. But his life hasn't all been easy. He's had problems with his family, and he's been in trouble with the law. And he's just completed a month's rehab in a clinic in Texas. He's never out of the headlines ... Please welcome Jamie Seabrook!  
J Hello, good evening.  
A Now, Jamie, you are in the newspapers and magazines every day. You are photographed wherever you go. Tell me, what do you think of the press?  
J Well, it's kind of nice to have people want to know all about me. Sometimes it gets to be too much, but most of the time I don't mind the media attention. I'm sure there are some reporters who really try to tell the truth, but

I'm afraid that most of them make up stories to sell their newspapers.

- A Are you saying that the stories aren't true at all?  
J That's right! They're completely invented!  
A Can you give us an example?  
J Sure I can! I can give you hundreds!

#### Part 2

- J Two years ago, reporters said my career was finished, and that I'd never sing again. Some friends, who are now ex-friends, said that my marriage was breaking up, and that my brother and I argued about money and weren't speaking to each other. Not one word of that was true!

A And, in fact, your career is on a high ...

- J I just recorded a new album, and my marriage is fine. Sally and I just celebrated our fifteenth wedding anniversary ... and my brother and I get along just fine.

A But things haven't all been easy for you. You spent a month in rehab because police officers said that you had a nervous breakdown ...

- J All that's just lies! I've never had a nervous breakdown. I was driving home from the recording studios and it was two o'clock in the morning and I'd been working all day and I was exhausted! I fell asleep at the wheel and police officers asked me to stop the car. I checked into a clinic for a month because I was suffering from exhaustion.

A Now, you had another legal problem recently. Your personal assistant, Barbara James, said you hadn't paid her for six months, and you made her work seven days a week without a break. Is that true?

- J It broke my heart when Barbara, my PA, said those things about me. I treated her like my own family. When I met her she was nothing, and I gave her everything. None of what she says is true.

#### Part 3

A I read that you have become a Buddhist, that you have stopped eating meat, that you spend four hours a day meditating, and that you are going to give half your future income to charity. Is this true?

- J Yes, it is. I've decided that life is too short, and I'm getting old. I don't care what people think. I made up my mind to do something useful with my life.

A Now, when this story broke a few days ago, the news anchor on MBC's *Morning News* refused to read the story, saying that there were much more serious stories that deserved attention, and that you were just a celebrity. What do you say to that?

- J I can't control what the press says about me. I have to be true to myself. I live my life as honestly as I can. I try to be nice to everyone around me. If you're in the public eye, then you have to be prepared to have some pretty terrible things said about you. I know what's true about me and what's a lie, but I can't change what is said about me in the newspapers and on the television.

A Well, sadly, our time has run out and we've come to the end of the show. A big thank you to my guest, Jamie Seabrook, and good luck with the new album!

- J Thank you. It's been a pleasure.

### CD3 46 see page 97



# Grammar Reference

## UNIT 1

### 1.1 Tenses

Unit 1 reviews what you know. It has examples of the Simple Present and Continuous, the Simple Past and Past Continuous, and the Present Perfect. There are also examples of the passive voice.

All these forms are covered again in later units.

Present tenses	Unit 2
Past tenses	Unit 3
Present Perfect	Unit 7
Passive	Units 2, 3, 7

### 1.2 Verbs

- 1 There are three classes of verbs in English.

#### Auxiliary verbs *do*, *be*, and *have*

These are used to form tenses, and to show forms such as questions and negatives.

#### Modal auxiliary verbs

*Must*, *can*, *should*, *might*, *will*, and *would* are examples of modal auxiliary verbs. They "help" other verbs, but unlike *do*, *be*, and *have*, they have their own meanings. For example, *must* expresses obligation; *can* expresses ability. (See Units 4, 5, 9, 11.)

#### Full verbs

These are **all** the other verbs in the language, for example, *play*, *run*, *help*, *think*, *want*, *go*, *see*, *eat*, *enjoy*, *live*, *die*, *swim*, etc.

- 2 *Do*, *be*, and *have* can also be used as full verbs with their own meanings.

#### *do*

*I do my laundry on Saturdays.*

*She does a lot of business in Latin America.*

#### *be*

*We are in class at the moment.*

*They were at home yesterday.*

#### *have*

*He has a lot of problems.*

*They have three children.*

### 1.3 Auxiliary verbs and tenses

- 1 ***be* and the continuous forms**

*Be* + verb + *-ing* is used to make continuous verb forms, which describe activities in progress and temporary activities.

*He's washing his hair.* (Present Continuous)

*They were going to work.* (Past Continuous)

*I've been learning English for two years.* (Present Perfect Continuous)

*I'd like to be lying on the beach right now.* (Continuous infinitive)

- 2 ***be* and the passive voice**

*Be* + past participle is used to form the passive.

*Paper is made from wood.* (Simple Present passive)

*My car was stolen yesterday.* (Simple Past passive)

*The house has been redecorated.* (Present Perfect passive)

*This homework needs to be done tonight.* (Passive infinitive)

There is an introduction to the passive on page 131.

- 3 ***have* and the perfect forms**

*Have* + past participle is used to make perfect verb forms.

*He has worked in seven different countries.* (Present Perfect)

*She was crying because she had had some bad news.* (Past Perfect)

*I'd like to have met Napoleon.* (Perfect infinitive)

Perfect means "completed before," so Present Perfect means

"completed before now." Past Perfect means "completed before a time in the past."

### 1.4 Auxiliary verbs and negatives

- 1 To make a negative, add *-n't* to the auxiliary verb. If there is no auxiliary verb, use *don't/doesn't/didn't*.

#### Positive

*He's working.*

*I was thinking.*

*We've seen the play.*

*She works in a bank.*

*They like skiing.*

*He went on vacation.*

#### Negative

*He isn't working.*

*I wasn't thinking.*

*We haven't seen the play.*

*She doesn't work in a bank.*

*They don't like skiing.*

*He didn't go on vacation.*

- 2 It is possible to contract the auxiliaries *be* and *have* and use the uncontracted *not*.

*He's not playing today.* (= *He isn't playing today.*)

*We're not going to Italy after all.* (= *We aren't going to Italy ...*)

*I've not read that book yet.* (= *I haven't read that book yet.*)

BUT *I'm not working.* NOT *Iamn't working.*

### 1.5 Auxiliary verbs and questions

- 1 To make a question, invert the subject and the auxiliary verb. If there is no auxiliary verb, use *do/does/did*.

#### Question

*She's wearing jeans.*

*You were born in Mexico.*

*Peter's been to China.*

*I know you.*

*He wants ice cream.*

*They didn't go out.*

*What is she wearing?*

*Where were you born?*

*Has Peter been to China?*

*Do I know you?*

*What does he want?*

*Why didn't they go out?*

- 2 There is usually no *do/does/did* in subject questions.

*Who wants ice cream?*

*What happened to your eye?*

*Who broke the window?*

*What flavor ice cream do you want?*

*What did you do to your eye?*

*How did you break the window?*

### 1.6 Auxiliary verbs and short answers

Short answers are very common in spoken English. If you just say *Yes* or *No*, it can sound rude. To make a short answer, repeat the auxiliary verb. In the Simple Present and Simple Past, use *do/does/did*.

#### Short answer

*Are you coming with us?*

*Have you had breakfast?*

*Does she like walking?*

*Did Mary call?*

*Yes, I am.*

*No, I haven't.*

*No, she doesn't.*

*Yes, she did.*



## 2.1 Simple Present

### Form

The form is the same for *I/we/you/they*.

*I work from 9–5 P.M.*

*They don't work full time.*

*Where do you work?*

*He/She/It:* add *-s* or *-es*, and use *does/doesn't* in questions and short answers.

*He doesn't work on weekends.*

*Where does she live?*

### Short answer

*Do you live in Chicago?* Yes, **we do**.  
*Does he have a car?* No, **he doesn't**.

### Use

The Simple Present is used to express:

- 1 an action that happens again and again (a habit).  
*I go to work by car.*  
*She drinks ten cups of coffee a day.*
- 2 a fact that is always true.  
*Ronaldo comes from Brazil.*  
*My daughter has brown eyes.*
- 3 a fact that is true for a long time (a state).  
*He works in a bank.*  
*I live in an apartment near downtown.*

### Spelling of *he/she/it* forms

- 1 Most verbs add *-s* to the base form of the verb.  
*wants eats helps drives*
- 2 Add *-es* to verbs that end in *-ss*, *-sh*, *-ch*, *-x*, and *-o*.  
*kisses washes watches fixes goes*
- 3 Verbs that end in a consonant + *-y* change the *-y* to *-ies*.  
*carries flies worries tries*  
 But verbs that end in a vowel + *-y* only add *-s*.  
*buys says plays enjoys*

## 2.2 Adverbs of frequency

- 1 We often use adverbs of frequency with the Simple Present.  
 0% ————— 50% ————— 100%  
 never rarely hardly ever not often sometimes often usually always
- 2 They go before the main verb, but after the verb *to be*.  
*I usually start at 9:00.* *They're usually here by now.*  
*I rarely see Peter these days.* *We're rarely home on weekends.*
- 3 *Sometimes* and *usually* can also go at the beginning or the end.  
*Sometimes we play cards.* *We play cards sometimes.*  
*Usually I go shopping with friends.* *I go shopping with friends usually.*

## 2.3 Present Continuous

### Form

**am/is/are + verb + -ing**

*I'm playing tennis.*

*He's cooking lunch.*

*I'm not enjoying my new job.*

*They aren't working today.*

*What's he doing?*

*Where are you living?*

### Short answer

*Are you going by train?* Yes, **I am**./No, **I'm not**.

### Use

The Present Continuous is used to express:

- 1 an activity that is happening now.  
*Don't turn the TV off. I'm watching it.*  
*You can't speak to Lisa. She's taking a bath.*
- 2 an activity that is not necessarily happening at the moment of speaking but is happening around now.  
*Don't take that book. Jane's reading it.*  
*I'm taking a Spanish evening class this year.*
- 3 a temporary activity.  
*Peter is a student, but he's working as a server during the summer.*  
*I'm living with friends until I find a place of my own.*
- 4 a planned future arrangement.  
*I'm having lunch with Glenda tomorrow.*  
*We're meeting at 1:00 outside the restaurant.*

### Spelling of verb + -ing

- 1 Most verbs add *-ing* to the base form of the verb.  
*going wearing visiting eating*
- 2 Verbs that end in one *-e* lose the *-e*.  
*taking coming hoping writing*  
 BUT *lie* → *lying*  
 Verbs that end in *-ee* don't drop an *-e*.  
*agreeing seeing*
- 3 Verbs of one syllable, with one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.  
*stopping getting running planning jogging*  
 If the final consonant is *-y* or *-w*, it is not doubled.  
*playing showing*

## 2.4 Stative verbs

- 1 There are certain groups of verbs that are usually only used in the Simple Present. Their meanings are related to states or conditions that are facts, not activities.

### Verbs of thinking and opinions

believe	think	understand	suppose	expect	agree
doubt	know	remember	forget	promise	mean
imagine	realize	deserve	guess		

*I believe you.*

*Do you understand what I mean?*

*I know his face, but I forget his name.*

### Verbs of emotions and feelings

like	love	hate	care	hope
wish	want	prefer	adore	dislike

*I like black coffee.*

*Do you want to go out?*

*I don't care.*

### Verbs of having and being

belong	own	have	possess	contain	cost	seem
matter	need	depend	weigh	resemble	fit	involve

*This book belongs to Jane.*

*How much does it cost?*

*He has a lot of money.*



## Verbs of the senses

look hear taste smell feel sound

The food **smells** good.

My hair **feels** soft.

We often use *can* when the subject is a person.

I **can** hear someone crying.

**Can** you smell something burning?

- 2 Some of these verbs can be used in the Present Continuous, but with a change of meaning. In the continuous, the verb expresses an activity, not a state. Compare:

I **think** you're right.

(opinion)

He **has** a lot of money.

(possession)

I **see** what you mean.

(= understand)

The soup **tastes** awful.

(state)

We're **thinking** of going to the movies.

(mental activity)

She's **having** a bad day.

(activity)

Are you **seeing** Dan tomorrow?

(activity)

I'm **tasting** the soup to see if it needs salt.

(activity)

## 2.5 The Passive

### Form

#### to be + past participle

The tense of the verb *to be* changes to give different tenses in the passive.

**Are you being served?** (Present Continuous)

**My car is insured** with ASM. (Simple Present)

**Were you taken** to visit the museum? (Simple Past)

**I've been invited** to a wedding. (Present Perfect)

**I'd love to be introduced** to a movie star. (Passive infinitive)

### Use

- Passive sentences move the focus from the subject to the object of active sentences.  
*Shakespeare wrote Hamlet in 1601 while he was living in London.*  
*Hamlet, the most famous play in English literature, was written by William Shakespeare.*  
The passive is not another way of expressing the same sentence in the active. We choose the active or the passive depending on what we are more interested in.
  - By and the agent are often omitted in passive sentences if ...  
... the agent is not known:  
*I was robbed last night.*  
... the agent is not important:  
*This bridge was built in 1886.*  
... the agent is obvious:  
*I was fined \$100 for speeding.*
  - The passive is associated with an impersonal, formal style. It is often used in notices and announcements.  
*Customers are requested to refrain from eating in the store.*  
*It has been noticed that reference books have been removed from the library.*
  - In informal language, we often use *you*, *we*, and *they* to refer to people in general or to no person in particular. In this way, we can avoid using the passive.  
*You can buy stamps in many places, not just post offices.*  
*They're building a new department store downtown.*  
*We speak English in this shop.*
- Many past participles are used as adjectives.  
*I'm very interested in modern art.*  
*We were extremely worried about you.*  
*I'm exhausted! I've been working hard all day.*

## 2.6 Simple Present and Present Continuous passive

### Form

#### Simple Present Passive (am/is/are + past participle)

*Most workers are paid monthly.*

*Is the tip included in the check?*

#### Present Continuous Passive (am/is/are being + past participle)

*This road is being widened.*

*Are you being served?*

### Use

The uses are the same in the passive as in the active.

*My car is serviced every six months.* (habit)

*Computers are used everywhere.* (fact that is always true)

*The house is being redecorated right now.* (activity happening now)

## UNIT 3

irLanguage.com

## 3.1 Past Tenses

We use different past tenses to describe moments and periods of time in the past.

Look at the diagram. Read the sentences.

*When Andrea arrived at work at 9:00 ...*

8:30 — 9:00 — 9:30 — 10:00 —

*... her assistant had opened the mail.*

*... her assistant was opening the mail.*

*... her assistant opened the mail.*

## 3.2 Simple Past

### Form

The form of the Simple Past is the same for all persons.

*He left at three o'clock.*

*They arrived three weeks ago.*

*She didn't finish on time yesterday.*

*I didn't visit my parents last weekend.*

*When did he finish the report?*

*What time did his train leave?*

### Short answer

Did you enjoy the meal?

Yes, we **did**./No, we **didn't**.

### Use

The Simple Past is used to express:

- a finished action in the past.  
*We met in 2011.*  
*I went to Boston last week.*  
*John left two minutes ago.*
- actions that follow each other in a story.  
*Mary walked into the room and stopped. She listened carefully. She heard a noise coming from behind the curtain. She threw the curtain open, and then she saw ...*
- a past situation or habit.  
*When I was a child, we lived in a small house by the ocean. Every day I walked for miles on the beach with my dog.*  
This use is often expressed with *used to*. See 3.5 on page 132.  
*We used to live in a small house ... I used to walk for miles ...*



### Spelling of verb + -ed

- 1 Most regular verbs add **-ed** to the base form of the verb.  
*worked wanted helped washed*
  - 2 When the verb ends in **-e**, add **-d**.  
*liked used hated cared*
  - 3 If the verb has only one syllable, with one vowel + one consonant, double the consonant before adding **-ed**.  
*stopped planned robbed*  
But we write *cooked, seated, and moaned* because there are two vowels.
  - 4 The consonant is not doubled if it is **-y** or **-w**.  
*played showed*
  - 5 In most two-syllable verbs, the end consonant is doubled if the stress is on the second syllable.  
*pre'ferred ad'mitted*  
But we write *'entered* and *'visited* because the stress is on the first syllable.
  - 6 Verbs that end in a consonant + **-y** change the **-y** to **-ied**.  
*carried hurried buried*  
But we write *enjoyed*, because it ends in a vowel + **-y**.
- There are many common irregular verbs.

### ▶▶ Irregular verbs p. 155

### Simple Past and time expressions

Look at the time expressions that are common with the Simple Past.

I met her	last night. two days ago. yesterday morning. in 2006. in the summer. when I was young.
-----------	---

### 3.3 Past Continuous

#### Form

**was/were + verb + -ing**

*I was learning Japanese.*

*They were driving to Tokyo.*

*We weren't waiting for a long time.*

*What were they doing?*

*Where was he studying?*

#### Short answer

*Were you looking for me?*

*Yes, I was./No, I wasn't.*

*Were they waiting outside?*

*Yes, they were./No, they weren't.*

#### Use

The Past Continuous is used:

- 1 to express activities in progress before, and probably after, a particular time in the past.  
*At seven o'clock this morning I was eating my breakfast.*  
*You made a lot of noise last night. What were you doing?*
- 2 for descriptions.  
*Jan looked beautiful. She was wearing a green cotton dress. Her eyes were shining in the light of the candles that were burning nearby.*
- 3 to express an interrupted past activity.  
*When the doorbell rang, I was taking a shower.*  
*While we were playing tennis, it started to rain.*
- 4 to express an incomplete activity.  
*I was reading a book during the flight. (I didn't finish it.)*  
*I watched a movie during the flight. (the whole movie)*

### 3.4 Simple Past or Past Continuous?

- 1 Sometimes both tenses are possible. The Simple Past focuses on past actions as complete facts. The Past Continuous focuses on the duration of past activities. Compare:  
**A** *I didn't see you at the party last night.*  
**B** *No. I stayed at home and watched the game.*  
**A** *I didn't see you at the party last night.*  
**B** *No. I was watching the game at home.*
- 2 Questions in the Simple Past and Past Continuous refer to different time periods. The Past Continuous asks about activities before; the Simple Past asks about what happened after.  
**A** *What were you doing when the accident happened?*  
**B** *I was shopping.*  
**A** *What did you do when you saw the accident?*  
**B** *I called the police.*

### 3.5 used to

*Used to* expresses a habit or state in the past that is now finished.

*I used to read comics when I was a kid. (but I don't now)*

*My dad and I used to play basketball together. (but we don't now)*

*Did you use to read comics when you were a child?*

*This town didn't use to be a nice place to live, but then it changed.*

### 3.6 Past Perfect

Perfect means "completed before." The Past Perfect refers to an action in the past that was completed before another action in the past.

#### Form

The form of the Past Perfect is the same for all persons.

#### Positive and negative

I	'd (had)	seen him before.
You	hadn't	finished work at six o'clock.
We		

#### Question

Where had	you she they	been before?
-----------	--------------------	--------------

#### Short answer

*Had he already left?*

*Yes, he had./No, he hadn't.*

#### Use

- 1 The Past Perfect is used to make clear that one action in the past happened *before* another action in the past.  
*When I got home, I found that someone had broken into my apartment and had stolen my laptop.*  
*I didn't go to the movie theater because I'd seen the movie before.*
- 2 The Simple Past tells a story in chronological order.  
*Sue met Pete in college. They dated for six years. They got married last month.*  
The Past Perfect can be used to tell a story in a different order.  
*Sue and Pete got married last month. They'd met in college and had dated for six years.*
- 3 Notice the difference between these sentences.  
*When I got to the party, Peter went home.*  
(= First I arrived, then Peter left.)  
*When I got to the party, Peter had gone home.*  
(= First Peter left, then I arrived.)



- 4 The Past Perfect Continuous refers to longer actions or repeated activities.

*We were exhausted because we'd been driving all day.*

### 3.7 Past tenses in the passive

#### Form

**Simple Past Passive:** *was/were + past participle*

*The phone was answered by a detective.*

*We were robbed last night.*

**Past Continuous Passive:** *was/were being + past participle*

*The crime was being investigated.*

**Past Perfect Passive:** *had been + past participle*

*Fingerprints had been left on the phone.*

#### Use

The uses are the same in the passive as in the active.

*The bridge was built in 1876.* (finished action in the past)

*The bomb was being defused when it exploded.* (interrupted past activity)

*The package didn't arrive because it had been sent to my old address.* (one action before another action in the past)

## UNIT 4

### 4.1 have to

#### Form

**has/have + to + infinitive**

*You have to go to school.*

*She has to study hard.*

*He doesn't have to wear a uniform.*

*We don't have to take exams.*

*Does she have to study math?*

*Do they have to leave now?*

#### Use

- Have to* expresses strong obligation.  
*You have to work hard if you want to succeed.*
- Have to* expresses a general obligation based on a law or rule, or based on the authority of another person.  
*Children have to go to school until they are 16.*  
*Mom says you have to clean your room before you go out.*
- Have to* is impersonal. It doesn't necessarily express the opinion of the speaker.  
*The doctor says I have to lose weight.*  
*People all over the world have to learn English.*
- Have to* has all verb forms. *Must* doesn't.  
*I had to work last night.* (Past)  
*You'll have to study hard.* (Future)  
*She's rich. She's never had to do any work.* (Present Perfect)  
*I hate having to get up on winter mornings.* (-ing form)

### 4.2 have got to

- Have got to* is common in spoken English. It is more informal than *have to*.  
*I've got to go now. See you!*  
*We've got to get up early tomorrow.*

- Have got to* expresses an obligation now, or on a particular occasion soon.

*I've got to stop eating ice cream! It's too yummy!*

*You've got to pay me back tomorrow.*

- Have to* expresses a general repeated obligation.

*I always have to tell my parents where I'm going.*

*Teachers have to prepare lessons and correct homework.*

### 4.3 Modal and Related Verbs

These are the modal verbs:

*can, could, may, might, will, would, should, must, ought to.*

They are used before other verbs and add meanings, such as certainty, possibility, obligation, ability, and permission.

*You must be exhausted.*

*I can swim.*

*It might rain.*

#### Form

- There is no *-s* in the third person singular.  
*She can ski. He must be tired. It might rain.*
- There is no *do/does/don't/doesn't* in the question or negative.  
*What should I do? Can I help you? You mustn't steal!*  
*He can't dance. I won't be a minute.*
- Modal auxiliary verbs are followed by the infinitive without *to*. The exception is *ought to*.  
*You must go. I'll help you. You ought to see a doctor.*
- They have no infinitives and no *-ing* forms. Other expressions are used instead.  
*I'd love to be able to ski.*  
*I hate having to get up on cold winter mornings.*
- They don't usually have past forms. Instead, we use them with Perfect infinitives.  
*You should have told me that you can't swim. You might have drowned!*  
Or we use other expressions.  
*I had to study hard in school.*
- Could* is used with a past meaning to talk about a general ability.  
*I could swim when I was six.* (= general ability)  
To talk about ability on one specific occasion, we use *was able to/managed to*.  
*The prisoner was able to/managed to escape by climbing onto the roof of the prison.*

#### Use

- Modal verbs express our attitudes, opinions, and judgments of events. Compare:  
"Who's that knocking on the door?"  
"It's John." (This is a fact.)  
"Who's that knocking on the door?"  
"It could/may/might/must/should/can't/I'll be John." (These all express our attitude or opinion.)
- Each modal verb has at least two meanings. One use of all of them is to express possibility or probability. (See Units 5 and 11.)  
*I must mail this package!* (= obligation)  
*You must be tired!* (= deduction, probability)  
*Could you help me?* (= request)  
*We could go to Thailand for our vacation.* (= possibility)  
*You may go home now.* (= permission)  
"Where's Anna?" "I'm not sure. She may be at work." (= possibility)



#### 4.4 Obligation: *should*, *ought to*, and *must*

*Should*, *ought to*, and *must* are modal verbs. See 4.3 on page 133 for form.

##### Use

- 1 *Should* and *ought to* express mild obligation, suggestions, or advice. They express what, in the speaker's opinion, is the right or best thing to do. We often use them with *I think/don't think ...*  
*You're always asking me for money. I think you **should** spend less.*  
*You **shouldn't** sit so close to the television! It's bad for your eyes.*  
*You **ought to** be more careful with your money.*
- 2 We often use *Do you think ...?* in the question.  
*Do you think I should see a doctor?*  
*What **do you think** I should wear to the party?*
- 3 *Must*, like *have to*, expresses strong obligation. *Must* can express an obligation that involves the speaker's opinion. It is personal.  
*I **must** pass the exam to graduate.*  
*The government **must** do something about the environment.*
- 4 *Must* is also associated with a formal, written style.  
*All visitors **must** show proper ID.*  
*Books **must** be returned on or before the due date.*

##### *have to* and *must*

- 1 *Have to* and *must* are sometimes interchangeable.  
*I **must** be home by midnight.*  
*I **have to** be home by midnight.*
  - 2 There is sometimes a difference in meaning. *Must* usually expresses the feelings and wishes of the speaker.  
*I **must** buy my mother a birthday card.*  
*Tommy, you **must** take good care of your toys.*  
*Have to* often expresses an obligation that comes from somewhere else.  
*You **have to** work hard in this life.*  
*Visitors **have to** report to reception.*  
It is for this reason that you need to be careful when you say *You must ...*, because you can sound authoritarian.  
*Have to* is used more than *must*. If you don't know which to use, use *have to*.
  - 3 Question forms with *have to* are more common.  
*Do I **have to** do what you say?*  
*Must I ...?* is unusual.
- ❗ Remember, *have to* has all verb forms. *Must* can only refer to present or future time when used to express obligation.

##### *don't have to*

- 1 *Don't have to* expresses absence of obligation — you can, but it isn't necessary.  
*Some people iron their socks, but you **don't have to**. I think it's a waste of time.*  
*When you go into a store, you **don't have to** buy something. You can just look.*

#### 4.5 Permission: *can* and *be allowed to*

*Can* is a modal verb. See 4.3 on page 133 for form.

##### Use

The main use of *can* is to express ability.

*I **can** swim.*

*Can* and *be allowed to* express permission. *Can* is more informal and usually spoken.

*You **can** borrow my bike, but you **can't** have the car. I need it.*  
*They **can't** come in here with those muddy shoes!*

*You're **allowed to** get married when you're 18.*  
*Are we **allowed to** use a dictionary for this test?*

#### 4.6 Making requests: *can*, *could*, *will*, and *would*

- 1 There are many ways of making requests in English.  
*Can I speak to you, please?*  
*Could I ask you a question?*  
*Will you help me, please?*  
*Would you pass me the salt?*  
*Would you mind passing me the water?*  
*Do you mind if I open the window?*  
*Would you mind if I closed the window?*  
*Can, could, will, and would* are all modal verbs.
- 2 *Could* is a little more formal; *can* is a little more familiar. *Could I ...?* and *Could you ...?* are very useful because they can be used in many different situations.  
*Could I try on this sweater?*  
*Could you tell me the time?*
- 3 Here are some ways of responding to requests:  
A *Excuse me! Could you help me?*  
B *Sure./Of course./Well, I'm afraid I'm a little busy right now.*  
A *Would you mind if I opened the window?*  
B *No, not at all./No, that's fine./Well, I'm a little cold, actually.*

#### 4.7 Making offers: *will* and *should*

- 1 The contracted form of *will* is used to express an intention, decision, or offer.  
*Come over after work. I'll cook dinner.*  
*"It's Jane's birthday today." "Is it? I'll buy her some flowers."*  
*Dave'll give you a lift.*  
*Give it back or we'll call the police!*
- 2 We use *should* to make an informal suggestion.  
*"What **should** we have for dinner?"*  
*"Where **should** we go?"*



## 5.1 Future Forms

- There is no future tense in English. Instead, English has several forms that can refer to the future.  
*I'll see you later. (will)*  
*We're going to see a movie tonight. (going to)*  
*I'm seeing the doctor tomorrow. (Present Continuous)*  
*If the traffic's bad, I might be late. (might)*  
*Who knows? You may win! (may)*  
*Take an umbrella. It could rain later. (could)*
- The difference between them is not about near or distant future, or certainty. The speaker chooses a future form depending on how he/she sees the future event. Is it a plan, a decision, an intention, an offer, an arrangement, or a prediction?

## 5.2 will/going to and the Present Continuous

### Form

#### Positive and negative

*I'll see you later.*  
*I won't be late.*  
*We're going to stay in a hotel.*  
*We aren't going to rent a beach house.*  
*I'm meeting Jan for lunch.*  
*I'm not seeing her till 2:00.*

### Question

*When will you be back?*  
*Where are you going to stay?*  
*What time are you seeing Jan?*

- ❗ We avoid saying *going to come* or *going to go*.  
*We're coming tomorrow.*  
*When are you going home?*

### Facts and predictions

#### will

- The most common use of *will* is as an auxiliary verb to show future time. It expresses a future fact or prediction. It is called the pure future or the Simple Future.  
*We'll be away for two weeks.*  
*Those flowers won't grow under the tree. It's too dark.*  
*Our love will last forever.*  
*You'll be sick if you eat all those sweets!*
- Will* for a prediction can be based more on an opinion than a fact.  
*I don't think Laura will do very well on her exam. She doesn't do any work.*  
*I am convinced that inflation will fall to three per cent next year.*

#### going to

- Going to* can also express a prediction, especially when it is based on a present fact. There is evidence now that something is certain to happen.  
*She's going to have a baby.*  
*(We can see she's pregnant.)*  
*Our team is going to win the game.*  
*(It's the fourth quarter, and there are only five minutes left to play.)*  
*It isn't going to rain today.*  
*(Look at that beautiful blue sky.)*
- Sometimes there is no difference between *will* and *going to*.  
*This government will ruin the country.*  
*This government is going to ruin the country.*

## Plans, decisions, intentions, and arrangements

### will

*Will* is used to express a decision, intention, or offer made at the moment of speaking.

*I'll have the steak, please.* NOT ~~*I have the steak...*~~  
*Text me. We'll go out for coffee.* NOT ~~*We go...*~~  
*There's the phone! I'll get it.* NOT ~~*I get...*~~

### going to

*Going to* is used to express a future plan, decision, or intention made before the moment of speaking.

*When I grow up, I'm going to be a doctor.*  
*Jane and Peter are going to get married after they graduate.*  
*We're going to paint this room blue.*

## Arrangements

- The Present Continuous can be used to express a future arrangement between people. It usually refers to the near future.  
*We're going out with Jeremy tonight.*  
*I'm having my hair cut tomorrow.*  
*What are we having for lunch?*
- Think of the things you put in your calendar to remind you of what you are doing over the next few days and weeks. These are the kinds of events that are expressed by the Present Continuous for the future. There is often movement or activity.  
*I'm meeting Peter tonight.*  
*The Taylors are coming for dinner.*  
*I'm seeing the doctor in the morning.*
- You can't use the Simple Present for this use.  
*We're going to a party on Saturday night.* NOT ~~*We go...*~~  
*I'm having lunch with Sarah.* NOT ~~*I have...*~~  
*What are you doing this evening?* NOT ~~*What do you do...*~~
- Sometimes there is no difference between an arrangement and an intention.  
*We're going to get married in the spring.*  
*We're getting married in the spring.*

## 5.3 Future possibility: may/might/could

### Form

*May, might, and could* are modal verbs.

### Positive and negative

I	may might could	see you later.	I	may not might not	get the job.
---	-----------------------	----------------	---	----------------------	--------------

### Question

Questions about future possibility are often asked with *Do you think ... will ...?*

*Do you think you'll get the job?*

### Use

- May, might, and could* all express a future possibility.

It	may might could	rain later.
----	-----------------------	-------------

- May* can be more formal.  
*The government may increase income tax.*
- Could* suggests something less definite.  
*I could be a champion if I trained hard.*  
*The house is nice, but it could be beautiful.*



## UNIT 6

### 6.1 Information questions

- 1 What and which can be followed by a noun.

*What color* are your eyes?  
*What size* shoes do you wear?  
*What sort* of music do you like?  
*Which part* of town do you live in?  
*Which way* do we go?  
*Which one* do you want?

We use *which* when there is a limited choice.

*Which one* do you want, the red one or the blue one?  
*Which restaurant* should we go to?

We use *what* when there is (almost) unlimited choice.

*What language* do they speak in Brazil?  
*What car* do you drive?

Sometimes there is no difference.

*What/Which radio stations* do you listen to?  
*What/Which channel* is the game on?

- 2 Whose can be followed by a noun.

*Whose book* is this?  
*Whose* is this book?

- 3 How can be followed by an adjective or an adverb.

*How tall* are you?  
*How big* is the memory?  
*How far* is it to the station?  
*How often* do you go to the movies?  
*How long* does it take you to get ready?

- 4 How can be followed by *much* or *many*.

*How many* rooms are there?  
*How much* money do you have?

### 6.2 What ... like? How ...?

- 1 What ... like? asks about the permanent nature of people and things. It asks for a general description.

*What's Mexican food like?* Really tasty.  
*What's Pete like?* He's a great guy.

- 2 How ...? asks about the present condition of something. This condition can change.

*How's work these days?* It's better than last year.  
*How was the traffic this morning?* It was worse than usual.

To ask about the weather, we can use both questions.

How's the weather | where you are?  
What's the weather like

- 3 How ...? asks about people's health and happiness.

*How's Peter?* He's fine.

- 4 How ...? asks about people's reactions and feelings.

*How's your meal?*  
*How's your new job?*

### 6.3 Relative clauses

- 1 Relative clauses identify which person or thing we are talking about. They make it possible to give more information about the person or thing.

*The boy went to the beach.* (Which boy?)  
*The boy who lives next door* went to the beach.  
*The book is very good.* (Which book?)  
*The book that I bought yesterday* is very good.  
*There is a photo of the hotel.* (Which hotel?)  
*There is a photo of the hotel where we stayed.*

- 2 We use *who/that* to refer to people, and *which/that* to refer to things.

*This book is about a woman who marries a billionaire.*  
*What was the name of the horse that won the race?*

- 3 When *who* or *that* is the object of a relative clause, it can be left out.

*The person you need to talk to* is on vacation.  
*The movie I watched last night* was very good.  
But when *who* or *that* is the subject of a relative clause it must be included.  
*I like people who are kind and considerate.*  
*I want a computer that's easy to use.*

- 4 Which can be used to refer to the whole previous sentence or idea.

*I passed my driving test on the first attempt, which was a surprise.*  
*Jane can't come to the party, which is a shame.*

- 5 We use *whose* to refer to someone's possessions.

*That's the man whose wife won the lottery.*  
*That's the woman whose dog ran away.*

- 6 We can use *where* to refer to places.

*The hotel where we stayed* was right on the beach.  
*We went back to the place where we first met.*

### 6.4 Participles

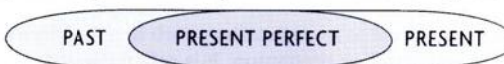
Participles after a noun define and identify in the same way as relative clauses.

*That woman driving the red Porsche* is my aunt.  
*The men seen outside* were probably the thieves.

## UNIT 7

### 7.1 The Present Perfect

- 1 The same form (*have* + past participle) exists in many languages, but the uses in English are different. In English, the Present Perfect links past and present. It expresses the effect of the past on the present.



- 2 Present Perfect means "completed before now." The Present Perfect does not express when an action happened. If we say the exact time, we use the Simple Past.

*In my life, I have traveled* to all seven continents.  
*I traveled* around Africa in 2003.

### 7.2 Present Perfect

#### Form

**has/have + past participle**

*I've lived* in Seoul.  
*She's lived* in New York.  
*He hasn't lived* here long.  
*They haven't bought* their apartment.  
*How long have they known* Peter?  
*How long has she been married?*

#### Short answer

Have you always lived in Peru?

Yes, I have./No, I haven't.



## Use

There are three main uses of the Present Perfect.

### 1 Unfinished past

The Present Perfect expresses an action that began in the past and still continues.

*We've lived in the same house for 25 years.*

*How long have you known each other?*

*They've been married for 20 years.*

- ❗ Be careful! Many languages express this idea with a present tense, but in English this is wrong.

*Jan has been a nurse for ten years.* NOT *Jan is a nurse for ten years.*

#### Time expressions

Notice the time expressions that are common with this use.

for	two years	since	1970
	a month		August
	a few minutes		8:00
	half an hour		I was a child
	ages		the summer

We use *for* with a period of time and *since* with a point in time.

### 2 Experience

The Present Perfect expresses an experience that happened at some time in one's life. The action is finished, but the effects of the action are still felt.

*I've been to the United States.* (I still remember.)

*Have you ever had an operation?* (at any time in your life)

*How many times has he been married?* (in his life)

Exactly *when* the action happened is not important. Questions and answers about definite times are expressed in the Simple Past.

*When did you go to the United States?*

*I broke my leg once.*

#### Time expressions

The adverbs *ever*, *never*, and *before* are common with this use.

*Have you ever been to Australia?*

*I've never tried bungee jumping.*

*I haven't tried sushi before.*

### 3 Present result

The Present Perfect expresses a past action that has a present result. The action is usually in the recent past.

*The taxi hasn't arrived yet.* (We're still waiting for it.)

*What have you done to your lip?* (It's bleeding.)

We often announce news in the Present Perfect.

*Have you heard? The Prime Minister has resigned.*

*Susan's had her baby!*

Details will be in the Simple Past.

*She resigned because she lost a vote of no confidence.*

*It's a boy. He weighed seven pounds.*

#### Time expressions

The adverbs *yet*, *already*, and *just* are common with this use.

*I haven't done my homework yet.* (negative)

*Has the mail carrier come yet?* (question)

*I've already done my homework.*

*She's just had some good news.*

- ❗ Be careful with *been* and *gone*.

*He's been to the United States.* (experience — he isn't there now)

*She's gone to the United States.* (present result — she's there now)

## 7.3 Present Perfect or Simple Past?

- 1 The Present Perfect can express unfinished actions. The Simple Past expresses completed actions.

#### Present Perfect

*I've lived in Texas for six years.*

(I still live there.)

*I've written several books.*

(I can still write some more.)

#### Simple Past

*I lived in Texas for six years.*

(Now I live somewhere else.)

*Shakespeare wrote 30 plays.*

(He can't write any more.)

- 2 The Present Perfect refers to indefinite time. The Simple Past refers to definite time. Notice the time expressions used with the two tenses.

#### Present Perfect – indefinite

I've done it | for a long time.  
| since July.  
| before.  
| recently.

I've already done it.

I haven't done it yet.

#### Simple Past – definite

I did it | yesterday.  
| last week.  
| two days ago.  
| at 8:00.  
| in 1997.  
| when I was young.  
| for a long time.

- ❗ Be careful with *this morning/afternoon*, etc.

*Have you seen Amy this morning?* (It's still morning.)

*Did you see Amy this morning?* (It's the afternoon or evening.)

## 7.4 Present Perfect Simple passive

### Form

*has/have been + past participle*

It	has been	sold.
They	have been	

### Use

The uses are the same in the passive as in the active.

*Two million cars have been produced so far this year.* (unfinished past)

*Has she ever been fired?* (past experience)

*"Have you heard? Two hundred homes have been washed away by a tidal wave!"* (present importance)

## 7.5 Present Perfect Continuous

### Form

*has/have + been + -ing*

*She's been studying for three years.*

*They haven't been working here long.*

*How long have they been living there?*

### Use

The Present Perfect Continuous expresses:

- 1 an activity that began in the past and is continuing now.

*I've been studying English for three years.*

*How long have you been working here?*

Sometimes there is no difference between the simple and the continuous.

*I've played the piano since I was a boy.*

*I've been playing the piano since I was a boy.*

The continuous can express a temporary activity, while the simple expresses a permanent state.

*I've been living in this house for the past few months.* (temporary)

*I've lived here all my life.* (permanent)

- ❗ Remember: Stative verbs are rarely used in the continuous (see 2.4 page 130).

*I've had this book for ages.*

*I've always loved sunny days.*



- 2 a past activity that has caused a present result.  
*I've been working all day.* (I'm tired now.)  
*Have you been crying?* (Your eyes are red.)  
*Roger's been cutting the grass.* (I can smell it.)
- The past activity might be finished or it might not. The context usually makes this clear.  
*Look out the window! It's been snowing!*  
 (It has stopped snowing now.)  
*I've been writing this book for two years.* (It still isn't finished.)  
*I'm covered in paint because I've been decorating the bathroom.*  
 (It might be finished or it might not. We don't know.)

## 7.6 Present Perfect Simple or Continuous?

- 1 The simple expresses a completed action.  
*I've painted the kitchen, and now I'm doing the bathroom.*  
 The continuous expresses an activity over a period of time.  
*I have paint in my hair because I've been decorating.*
- We use the simple if the sentence has a number or quantity, because the simple expresses completion. The continuous isn't possible.  
*I've been reading all day. I've read ten chapters.*  
*She's been eating ever since she arrived. She's eaten ten cookies already.*
- 2 Some verbs have the idea of a long time, for example, *wait, work, play, try, learn, rain*. These verbs are often found in the continuous.  
*I've cut my finger.* (One short action.)  
*I've been cutting firewood.* (Perhaps over several hours.)
- Some verbs don't have the idea of a long time, for example, *find, start, buy, die, lose, break, stop*. These verbs are more often found in the simple.  
*I've lost my passport.*  
*Have you started your holiday shopping yet?*

## UNIT 8

### Verb patterns

#### The infinitive

- 1 The infinitive is used after some verbs.  
*We've decided to move abroad.*  
*I want to go home.*  
*I'm trying to call Pete.*  
*She'd love to meet you.*
- 2 Some verbs are followed by a person + the infinitive.  
*They asked me to help them.*  
*I want you to try harder.*  
*He told me to apply for the job.*
- 3 *Make* and *let* are followed by a person + the infinitive without *to*.  
*She'll make you feel welcome.*  
*I'll let you know when I'm coming.*
- 4 The infinitive is used after some adjectives.  
*It's impossible to save money.*  
*It's great to see you.*  
*Pleased to meet you.*  
*It was good to hear your news.*

#### The -ing form

- 1 The -ing form is used after some verbs.  
*I enjoy reading history books.*  
*He's finished washing the car.*  
*I don't mind helping you.*  
*We like walking.*  
*He goes fishing on weekends.*

- 2 Some verbs are followed by an object + -ing.  
*I hate people telling me what to do.*  
*You can't stop me doing what I want.*  
*I can hear someone calling.*
- 3 The -ing form is used after prepositions.  
*I'm good at finding things.*  
*He's afraid of being mugged.*  
*We're thinking of going to Sweden.*  
*I'm looking forward to meeting you.*

### Verb patterns page 154

## UNIT 9

### 9.1 Conditionals

There are many different ways of making sentences with *if*. It is important to understand the difference between sentences that express:

- possible conditions = first conditional
- improbable conditions = second conditional
- impossible conditions = third conditional
- no condition = zero conditional

#### Possible conditions

*If I see Dave, I'll tell him to call you.*  
 This is a sentence about reality.  
*If I see Dave ...* = a real possibility  
*... I'll tell him to call you.* = the result of a possible situation

#### Improbable conditions

*If I had the money, I'd buy a Mercedes.*  
 This is a sentence that is contrary to reality.  
*If I had the money ...* = not impossible. The reality is I don't have the money.  
*... I'd buy a Mercedes.* = the result of an improbable situation

#### Impossible conditions

*If I'd known you were coming, I'd have cooked you a meal.*  
 This is a sentence about an impossible situation. It didn't happen, and now it's too late to change the result.  
*If I had known ...* = impossible, because I didn't know.  
*I'd have cooked ...* = the result of an impossible situation.

#### No conditions

*If I get a headache, I take an aspirin.*  
*If metal is heated, it expands.*  
 These are sentences that are always true. They refer to "all time," and are called zero conditionals. *If* means *when* or *whenever*.

### 9.2 Second conditional: improbable conditions

#### Form

**if + Simple Past, would + verb**

#### Positive

*If I won some money, I'd go around the world.*  
*My father would kill me if he could see me now.*

#### Negative

*I'd give up my job if I didn't like it.*  
*If I saw a ghost, I wouldn't talk to it.*

#### Question

*What would you do if you saw someone shoplifting?*  
*If you needed help, who would you ask?*



❗ Was can change to were in the condition clause.

If I	were rich,	I	wouldn't have to work.
If he		he	

Other modal verbs are possible in the result clause.

I **could** buy some new clothes if I had some money.

If I saved a little every week, I **might** be able to buy a car.

## Use

- We use the second conditional to express an unreal situation and its probable result. The situation or condition is improbable, impossible, imaginary, or contrary to known facts.

If I **were** the president of my country, I'd **increase** taxes. (But it's not very likely that I will ever be the president.)

If my mother **was** still alive, she'd **be** very proud. (But she's dead.)

If Ted **needed** money, I'd **lend** it to him. (But he doesn't need it.)

- If I were you, I'd ... is used to give advice.

If I **were** you, I'd apologize to her.

I'd take it easy for a while if I **were** you.

- When the condition is understood, it is common to find the result clause on its own.

What would you do if you had lots of money?

I'd travel.

I'd give it all away.

I'd buy my mom and dad a nice house. They'd love that!

You'd give away your last penny!

- Would can express preference.

I'd love a cup of coffee.

Where **would** you like to sit?

I'd rather have coffee, please.

I'd rather not tell you, if that's all right.

What **would** you rather do, stay in or go out?

- Would can express a request.

**Would** you open the door for me?

**Would** you mind lending me a hand?

## 9.3 First or second conditional?

Both conditionals refer to the present and future. The difference is about probability, not time. It is usually clear which conditional to use. First conditional sentences are real and possible. Second conditional sentences express situations that will probably never happen.

If I **lose** my job, I'll ... (My company is doing badly. There is a strong possibility of being fired.)

If I **lost** my job, I'd ... (I probably won't lose my job. I'm just speculating.)

If there **is** a nuclear war, we'll all ... (Said by a pessimist.)

If there **was** a nuclear war, we'd ... (But I don't think it will happen.)

## 9.4 Third conditional: impossible conditions

### Form

if + Past Perfect, **would** + have + past participle

### Positive

If I'd (had) **worked** harder, I'd (would) **have made** more money.

They'd (would) **have been** here hours ago if they'd (had) **followed** my directions.

### Negative

If I **hadn't seen** it with my own eyes, I **wouldn't have believed** it.

If you'd **listened** to me, you **wouldn't have gotten** lost.

### Question

What **would** you **have done** if you'd **been** me?

If the hotel **had been** full, where **would** you **have stayed**?

## Use

We use the third conditional to express an impossible situation in the past and its probable result. It is too late! These things didn't happen.

If she'd **known** he was cruel, she **wouldn't have married** him.

My parents **wouldn't have met** if they **hadn't** studied at Oxford University.

## 9.5 might/could have done

### Use

Might have done and could have done express possibilities in the past that didn't happen.

Thank goodness you went to the hospital. You **might have died**.

She **could have married** anyone she wanted.

They are found in the result clauses of third conditional sentences.

If I'd told him I had no money, he **might have given** me some.

If I'd really wanted, I **could have been** a professional golfer.

Might have done and could have done can express criticism.

You **might have told** me it was her birthday!

She **could have helped** clean the apartment instead of going out!

## 9.6 should have done

### Use

Should have done expresses advice for a past situation, but the advice is too late!

You **should have apologized**. He wouldn't have been so angry.

You **shouldn't have said** she looked old. She really didn't like it.

Should have done can express criticism.

You **should have asked** me before you borrowed my car.

## UNIT 10

### 10.1 Noun Phrases

A noun phrase is a group of words before and/or after a noun.

book = **noun**

a book

my book

this book

some books

the book that I was reading

my favorite book

} = **noun phrases**

Grammatically speaking, these words are:

**articles** – the, a/an

**possessives** – my, your, his, her ...

**demonstratives** – this, that, these, those

**determiners** – some, any, all, each, every ...

**relative pronouns** – who, that, which ...

**compound nouns** – notebook, address book ...

### 10.2 Articles

#### Indefinite articles

The indefinite articles a/an are used:

- to say what something or somebody is.

This is **a** book.

I'm **an** optimist.

Jane's **a** teacher.

He's **an** idiot.

- to refer to a thing or a person for the first time.

She lives in **a** farmhouse.

Can you lend me **a** pen?

He's going out with **a** model.

Would you like **a** cookie?

I bought **a** pair of shoes today.



## Definite article

The definite article *the* is used:

- 1 to refer to a person or a thing known to the speaker and the listener.  
*Do you have **the** car keys?*  
*The children are in **the** yard.*
- 2 to refer to a person or a thing for the second time.  
*I got **a** book and **a** computer for my birthday. **The** book is about modern art. I haven't unpacked **the** computer yet.*
- 3 when it is clear which one(s) we mean.  
*I'm going to **the** mall. Do you want anything?*  
*Dave's in **the** kitchen.*  
*Did you enjoy **the** party?*  
*What's **the** score?*  
*Have you heard **the** news?*  
*We went to **the** same school.*  
*I'll meet you on **the** corner.*
- 4 to refer to the only one there is.  
***The** sky is very gray today.*  
***The** earth is older than we think.*  
***The** government in this country is awful.*  
***The** French like bicycle races.*
- 5 to refer to things in our physical environment that we all know.  
*I love walking in **the** mountains.*  
*People always talk about **the** weather.*  
*We can see **the** ocean from our house.*  
*We're going to **the** movies tonight.*
- 6 with superlatives.  
*You're **the** best teacher.*  
*He was **the** first boy I met.*
- 7 with some place names.  
***the** United States of America*  
***the** Eiffel Tower*  
***the** Pyramids*  
***the** Great Wall of China*  
***the** Empire State Building*

## Zero article

No article (–) is used:

- 1 to refer to things or people in general.  
*I like (–) cheese.*  
*(–) Doctors earn more than (–) teachers.*  
*I'm afraid of (–) dogs.*  
*(–) English is spoken all over the world.*  
*(–) Life is hard.*
- 2 in some common expressions.  
**places**  
*He's at (–) work. She's at (–) home in (–) bed.*  
*He's at (–) school. She's in (–) college.*  
**travel**  
*I travel by (–) car/bus/train ...*  
**meals**  
*We had (–) lunch at 12:00.*  
*What do you want for (–) dinner?*  
**time**  
*I'll do it (–) next week.*  
*I saw her (–) last year.*  
**academic subjects**  
*I'm no good at (–) math.*  
**games**  
*I like (–) chess.*

- 3 in some place names.  
*I've traveled a lot in (–) Europe and (–) South America.*  
*I live on (–) Station Road.*  
*She studied at (–) Oxford University.*  
*We walked in (–) Central Park.*  
*We had lunch in (–) Carluccio's Restaurant.*  
*The plane left from (–) LaGuardia Airport.*  
*I'll meet you at (–) Penn Station.*  
*I climbed (–) Mount Everest.*

## 10.3 Possessives

### Possessive adjectives and pronouns

- 1 Possessive adjectives are used with a noun.  
*This is **my** brother.*  
*You should come and see **our** new house.*  
***Their** teacher is new.*
- 2 The possessive pronouns are:  
**mine yours his hers ours theirs**  
They are used on their own.  
*Don't touch that! It's **mine**.*  
*Take it. It's **yours**.*  
*Can you bring those books? They're **ours**.*

### Apostrophe 's and s'

- 1 's is used with singular nouns.  
*Lorna's dog*  
*Harry's friend*  
*the boy's father (= one boy)*  
*"Whose is this?" "It's **my** brother's."*  
*I have a week's vacation.*
- 2 s' is used with regular plural nouns.  
*my parents' house*  
*the boys' father (= more than one boy)*  
For irregular plurals we use 's.  
*the children's room*  
Notice we use 's with two people.  
*We were at Alan and Carol's house last night.*

## 10.4 all and every

### all

All can be used in different ways:

- 1 all + noun  
***All** men are born equal.*  
*I like **all** kinds of music.*  
*I invited **all** the students in my class.*  
*I've loved the Beatles **all** my life.*
- 2 all + of + noun  
*I invited **all of** the students in my class.*  
*"How much did you eat?" "**All of** it."*  
*"Who did she invite?" "**All of** us."*
- 3 all + adjective/adverb/preposition  
*I'm **all** wet.*  
*She lives **all** alone.*  
*Tell me **all** about your vacation.*
- 4 pronoun + all  
*The sweets are for everyone. Don't eat **them** **all**.*  
*She loves **us** **all**.*



## 5 all + verb

We **all support** the team.  
They have **all been** to college.  
My friends **all love** you.

## every

Every is used with a singular noun.

**Every student** in the class passed the exam.  
I've been to **every country** in Asia.

## all and every

- 1 All is not usually used to mean everybody/everything.  
*All the people came to the party.* NOT *All came...*  
*Everybody came to the party.*  
*She lost all her possessions in the fire.* NOT *She lost all in...*  
*She lost everything in the fire.*
- 2 All can mean everything, but only in relative clauses.  
*All I want for breakfast is coffee.*  
*That's all I need.*  
*I've told you all I know.*  
*Love is all you need.*

## 10.5 themselves and each other

### Reflexive pronouns

- 1 Reflexive pronouns are:

myself	yourself	himself	herself
itself	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

- 2 We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object are the same.  
*I cut myself shaving.*  
*You could hurt yourself.*  
*I'm going to buy myself something nice.*  
*Make yourselves at home.*  
*I hope you're enjoying yourself.*
- 3 They are used after prepositions.  
*You should be ashamed of yourself.*  
*She looked at herself in the mirror.*  
*I live by myself.*  
*Selfish people only think of themselves.*  
*I can look after myself.*
- 4 We use reflexive pronouns for emphasis.  
*Do you like the cake? I made it myself.*  
*My daughter can dress herself now.*  
*The manager himself interviewed me.*

### each other

Each other expresses the idea of one to another.  
*They looked at each other.*  
*We send each other birthday cards.*  
*They hate each other.*  
*We've known each other since childhood.*

## UNIT 11

### Modal Verbs of Probability

Modal auxiliary verbs can express ability, obligation, permission, and requests. They can also express probability, or how certain a situation is. There is an introduction to modal auxiliary verbs on page 133.

### 11.1 Probability in the present and future

- 1 *Must* and *can't* express the logical conclusion of a situation.  
*must* = logically probable  
*can't* = logically improbable  
We don't have all the facts, so we are not absolutely sure, but we are pretty certain.  
*He must be exhausted. He hasn't slept for 24 hours!*  
*Sue can't have a ten-year-old daughter! She's only 24!*  
*He's in great shape, even though he must be at least 60!*  
*A walk in this weather! You must be joking!*  
*Aren't they answering? They must be in bed. They can't be out this late!*
- 2 *May/might/could* express probability in the present or future.  
*May/might + not* is the negative. *Couldn't* is rare in this use.  
*He might be lost.*  
*They may be stuck in traffic.*  
*You could win the lottery this week. Who knows?*  
*Dave and Beth aren't at home. They could be at the concert, I suppose.*  
*We may go to Greece for our vacation. We haven't decided yet.*  
*Take your umbrella. It might rain later.*  
*I might not be able to come tonight. I might have to work late.*  
*They may not know where we are.*
- 3 The continuous infinitive is formed with *be + -ing*.  
*You must be joking!*  
*They can't still be eating!*  
*Peter might be working late.*  
*They may be coming on a later train.*  
*I could be sitting on a beach right now.*

### 11.2 Asking about possibilities

Question forms with modal verbs of probability are unusual. To ask about possibility/probability we usually use *Do you think ...?*  
*"Do you think she's married?"*  
*"She can't be."*  
*"Where do you think he's from?"*  
*"He might be Brazilian."*  
*"Do you think they've arrived yet?"*  
*"They may have. Or they might have gotten stuck in the traffic."*

### 11.3 Probability in the past

- 1 The perfect infinitive is formed with *have + past participle*.  
*He must have caught a later train.*  
*They might have lost our phone number.*
- 2 These forms express degrees of probability in the past.  
*He must have been exhausted.*  
*She couldn't have told him about us yet.*  
*The package may have gotten lost in the mail.*  
*He might have changed his mind.*  
*They could have moved.*
- 3 The continuous infinitive is formed with *have + been + -ing*.  
*She must have been joking.*  
*They couldn't have been trying very hard.*  
*He could have been lying to you.*



## 12.1 Reported speech and thought

- It is usual for the verb in the reported clause to move "one tense back" if the reporting verb is in the past tense (e.g. *said*, *told*).  
 Present → Past  
 Present Perfect → Past Perfect  
 Past → Past Perfect  
*will* → *would*  
*"I'm going."* He said he **was going**.  
*"She's passed her test."* He told me she **had passed** her test.  
*"My father died when I was six."* She said her father **had died** when she was six.  
*"I'll see you later."* She said she'd see me later.  
 The verb also moves "one tense back" when we are reporting thoughts and feelings.  
*I thought she was married, but she isn't.*  
*I didn't know he was a teacher. I thought he worked in a bank.*  
*I forgot you were coming. Never mind. Come in.*  
*I didn't realize you were here.*  
*I hoped you would call.*
- There is no tense change if ...  
 ... the reporting verb is in the present tense (*says*).  
*"The train will be late."* He says the train **will be** late.  
*"I come from Korea."* She says she **comes** from Korea.  
 ... the reported speech is about something that is still true.  
*"Rain forests are being destroyed."*  
 She told him that rain forests **are being destroyed**.  
*"I hate football."*  
 I told him I **hate** football.
- Some modal verbs change.  
*can* → *could*  
*will* → *would*  
*may* → *might*  
*"She can type well."* He told me she **could** type well.  
*"I'll help you."* She said she'd help me.  
*"I may come."* She said she **might** come.  
 Other modal verbs don't change.  
*"You should go to bed."* He told me I **should** go to bed.  
*"It might rain."* She said she thought it **might** rain.  
 Must stays as *must*, or changes to *had to*.  
*"I must go!"* He said he **must/had to** go.

## 12.2 Reporting verbs

- We rarely use *say* with an indirect object.  
*She said she was going.* NOT *She said to me...*
- Tell* is always used with an indirect object in reported speech.

She told	me the doctor us her husband	the news.
----------	---------------------------------------	-----------

- We can use *that* after *say* and *tell*.  
*He told her (that) he would be home late.*  
*She said (that) sales were down from last year.*

- Many verbs are more descriptive than *say* and *tell*, for example:

explain	promise	invite	insist	admit
complain	warn	offer	refuse	

Sometimes we report the idea, rather than the actual words.  
*"I'll lend you some money."* He offered to lend me some money.  
*"I won't help you."* She refused to help me.

- There are different verb patterns.

verb + *sb* + infinitive  
*He told me to go away.*  
*They asked me to teach them English.*  
*I invited her to come.*  
*We encouraged him to apply for the job.*  
*She reminded me to mail her package.*

verb + infinitive  
*She promised to help.*  
*They offered to lend me some money.*

verb + *that* + clause  
*He explained that he would be home late.*  
*She complained that she never had any free time.*  
*They admitted that sales were down that year.*  
*I agreed that it would be best to stop trying.*

- We use *tell* for reported statements and reported commands, but the form is different.

### Reported statements

*He told me that he was going.*  
*She told them what had been happening.*

### Reported commands

*He told me to keep still.*  
*The police told people to move on.*

- We use *ask* for reported commands and reported questions, but the form is different.

### Reported commands

*He asked me to open my suitcase.*  
*She asked me to leave.*

### Reported questions

*He asked me what I did for a living.*  
*She asked me why I had come.*

- For negative commands, use *not* before *to*.  
*He told me not to tell anyone.*  
*The police warned people not to go out.*

## 12.3 Reported questions

- The word order in questions is different in reported speech. There is no inversion of subject and auxiliary verb and there is no *do/does/did*.  
*"Why have you come here?"* I asked her **why she had come** here.  
*"What time is it?"* He wants to know **what time it is**.  
*"Where do you live?"* She asked me **where I lived**.
- If there is no question word (*What*, *Who*, *Why*, *Where*, ...), use *if* or *whether*.  

She wants to know	if	she should wear a dress.
	whether	
- The rules are the same when we report questions that are thoughts.  
*I didn't know what was happening.*  
*I wondered where she'd bought her dress.*  
*We couldn't understand what they were saying.*



# Extra Materials

## UNIT 1 p. 9

### EVERYDAY ENGLISH

#### Role play

4 Work with a partner. Act out the situations.

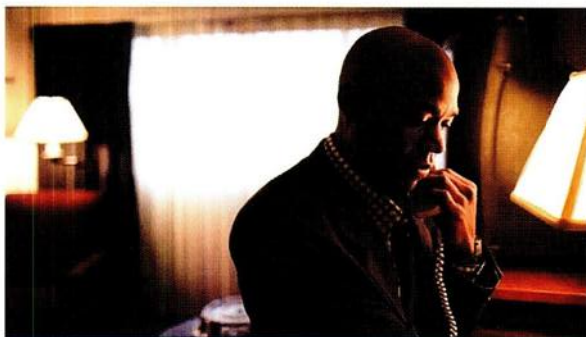
- 1 You are with an American friend when you meet another friend. Introduce them to each other.



- 2 You are in a coffee shop. You asked for a latte and a muffin, but the waiter has brought you a cappuccino and a piece of lemon pie.



- 3 You are in a hotel. You call reception because the television in your room isn't working.



- 4 You are at the airport and you can't find the check-in desk for your flight to Bangkok. Ask at the information desk.



- 5 You are cooking for some friends. They're all hanging out in the living room and chatting. You want them to come to the table and help themselves to the food.



CDI 13 Listen and compare.

## UNIT 2 p. 13

- 4 Work in small groups. Look at the chart. Compare the correct answers with your ideas.

Which salaries do you think are unfair? Are any surprising?

#### Who earns how much in the U.S.?

Doctor	\$180,000
Basketball player	\$1 million
CEO	\$750,000
Nurse	\$70,000
Supermarket cashier	\$20,000
Pilot	\$115,000
Police officer	\$30,000
Teacher	\$50,000
Lawyer	\$200,000
Farmer	\$60,000





## READING – A Shakespearean tragedy

5 Read Shakespeare's lines from *Romeo and Juliet* in more modern English.

# Romeo AND Juliet

- 1 **Tybalt** Peace? I hate the word peace like I hate hell, all Montagues, and you.
- 2 **Romeo** Did my heart ever love before now? Because I never saw true beauty before tonight.  
**Juliet** The only man I love is the son of the only man I hate!
- 3 **Juliet** Oh, Romeo, Romeo, why are you a Montague? Forget your father and give up your name. ... What's a Montague anyway? ... A rose would smell just as sweet if it was called any other name.
- 4 **Romeo** I have fallen in love with the beautiful daughter of rich Capulet.  
**Friar Laurence** This marriage may be lucky enough to turn the hatred between your families into pure love.
- 5 **Romeo** Now, Tybalt, ... Mercutio's soul is above our heads. Either you, or I, or both of us have to join him.  
**Tybalt** You, wretched boy, are going with him now.
- 6 **Friar Laurence** Take this small bottle and drink the liquid. No pulse or breath will show you are alive for forty-two hours.  
**Juliet** Give it to me! Love will give me strength.
- 7 **Juliet** Romeo, Romeo, Romeo! Here's a drink. I drink to you.  
**Nurse** Oh, hateful day! There has never been so black a day as today. Oh, painful day!
- 8 **Romeo** Eyes, look for the last time! Arms, make your last embrace! ... Here's to my love! Oh, honest pharmacist! Your drugs work quickly. So I die with a kiss.
- 9 **Juliet** What's this here? A cup, closed in my true love's hand? Poison, I see ... I will kiss your lips. Some poison is still on your lips. Your lips are warm. Oh, happy dagger! Let me die!
- 10 **Prince** There never was a more tragic story than the story of Juliet and her Romeo.





## MODERN DILEMMAS

### Readers ask, readers reply

2 Read the readers' questions and the complete replies.

#### A reader asks

How should I deal with my difficult and disagreeable neighbor? He is in the habit of dumping his garden waste along the public sidewalk between our two houses.

*Jim Thomas, Boston*

#### d A reader replies

You have to act with self-control in a situation like this. I don't think you should confront him. Arguments between neighbors can get out of hand. If I were you, I'd quietly clean up his mess and keep the peace.

#### A reader asks

2 Is it OK to greet people you don't know with a "How are you?" In California (my home) it's considered friendly, but here in New York some people react with a cold look. Should I be less friendly in my greetings?

*Erica Fleckberg, New York*

#### C A reader replies

You don't have to be like New Yorkers just because you're in New York. Be yourself. Be warm. Be Californian.

#### A reader asks

3 I can pick up my neighbor's Wi-Fi network, and it's not secured. I want to use it so I don't have to pay for it. Is it right for me to use my neighbor's Wi-Fi?

*Richard Dalton, Princeton*

#### g A reader replies

You can stop others from accessing your wireless network if you use a password. You must tell your neighbor this. It's the only right thing to do.

#### A reader asks

4 My stepfather's driver's license was suspended for six months for speeding, but we have learned that he still drives over the speed limit all the time. Should we keep quiet or inform the police?

*Stella Milne, Hartford*

#### a A reader replies

Your stepfather is not allowed to drive by law. He is a danger to himself and everyone else on the road. You must call "Crimestoppers" and report him. You don't have to give your name.

#### A reader asks

5 I am a medical student. After I graduate in June, I have one month before my first house job starts. My fiancée says that I am not allowed to claim unemployment benefits for this month. I disagree, because I'll be unemployed. The benefits are for all those who are out of work isn't it? What do you think?

*J. R. Collin, Pittsburgh*

#### b A reader replies

Your fiancée's right. You aren't allowed to claim unemployment benefits, but I think you are allowed other benefits. You should check online. Perhaps you should claim these benefits and give the money to charity, if you don't need it.

#### A reader asks

6 Is it wrong for me to download an e-book from the Internet without paying for it? I already have the book, but I want to download the electronic version to my e-reader so I can take it on my trip. I don't want to pay for it twice!

*Pete Rodriguez, Newark*

#### e A reader replies

It's not only wrong, it's illegal. You are not allowed to do this. You should buy the e-book.

#### A reader asks

7 Is it ever permissible to lie to children? I lied to my two-year-old granddaughter to remove her from a fairground ride without a tantrum. I said: "You must get off now because the man is going to get his dinner." She got down without a fuss. But I'm worried that if she remembers this, she won't trust me in the future.

*Barbara Hope, Philadelphia*

#### f A reader replies

Not only should you lie sometimes, you often have to. Children should be treated with respect, but you don't have to explain everything. Also, it's a good way to learn that we often have to tell "white lies," such as when asked, "What do you think of my new boyfriend?" "Um ... very nice."





## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### Rules for life

- 4 Work with a partner. Read the song and discuss which word fits best in each of the blanks.

### I Believe

I believe in \_\_\_\_\_  
And beauty from within  
I believe in saying \_\_\_\_\_  
And fresh \_\_\_\_\_ on the skin  
I believe in healthy \_\_\_\_\_  
As tonic for the feet  
I believe in serious talks  
And \_\_\_\_\_ to eat

#### Chorus

**That's what I believe**  
**Surprising as it seems**  
**I believe that happiness**  
**Is well within our dreams**

I believe in being \_\_\_\_\_  
In spite of what you think  
I believe in good \_\_\_\_\_  
And not too much to \_\_\_\_\_  
I believe in being \_\_\_\_\_  
In everything you try to \_\_\_\_\_  
I believe in me and you  
I hope you share my \_\_\_\_\_

#### Chorus

I believe in being \_\_\_\_\_  
Especially when it's hard  
I believe an open \_\_\_\_\_  
Can show a fine regard  
I believe that \_\_\_\_\_ make  
A person good to know  
I believe in birthday \_\_\_\_\_  
And going \_\_\_\_\_

#### Chorus

That's what I believe  
Although it seems naïve  
I believe that \_\_\_\_\_  
Are there to be achieved  
That's what I believe ...

*\*bottle banks / Citibank*

*hello / thanks*

*hair / air*

*walks / thoughts*

*just enough / a lot*

*nice / polite*

*manners / advice*

*eat / drink*

*faithful / true*

*do / say*

*point of view / opinion*

*generous / kind*

*mind / door*

*manners / kindness*

*presents / cake*

*in the snow / with the flow*

*happiness / peace and love*

*\*Recycling bin*

CD1 45 Listen and check.

## WRITING – Telling a story

- 7 Compare your stories with the story below.

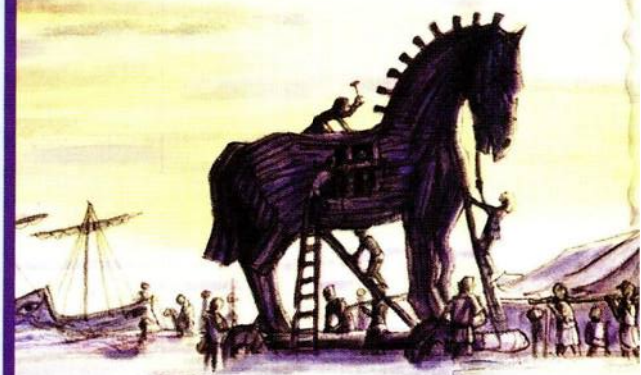
### THE TROJAN HORSE

The Greeks and the Trojans had been at war for ten years.

The exhausted Greek army was camped outside the city of Troy when the Greek king Odysseus suddenly had a good idea. He knew that horses were sacred animals to the Trojans, so he decided to build a huge, hollow, wooden horse on wheels, a horse big enough for some of his soldiers to hide inside.

The horse was properly built and some of the soldiers climbed inside. The others set fire to the camp and pretended they were going to sail back home to Greece, defeated. In fact they hid nearby.

The Trojans, delighted that the Greeks had left, immediately came out of the city gates and found the horse. They were very curious indeed. As part of the plan, the Greeks had left behind one soldier hiding near the horse. The Trojans soon found him and asked him about the horse. He said it was an offering to the goddess Athena.

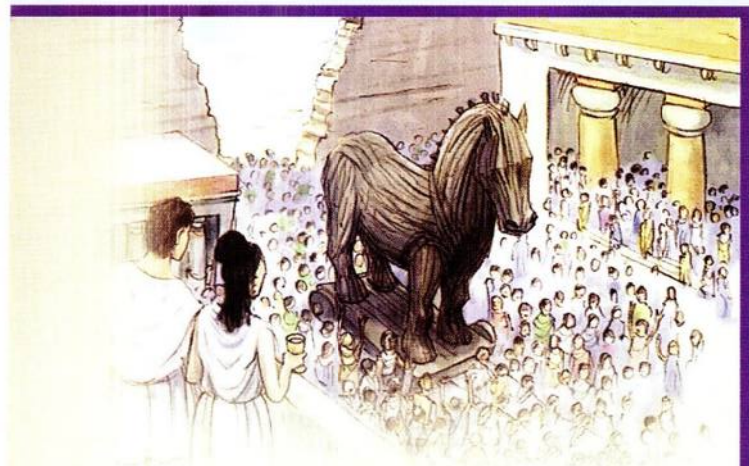




## EVERYDAY ENGLISH — Objects

**4** **CD3 17** Listen again. Which objects are being described?

1 \_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_ 9 \_\_\_



The Trojans tried to pull the huge horse into the city. However, it was so big that they had to tear down part of the city wall to get it in. They took it to the temple of Athena and had a big party to celebrate victory over the Greeks and the end of the war.

Finally, everyone was exhausted from all the festivities, and they fell asleep. Now the Greek soldiers crept out of the horse. They killed all the guards on the walls and then signaled to the Greeks on the other side to attack Troy.

There was a bloody battle, and the Greeks won easily. All the Trojan men were killed, and the women and children were taken back to Greece as slaves.



**6** Work with a partner. Take turns describing some of the other objects. Point to what your partner describes.

*They're made of metal. They're small. You use them to ...*



# Word List

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *American Headway Student Book 3, Third Edition.*

*adj* = adjective  
*adv* = adverb  
*conj* = conjunction  
*coll* = colloquial  
*n* = noun  
*opp* = opposite

*pl* = plural  
*prep* = preposition  
*pron* = pronoun  
*pp* = past participle  
*v* = verb



## UNIT 1

archaeology *n* /ˈɑːkiˈɒlədʒi/  
area *n* /ˈɛriə/  
background *n* /ˈbækgraʊnd/  
barrel *n* /ˈbærəl/  
Basque *adj* /bæsk/  
beat *v* /biːt/  
bilingual *adj* /ˌbaɪˈlɪŋɡwəl/  
block *n* /blɒk/  
brief *v* /brɪf/  
bright *adj* /braɪt/  
cancellation *n* /ˌkænsəˈleɪʃn/  
cherish *v* /ˈtʃerɪʃ/  
client *n* /ˈklaɪənt/  
close-knit *adj* /kloʊsnɪt/  
communal *adj* /kəˈmyunəl/  
community *n* /kəˈmyunəti/  
cosmopolitan *adj* /ˌkɒzməˈpɒlətɪn/  
cracked *adj* /krækd/  
culture *n* /ˈkʌltʃər/  
daylight *n* /ˈdeɪlaɪt/  
demolition *n* /ˌdɛməˈlɪʃn/  
destroy *v* /dɪˈstrɔɪ/  
dressmaker *n* /ˈdresmeɪkər/  
earthquake *n* /ˈɜːθkweɪk/  
elderly *adj* /ˈɛldərli/  
end up *v* /ɪˌend ʌp/  
equator *n* /ɪˈkweɪtər/  
extended family *n* /ɪkˈstendɪd ˈfæmli/  
extinct *adj* /ɪkˈstɪŋkt/  
fee *n* /fiː/  
filling *n* /ˈfɪlɪŋ/  
for good /fər ɡʊd/  
forbid *v* /fərˈbɪd/  
frail *adj* /freɪl/  
frugally *adv* /ˈfrʊɡəli/  
global warming *n* /ˌɡləʊbl wɔːmɪŋ/  
(not) go far /ɡʊ ˈfɑː/  
go live /ɡʊ ˈlɪv/  
go on about /ɡʊ ɒn əˈbaʊt/  
a great deal /eɪ ɡreɪt diːl/  
headquarters *n* /ˈhedkwɔːtərz/  
heritage *n* /ˈherətɪdʒ/  
hold *v* /hoʊld/  
hopefully *adv* /ˈhoʊpflɪ/  
hospitality *n* /ˌhɒspəˈtæləti/  
iceberg *n* /ˈaɪsbɜːɡ/  
immediate family *n* /ɪˈmɪdiət ˈfæmli/  
kit *n* /kɪt/  
life expectancy *n* /laɪf ɪkˈspektənsi/  
make *v* /meɪk/  
means *n* /miːnz/  
motto *n* /ˈmɒtoʊ/  
muffin *n* /ˈmʌfɪn/  
municipal *adj* /myˈnɪsəpl/  
neutral *adj* /ˈnjuːtrəl/

nonsense *n* /ˈnʌnsens/  
noticeable *adj* /ˈnəʊtɪsəbl/  
on the clock *n* /ɒn ðə klɒk/  
operator *n* /ˈɒpəreɪtər/  
performance *n* /pəˈfɔːməns/  
pin number *n* /ˈpɪn nʌmbər/  
policy *n* /ˈpɒləsi/  
preschool *n* /ˈprɪskul/  
prestigious *adj* /preˈstɪdʒəs/  
presumably *adv* /priˈzʊməbli/  
profile *n* /ˈprəʊfaɪl/  
propaganda *n* /prəˈpæɡəndə/  
provide *v* /prəˈvaɪd/  
pajamas *n* /pəˈdʒæməz/  
raise *v* /reɪz/  
reach *v* /riːtʃ/  
regret *n* /rɪˈɡret/  
research *n* /ˈriːsɜːtʃ/  
settle down *v* /ˈsetl daʊn/  
shortly *adv* /ˈʃɔːtli/  
similarity *n* /sɪməˈlærəti/  
slum *n* /slʌm/  
story *n* /ˈstɔːri/  
stressed *adj* /strest/  
structure *n* /ˈstrʌktʃər/  
stuck *adj* /stʌk/  
suburb *n* /ˈsʌbərb/  
survey *n* /səˈveɪ/  
take home *v* /teɪk hoʊm/  
take out *v* /teɪk aʊt/  
tricky *adj* /ˈtrɪki/  
ultimately *adv* /ʌlˈtəmətli/  
urgent *adj* /ˈɜːdʒənt/  
vote *n/v* /voʊt/  
well-balanced *adj* /welˈbælənst/  
widely *adv* /ˈwaɪdli/



## UNIT 2

actually *adv* /ˈæktʃuəli/  
amazing *adj* /əˈmeɪzɪŋ/  
annoying *adj* /əˈnɔɪɪŋ/  
annual *adj* /ˈænyuəl/  
attend *v* /əˈtend/  
bake *v* /beɪk/  
baking dish *n* /beɪkɪŋ dɪʃ/  
banking *n* /ˈbæŋkɪŋ/  
bargain *n* /ˈbɜːɡən/  
be in touch /bi ɪn tʌtʃ/  
(surf)board *n* /sɜːfbɔːrd/  
boarding school *n* /bɔːdɪŋ skul/  
boil *v* /bɔɪl/  
budget *n* /ˈbʌdʒət/  
buzz *n* /bʌz/  
cash flow *n* /ˈkæʃ floʊ/  
cashier *n* /kæˈʃɪər/  
catch up on *phr v* /kætʃ ʌp ɒn/  
challenging *adj* /ˈtʃæləndʒɪŋ/  
check *n* /tʃek/  
chop *v* /tʃɒp/  
concentrate *v* /ˈkɒnsntreɪt/  
concerned *adj* /kənˈsɜːnd/  
convenient *adj* /kənˈvɪniənt/  
creative *adj* /kriˈeɪtɪv/  
day off *n* /deɪ ɒf/  
drill *n* /drɪl/  
earn a living /ˌɜːn eɪ ˈlɪvɪŋ/  
earner *n* /ˈɜːnər/  
employee *n* /emˈplɔɪ/  
enormous *adj* /ɪˈnɔːməs/  
entrepreneur *n* /ˌɒːntrəprəˈnɜːr/  
exhausted *adj* /ɪɡˈzɔːstɪd/  
ferry *n* /ˈferi/  
food processor *n* /ˌfuːd ˈprəsesər/  
fry *v* /fraɪ/  
get away from it all *v* /ɡet əˈwei frəm ɪt ɔːl/  
goods *pl n* /ɡʊdz/  
grateful *adj* /ˈɡreɪtfl/  
ground beef *n* /ˌɡraʊnd biːf/  
hardware *n* /ˈhɑːdweɪr/  
helmet *n* /ˈhelmət/  
herb *n* /ɜːrb/  
human resources *n* /ˌhyʊmən ˈrɪsɔːsɪz/  
in charge /ɪn tʃɑːdʒ/  
in response to /ɪn rɪˈspɒns tə/  
include *v* /ɪnˈkluːd/  
inconvenience *adj* /ˌɪnkənˈvɪniəns/  
industry *n* /ˈɪndəstri/  
involve *v* /ɪnˈvɒlv/  
land *v* /lænd/  
lifeguard *n* /ˈlaɪfgɑːrd/  
manufacture *v* /ˌmænyʊˈfæktʃər/  
meditate *v* /ˈmedəteɪt/  
mix *v* /mɪks/

negotiate *v* /nəˈɡoʊʃieɪt/  
obsessed *adj* /əbˈses/  
old-fashioned *adj* /oʊld ˈfæʃnd/  
organic *adj* /ɔːrɡənɪk/  
payment *n* /ˈpeɪmənt/  
peel *v* /piːl/  
plant *v* /plænt/  
politician *n* /pəˈlətɪʃn/  
predictable *adj* /prɪˈdɪktəbl/  
productive *adj* /prəˈdʌktɪv/  
racket *n* /ˈræktət/  
recruit *v* /rɪˈkrut/  
redecorate *v* /riˈdeɪkəreɪt/  
relaxing *adj* /rɪˈlæksɪŋ/  
roast *v* /roʊst/  
routine *n* /ruːˈtiːn/  
sales *pl n* /seɪlz/  
screwdriver *n* /ˈskruːdraɪvər/  
serve an ace *v* /sɜːv ən ˈeɪs/  
shift *n* /ʃɪft/  
situate *v* /sɪtʃueɪt/  
sketch *v* /sketʃ/  
small talk *n* /smɔːl tɔːk/  
stay fit *v* /steɪ fɪt/  
strategy *n* /ˈstrætədʒi/  
stressed-out *adj* /strest aʊt/  
success *n* /səkˈses/  
successful *adj* /səkˈsesfəl/  
support *n* /səˈpɔːrt/  
sweat *v* /swet/  
tax *n* /tæks/  
terrible *adj* /ˈterəbl/  
training *n* /ˈtreɪnɪŋ/  
understanding *n* /ˌʌndərˈstændɪŋ/  
upset *adj* /ʌpˈset/  
weed *v* /wiːd/  
weigh *v* /wei/  
zoom *n* /zʊm/



## UNIT 3

according to *prep* /ə'kɔrdɪŋ tə/  
 alliance *n* /ə'laɪəns/  
 amateur *n* /æmə'tɜːr/  
 apothecary *n* /ə'pɒθɪkəri/  
 banish *v* /'bænɪʃ/  
 beg *v* /beɪ/  
 beloved *adj* /brɪ'ləvd/  
 bestseller *n* /,best'selər/  
 blind *adj* /blaɪnd/  
 blog *n* /blɒg/  
 blogger *n* /'blɒgər/  
 broke *adj* /brʊk/  
 bury *v* /'beri/  
 confident *adj* /'kɒnfɪdənt/  
 dagger *n* /'dægər/  
 declare *v* /dɪ'kleər/  
 electric *adj* /ɪ'lektrɪk/  
 embrace *n* /ɪm'breɪs/  
 enemy *n* /'enəmi/  
 eternal *adj* /ɪ'tɜːnl/  
 fair *adj* /feər/  
 fair enough *adj* /feər ɪ'naʃ/  
 fall in love *v* /fɔl ɪn lʌv/  
 feud *n* /fyud/  
 finance *n* /'faɪnəns/  
 fire *v* /'faɪər/  
 friar *n* /'fraɪər/  
 funny *adj* /'fʌni/  
 go out *v* /goʊ 'aʊt/  
 go weak at the knees /goʊ wɪk  
 ət θə niːz/  
 grief *n* /grɪf/  
 hateful *adj* /'heɪtfl/  
 hatred *n* /'heɪtrəd/  
 horrible *adj* /'hɒrəbl/  
 horrified *adj* /'hɒrəfaɪd/  
 liquor *n* /'lɪkə(r)/  
 lonely *adj* /'lʊnli/  
 madness *n* /'mædnəs/  
 modest *adj* /'mɔːdɪst/  
 move *v* /muːv/  
 nightmare *n* /'naɪtmər/  
 nobleman *n* /'nɒəblmən/  
 on the mend /ən ðə mɛnd/  
 overwhelmed *adj* /oʊvər'welmd/  
 peace *n* /piːs/  
 poison *n* /'pɔɪzn/  
 popular *adj* /'pɒːpjələr/  
 precious *adj* /'preʃəs/  
 pretend *v* /'pri:tend/  
 psychiatrist *n* /saɪ'kaɪətrɪst/  
 psychology *n* /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/  
 publish *v* /'pʌblɪʃ/  
 pulse *n* /pʌls/  
 rancor *n* /'ræŋkə(r)/  
 reciprocated *adj* /rɪ'sɪprəkeɪtɪd/  
 rescue *v* /'reskyu/  
 sense of humor *n* /sens əv 'hyumər/  
 a shame /eɪ ʃeɪm/  
 soul *n* /soʊl/  
 stab *v* /stæb/  
 stuff *n* /stʌf/  
 swear *v* /swɛr/  
 testify *v* /'testəfaɪ/  
 tomb *n* /tʊm/  
 tragedy *n* /'trædʒədi/  
 tragic *adj* /'trædʒɪk/

treasure *n* /'treʒər/  
 unfortunate *adj* /ʌn'fɔrtʃənət/  
 uninvited *adj* /,ʌnɪn'vaɪtəd/  
 unite *v* /yu'naɪt/  
 upside down *adj* /,ʌpsaɪd daʊn/  
 vial *n* /'vaɪəl/  
 warring *adj* /'wɔrɪŋ/  
 wed *v* /wɛd/  
 weep *v* /wɪp/  
 woe *n* /woʊ/  
 wretched *adj* /'retʃəd/

## UNIT 4

addicted *adj* /ə'dɪktɪd/  
 anxiety *n* /æŋ'zaɪəti/  
 app *n* /æp/  
 bargain *n* /'bɑːɡən/  
 benefit *n* /'benəfɪt/  
 careless *adj* /'kerləs/  
 claim *v* /kleɪm/  
 code *n* /kood/  
 concentrate *v* /'kɒnsntreɪt/  
 confront *v* /kən'frʌnt/  
 consider *v* /kən'sɪdər/  
 cop *n* /kɒːp/  
 crime scene *n* /kraɪm siːn/  
 cut off *v* /kʌt 'ɔf/  
 deal with *v* /dɪl wɪð/  
 decorate *v* /'dekəreɪt/  
 demand *n* /dɪ'mænd/  
 detective *n* /dɪ'tektɪv/  
 dilemma *n* /dɪ'lemə/  
 disable *v* /dɪs'eɪbl/  
 disagreeable *adj* /'dɪsə'ɡriəbl/  
 distract *v* /dɪ'strækt/  
 dump *v* /dʌmp/  
 enable *v* /ɪ'neɪbl/  
 era *n* /'ɪrə/  
 experiment *n* /ɪk'sperɪmənt/  
 fair *adj* /feər/  
 fiancée *n* /fi'ænseɪ/  
 fingerprint *n* /'fɪŋgəprɪnt/  
 gift-wrap *v* /ɡɪft-ræp/  
 give up *v* /ɡɪv ʌp/  
 go with the flow /goʊ wɪð ðə fləʊ/  
 greet *v* /ɡriːt/  
 in spite of *prep* /ɪn'spaɪt əv/  
 investigate *v* /ɪn'vestɪɡeɪt/  
 keep quiet *v* /kiːp kwaɪət/  
 keep up *v* /kiːp ʌp/  
 lift *n* /lɪft/  
 limit *v* /'lɪmɪt/  
 look up *v* /lʊk ʌp/  
 make *n* /meɪk/  
 match *n* /mætʃ/  
 medical *adj* /'medɪkl/  
 menace *n* /'menəs/  
 military service *n* /'mɪləteri 'sɜːvəs/  
 missionary *n* /'mɪʃənəri/  
 morals *pl* /'mɔːrəlz/  
 naïve *adj* /naɪv/  
 open *adj* /'oʊpən/  
 optimist *n* /'ɒptəmɪst/  
 out of work /aʊt əv 'wɜːk/  
 permissible *adj* /pər'mɪsəbl/  
 pessimist *n* /'pesəmɪst/  
 pick up *v* /pɪk 'ʌp/  
 point of view *n* /,pɔɪnt əv vju/  
 pump *n* /pʌmp/  
 push up *v* /pʊʃ ʌp/  
 put off *v* /pʊt ɔːf/  
 put up with *v* /pʊt ʌp wɪð/  
 qualify *v* /'kwɒləfaɪ/  
 react *v* /ri'ækt/  
 regard *n* /rɪ'ɡɑːd/  
 remove *v* /rɪ'muːv/  
 retell *v* /rɪ'tel/  
 rob *v* /rɒːb/  
 robbery *n* /'rɒːbəri/

row *n* /raʊ/  
 scary *adj* /'skeəri/  
 set an example /,set ɪg'zæmpl/  
 set up *v* /,set ʌp/  
 share *v* /ʃeər/  
 simplify *v* /'sɪmplɪfaɪ/  
 spread *v* /sprɛd/  
 space station *n* /'speɪs ,steɪʃn/  
 steal *v* /stiːl/  
 stepfather *n* /'stepfɑːðər/  
 strict *adj* /strɪkt/  
 strip *v* /striːp/  
 stuck *adj* /stʌk/  
 suit *v* /suːt/  
 supportive *adj* /sə'pɔːrtɪv/  
 take after *v* /,teɪk 'æftər/  
 take up *v* /teɪk ʌp/  
 tear *n* /tɪər/  
 thrift *n* /θrɪft/  
 token *n* /'tʊkən/  
 tonic *n* /'tɒnɪk/  
 track down *v* /træk daʊn/  
 transform *v* /træns'fɔːm/  
 transport *v* /træn'spɔːrt/  
 treat *n* /triːt/  
 valuable *adj* /'væljuəbl/  
 Victorian *adj* /vɪk'tɔːriən/  
 victory *n* /'vɪktəri/  
 wardrobe *n* /'wɔːdrəʊb/  
 woodwork *n* /'wʊdwɜːk/





## UNIT 5

addiction *n* /ə'dɪkʃn/  
 advance *n* /əd'væns/  
 amateur *adj* /'æmətʃər/  
 astronaut *n* /'æstrənət/  
 attitude *n* /'ætətud/  
 benefit *n* /'benɪfɪt/  
 beyond your wildest dreams  
 /bi'yænd yər ,wɪldɪst 'drɪmz/  
 blackness *n* /blæknes/  
 cause for concern /kəz fər kən'sɜ:n/  
 cell *n* /sel/  
 centenarian *n* /senti'neriən/  
 confidently *adv* /'kɒnfədəntli/  
 confirmation *n* /kən'fɜ:mɪʃn/  
 controversial *adj* /kən'trə'vɜ:ʃl/  
 cooking *n* /'kʊkɪŋ/  
 curvature *n* /kərvətʃər/  
 cyber- /saɪbər/  
 damage *n* /'dæmɪdʒ/  
 destination *n* /'destɪ'neɪʃn/  
 diseased *adj* /di'zi:zd/  
 distribute *v* /dɪ'strɪbju:t/  
 driverless *adj* /'draɪvərləs/  
 drought *n* /draʊt/  
 ecosystem *n* /'i:koʊsɪstəm/  
 evacuate *v* /'i:vækueɪt/  
 existence *n* /ɪg'zɪstəns/  
 expand *v* /ɪk'spænd/  
 expect (a baby) *v* /ɪk'spekt/  
 expense *n* /ɪk'spens/  
 extend *v* /ɪk'stend/  
 fiction *n* /'fɪkʃn/  
 fingers crossed /'fɪŋgəz krɒst/  
 flood *n* /flʌd/  
 forecast *n* /'fɔ:kæst/  
 form *v* /fɔ:m/  
 galaxy *n* /'gæləksi/  
 generation *n* /dʒenə'reɪʃn/  
 get in *v* /,get 'ɪn/  
 give birth *v* /,gɪv 'bɜ:θ/  
 glow *v* /gləʊ/  
 half-time *n* /,hæf 'taɪm/  
 heatwave *n* /'hitweɪv/  
 hopeless *adj* /'hoʊpləs/  
 hurricane *n* /'hɜ:rəkən/  
 infinite *adj* /'ɪnfənət/  
 injection *n* /ɪn'dʒɛkʃn/  
 knowledge *n* /'nɒlɪdʒ/  
 laboratory *n* /'læbrətɔ:ri/  
 limb *n* /lɪm/  
 major *adj* /'meɪdʒər/  
 mammal *n* /'mæml/  
 mankind *n* /mæn'kaɪnd/  
 marvel *n* /'mɑ:vl/  
 melt *v* /melt/  
 meteorologist *n* /mɪ'tɪə'lədʒɪst/  
 nuclear energy *n* /'nukliər 'enədʒi/  
 orbit *n* /'ɔ:rbət/  
 organ *n* /'ɔ:gən/  
 parallel *adj* /'pærəlel/  
 pill *n* /pɪl/  
 presence *n* /'preznəs/  
 primate *n* /'praɪmeɪt/  
 prove *v* /pruv/  
 quote *n* /kwəʊt/  
 rainfall *n* /'reɪnfɔ:l/  
 rapidly *adv* /'ræpədli/  
 realist *n* /'rɪəlɪst/  
 reassure *v* /ri'ʃʊər/  
 reduce *v* /ri'dus/  
 regenerate *v* /rɪ'dʒenəreɪt/  
 regrow *v* /ri'grəʊ/  
 research *v* /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ/  
 resource *n* /'rɪsɜ:s/  
 revulsion *n* /rɪ'vʌlʃn/  
 science fiction *n* /'saɪəns 'fɪkʃn/  
 sensational *adj* /sen'seɪʃnl/  
 sensor *n* /'sensər/  
 sink into *v* /,sɪŋk 'ɪntu/  
 skydiving *n* /'skaɪdaɪvɪŋ/  
 snowstorm *n* /'snəʊstɔ:m/  
 spine *n* /spain/  
 status *n* /'stætəs/  
 study *n* /'stʌdi/  
 suitable *adj* /'sʊtəbl/  
 supply *n* /sə'plai/  
 sustainable *adj* /sə'steɪnəbl/  
 take for granted /,teɪk fər græntəd/  
 task *n* /tæsk/  
 technical *adj* /'tekni:k/  
 the norm *n* /ðə nɔ:m/  
 throughout *prep* /θru:'aʊt/  
 thunderstorm *n* /'θʌndəstɔ:m/  
 transplantation *n*  
 /trænsplænteɪʃn/  
 tropical *adj* /'trɒpɪk/  
 universe *n* /'ju:nɪvɜ:s/  
 urban renewal *n* /'ʊ:rbən rɪ'nu:əl/  
 vertebrate *n* /'vɜ:təbreɪt/  
 vertical *adj* /'vɜ:rtɪk/  
 vigorous *adj* /'vɪɡərəs/  
 virtual *adj* /'vɜ:tʃuəl/  
 weightlessness *n* /weɪtləsnes/



## UNIT 6

appliance *n* /ə'plaɪəns/  
 associate *v* /ə'soʊʃeɪt/  
 astronomy *n* /ə'strɒnəmi/  
 attractive *adj* /ə'træktɪv/  
 badly behaved *adj* /bædli bi'heɪvd/  
 basement *n* /'beɪsmənt/  
 battery *n* /'bætəri/  
 bomb *n* /bʌm/  
 bother *v* /'bɒðər/  
 brightly *adv* /'braɪtli/  
 button *n* /'bʌtn/  
 cashmere *n* /kæʒ'mɪr/  
 casual *adj* /kæʒuəl/  
 cattle *n* /'kætl/  
 celebration *n* /sələ'breɪʃn/  
 china *n* /'tʃaɪnə/  
 clearance *n* /'klɪərəns/  
 coach *n* /kəʊtʃ/  
 consume *v* /kən'sʊm/  
 cosmetics *pl n* /kəz'metɪkz/  
 cozy *adj* /'kəʊzi/  
 cottage *n* /'kɒtɪdʒ/  
 crumble *v* /'krʌmb/  
 curiosity *n* /kyʊrɪ'asəti/  
 curly *adj* /'kɜ:li/  
 dome *n* /doʊm/  
 dominant *adj* /dəmənənt/  
 drive sb crazy /,draɪv sʌmbʒaɪ  
 kreɪzi/  
 emigrate *v* /'eməgreɪt/  
 equipped *adj* /ɪ'kwɪpɪd/  
 file *n* /faɪl/  
 fluently *adv* /'fluəntli/  
 full-time *adj* /,fʊl'taɪm/  
 fully *adv* /'fʊli/  
 garlic *n* /'gɑ:rlɪk/  
 get together *v* /,get tə'geðər/  
 gigabyte *n* /'gɪgəbaɪt/  
 glassware *n* /glæsweɪr/  
 good-looking *adj* /,ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ/  
 gravitate *v* /grævəteɪt/  
 guarantee *n* /,ɡærən'ti/  
 handmade *adj* /,hænd'meɪd/  
 handy *adj* /'hændi/  
 hard disk *n* /,hɑ:d 'dɪsk/  
 hard-working *adj* /,hɑ:d 'wɜ:kɪŋ/  
 homecomings *n* /'həʊmkʌmɪŋz/  
 housewife *n* /'haʊswaɪf/  
 hut *n* /hʌt/  
 hyperactive *adj* /,haɪpər'æktɪv/  
 immense *adj* /ɪ'mens/  
 in tune with /,ɪn 'tu:n wɪð/  
 independent *adj* /ɪndɪ'pendənt/  
 ingredient *n* /ɪn'ɡrɪdiənt/  
 insecure *adj* /ɪnsə'kyʊr/  
 irreplaceable *adj* /,ɪrɪ'pleɪsəbl/  
 kitchenware *n* /'kɪtʃənweɪr/  
 lentils *pl n* /'lentɪl/  
 like oil and vinegar /laɪk ɔɪl ənd  
 vɪnɪgər/  
 linen *n* /'lɪnɪn/  
 long-lasting *adj* /lɒŋləstɪŋ/  
 low-fat *adj* /ləʊ 'fæt/  
 loyalty *n* /'ləʊəlti/  
 massage *n* /mə'sɑ:ʒ/  
 medium height *n* /'mi:diəm ,haɪt/  
 mud *n* /mʌd/  
 nightlife *n* /'naɪtlaɪf/  
 orchard *n* /'ɔ:rtʃərd/  
 painkiller *n* /'peɪnkɪlə(r)/  
 panoramic *adj* /,pænə'ræmɪk/  
 paradise *n* /'pærədəɪs/  
 practical *adj* /'præktɪk/  
 premises *pl n* /'preməsɪz/  
 pre-packed *adj* /,pri'pækt/  
 prosecute *v* /'prɒsəkyut/  
 purchase *v* /'pɜ:tʃəs/  
 rabbit *n* /'ræbət/  
 remind *v* /rɪ'maɪnd/  
 responsible *adj* /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/  
 restore *v* /rɪ'stɔ:r/  
 safety *n* /'seɪfti/  
 seek *v* /sɪk/  
 sell out *v* /,sel 'aʊt/  
 sentimental *adj* /sentə'mentl/  
 shelter *n* /'feltər/  
 simply *adv* /'sɪmpli/  
 sociable *adj* /'soʊʃəbl/  
 solid *adj* /'sɒləd/  
 staff *n* /stæf/  
 stationery *n* /'steɪʃnəri/  
 stone *n* /stəʊn/  
 subscribe *v* /səb'skraɪb/  
 take-out *adj* /'teɪk-aʊt/  
 tempting *adj* /'temptɪŋ/  
 terrace *n* /'terəs/  
 think straight /'θɪŋk ,streɪt/  
 tiny *adj* /'taɪni/  
 toiletries *pl n* /'tɔɪlətrɪz/  
 top floor *n* /tɒp ,flɔ:/  
 treasure *v* /'treʒər/  
 turmeric *n* /'tɔ:mərɪk/  
 wavy *adj* /'weɪvi/  
 wear *n* /weɪ/  
 wedding *n* /'wɛdɪŋ/  
 well behaved *adj* /,wel bi'heɪvd/  
 well dressed *adj* /,wel 'drest/  
 whisper *v* /'wɪspər/  
 young at heart /,yʌŋ ət hɑ:t/





## UNIT 7

accustomed *adj* /ə'kʌstəmd/  
 agreement *n* /ə'grɪmənt/  
 apply for *v* /ə'plai fər/  
 be fond of *v* /bi 'fʌnd əv/  
 best-selling *adj* /best'selɪŋ/  
 campaign *n* /kæm'peɪn/  
 chamber *n* /'tʃeɪmbər/  
 chaos *n* /'keɪs/  
 common *adj* /'kɒmən/  
 contact *v* /'kɒntækt/  
 continent *n* /'kɒntənənt/  
 copy *n* /'kɒpi/  
 countless *adj* /'kaʊntləs/  
 create *v* /kri'eɪt/  
 deathly *adj* /deθli/  
 decade *n* /'dekeɪd/  
 demanding *adj* /dɪ'mændɪŋ/  
 director *n* /dɪ'rektər/  
 doll *n* /dɒl/  
 dominate *v* /'dɒmənɪt/  
 don't mind *v* /doʊnt 'maɪnd/  
 doubles *pl n* /'dʌblz/  
 downpour *n* /'daʊnpɔːr/  
 due *adj* /du/  
 elect *v* /ɪ'lekt/  
 enthusiastic *adj* /ɪnθʊzi'æstɪk/  
 eternity *n* /ɪ'tɜːnəti/  
 euphoria *n* /ju'fɔːriə/  
 fail *v* /feɪl/  
 fan *n* /fæn/  
 fashion designer *n* /'fæʃn dɪ'zʌnər/  
 faucet *n* /'fəʊsɪt/  
 female *n* /'fiːmeɪl/  
 fine *adj* /faɪn/  
 gifted *adj* /'ɡɪftəd/  
 goblet *n* /'ɡɒblɪt/  
 ground *n* /graʊnd/  
 hallow *n* /'hæləʊ/  
 harmony *n* /'hɑːməni/  
 have a word *v* /həv ɪ wɜːd/  
 heated *adj* /'hiːtəd/  
 hero *n* /'hɪrəʊ/  
 horseback riding *n* /'hɔːsbæk raɪdɪŋ/  
 image *n* /'ɪmɪdʒ/  
 infectious *adj* /ɪn'fektʃəs/  
 institute *n* /'ɪnstɪtʊt/  
 introduce *v* /ɪn'trə'dʊs/  
 invest *v* /ɪn'vest/  
 launch *v* /lɔːntʃ/  
 lifestyle *n* /'laɪfstɑɪl/  
 loathe *v* /ləʊð/  
 make your mark *v* /meɪk jər mark/  
 male *n* /meɪl/  
 measles *n* /'mɪzlz/  
 medieval *adj* /med'iɪvl/  
 mob *n* /mɒb/  
 musical *n* /'myʊzɪkl/  
 myth *n* /mɪθ/  
 nail polish *n* /neɪl 'pɔːlɪʃ/  
 name *v* /neɪm/  
 numerous *adj* /'numərəs/  
 obsession *n* /əb'seʃn/  
 once and for all /wʌns ənd fər 'ɔːl/

orphan *n* /'ɔːrfən/  
 passionate *adj* /'pæʃnət/  
 philosopher *n* /fə'ləsəfər/  
 phoenix *n* /'fiːnɪks/  
 poverty *n* /'pɒvərti/  
 producer *n* /prə'dʊsər/  
 psychological *adj* /saɪkə'lɒdʒɪkl/  
 public school *n* /'pʌblɪk 'skul/  
 ready-to-wear *adj* /'redi tə weɪ/  
 regular *adj* /'regjələr/  
 resign *v* /rɪ'zaɪn/  
 respond *v* /rɪ'spænd/  
 rivalry *n* /'raɪvrlɪ/  
 sculpture *n* /'skʌlptʃər/  
 sew *v* /suː/  
 slow down *v* /sləʊ 'daʊn/  
 snap up *v* /sneɪp 'ʌp/  
 soccer *n* /'sɒkər/  
 sort out *v* /sɔːt 'aʊt/  
 stage *n* /steɪdʒ/  
 statistics *n pl* /stə'tɪstɪks/  
 strike *n* /straɪk/  
 sympathy *n* /'sɪmpəθi/  
 talent *n* /'tælənt/  
 tattoo *n* /tæ'tuː/  
 the big time /ðə 'bɪg ,taɪm/  
 to the fullest /tə ðə fʊllest/  
 totally *adv* /'təʊtli/  
 track *n* /træk/  
 trademark *n* /'treɪdmɑːk/  
 try one's luck /traɪ wʌnz 'lʌk/  
 video game *n* /'vɪdɪəʊ ,geɪm/  
 violent *adj* /'vaɪələnt/  
 wizard *n* /'wɪzəd/  
 irLanguage.com



## UNIT 8

approach *v* /ə'prəʊtʃ/  
 ascent *n* /ə'sent/  
 base *n* /beɪs/  
 battle *n* /'bætl/  
 bite *v* /baɪt/  
 blow *v* /bləʊ/  
 blow up *v* /,bləʊ 'ʌp/  
 body language *n* /'bɒdi læŋgwɪdʒ/  
 bold *adj* /bəʊld/  
 bunk bed *n* /,bʌŋk 'bed/  
 canoe *n* /kə'nuː/  
 catapult *v* /'kætəpʌlt/  
 clap *v* /kleɪp/  
 cliff *n* /klɪf/  
 conquer *v* /'kɒŋkər/  
 crew *n* /kruː/  
 cross *v* /krɒs/  
 crossing *n* /'krɒsɪŋ/  
 cure *v* /kyʊər/  
 dare *v* /deɪ/  
 daring *adj* /dərɪŋ/  
 declare *v* /dɪ'kleər/  
 defeat *v* /dɪ'fiːt/  
 defeat *n* /dɪ'fiːt/  
 DIY *n* /,di aɪ 'waɪ/  
 DNA *n* /,di en 'eɪ/  
 empire *n* /'empaɪər/  
 face *v* /feɪs/  
 fearless *adj* /fɪrləs/  
 ferry *v* /'feri/  
 fighter *n* /'faɪtər/  
 force *v* /fɔːs/  
 found *v* /faʊnd/  
 freak out *v* /frik aʊt/  
 gene *n* /dʒɪn/  
 get out of hand *v* /get aʊt əv 'hænd/  
 go over someone's head *v* /goʊ ʊvər ... hed/  
 have a sweet tooth *v* /hæv ɪ ,swɪt 'tuːθ/  
 hit a snag /,hɪt ɪ snæɡ/  
 hollow *adj* /'haləʊ/  
 hug *v* /hʌɡ/  
 iceberg *n* /'aɪsbɜːɡ/  
 illiterate *adj* /ɪ'lɪtərət/  
 infection *n* /ɪn'fektʃn/  
 initially *adv* /ɪ'nɪʃli/  
 innocent *adj* /'ɪnəsnt/  
 install *v* /ɪn'stɔːl/  
 kneel *v* /niːl/  
 lack *n* /læk/  
 ladder *n* /'lædə/  
 leadership *n* /'lɪdəʃɪp/  
 lick *v* /lɪk/  
 lifeboats *n* /'laɪfbəʊts/  
 lower *v* /'ləʊər/  
 maiden voyage *n* /,meɪdn 'vɔɪdʒ/  
 manpower *n* /'mænpaʊər/  
 military *adj* /'mɪləteri/  
 nail *n* /neɪl/  
 numerous *adj* /numərəs/  
 overcome *v* /'ʊʊvər'kʌm/  
 overweight *adj* /'ʊʊvər'weɪt/  
 oxygen *n* /'ɒksɪdʒən/  
 oyster *n* /'ɔɪstər/  
 panic *v* /'pænɪk/  
 pass *n* /pæs/  
 perish *v* /'perɪʃ/  
 phobia *n* /'fəʊbiə/  
 pitch-black *adj* /pɪtʃ 'blæk/  
 plain *n* /pleɪn/  
 playground *n* /'pleɪgraʊnd/  
 poisonous *adj* /'pɔɪznəs/  
 pray *v* /preɪ/  
 program *n* /'prəʊgræm/  
 prosperous *adj* /'prɒspərəs/  
 province *n* /'prɒvəns/  
 psychotherapist *n* /saɪkəʊ'θerəpɪst/  
 pull someone's leg *v* /,pʊl ... 'leg/  
 put up *v* /,pʊt 'ʌp/  
 raft *n* /ræft/  
 recognize *v* /'rekəɡnaɪz/  
 reduce *v* /rɪ'dʊs/  
 remain *v* /rɪ'meɪn/  
 remarkable *adj* /rɪ'mɑːkəbl/  
 remote *adj* /rɪ'məʊt/  
 revolutionary *adj* /,revə'lʊʃənəri/  
 rule *v* /ruːl/  
 scar *n* /skɑːr/  
 scratch *v* /skrætʃ/  
 see eye to eye *v* /si ,aɪ tu 'aɪ/  
 set off *v* /,set 'ɔːf/  
 sickness *n* /'sɪknəs/  
 silly *adj* /'sɪli/  
 slide *v* /slaɪd/  
 slip *v* /slɪp/  
 snorkel *n* /'snɔːkl/  
 soldier *n* /'səʊldɪər/  
 stack *n* /stæk/  
 stare *v* /steɪ/  
 steerage *n* /'stiəriːdʒ/  
 struggle *v* /'strʌɡl/  
 suffer *v* /sʌfər/  
 sumptuous *adj* /'sʌmptʃʊəs/  
 superior *adj* /sə'piəriər/  
 swallow *v* /'swələʊ/  
 sweaty *adj* /'sweti/  
 symptom *n* /'sɪmptəm/  
 tear down *phr v* /tɪr 'daʊn/  
 terrified *adj* /'terəfaɪd/  
 terror *n* /'terər/  
 threaten *v* /'θreɪtn/  
 trek *n* /trek/  
 tribesmen *n pl* /'traɪbzmen/  
 tune *n* /tuːn/  
 unbelievable *adj* /,ʌnbɪ'li:vəbl/  
 unsinkable *adj* /ʌn'sɪŋkəbl/  
 waste your breath *v* /weɪst jər breθ/  
 whistle *v* /'wɪsl/





## UNIT 9

action-packed *adj* /'ækʃn pækt/  
 ages *pl n* /'eɪdʒɪz/  
 arrest *v* /ə'rest/  
 ashamed *adj* /ə'seɪmd/  
 balance *n* /'bæləns/  
 bear with *v* /'ber wɪð/  
 blood *n* /blʌd/  
 bother *v* /'bəðər/  
 brainstorm *v* /'breɪnstɔːm/  
 buddy *n* /'bʌdi/  
 bully *v* /'bʊli/  
 bump into *v* /,bʌmp 'ɪntu/  
 burglary *n* /'bɜːgləri/  
 clean up *v* /,kliːn 'ʌp/  
 clear *v* /kliːr/  
 convict *v* /kən'vɪkt/  
 counselor *n* /'kaʊnsələr/  
 curious *adj* /'kyʊəriəs/  
 determined *adj* /dɪ'tɜːmænd/  
 digit *n* /'dɪdʒɪt/  
 dozen *n* /'dʌzn/  
 dysfunctional *adj* /dɪs'fʌŋkʃənəl/  
 economize *v* /'iːkənəmaɪz/  
 effective *adj* /'ɪfektɪv/  
 eldest *adj* /'eldəst/  
 encounter *n* /ɪn'kaʊntər/  
 enter *v* /'entər/  
 explode *v* /ɪk'splʊd/  
 faceless *adj* /'feɪsləs/  
 find fault *v* /,faɪnd 'fɔːlt/  
 fraud *n* /frɒd/  
 get through to *v* /,get 'θru tu/  
 grin *v* /grɪn/  
 gym *n* /dʒɪm/  
 hand over *v* /,hænd ʊʊvər/  
 head teacher *n* /,hed 'tɪtʃər/  
 heroin *n* /'heroʊən/  
 hit rock bottom /hɪt ,rɒk bʌtəm/  
 homeless *adj* /'həʊmləs/  
 imprisonment *n* /ɪm'prɪznmənt/  
 in touch /ɪn 'tʌtʃ/  
 jail *v* /dʒeɪl/  
 knock over *v* /nɒk ʊʊvər/  
 letter box *n* /letər bʌks/  
 light *v* /laɪt/  
 limit *n* /'lɪmət/  
 locate *v* /loʊkeɪt/  
 make a scene *v* /,meɪk ə 'sɪn/  
 mind your own business /,maɪnd  
 ʊər ʊʊn 'bɪznəs/  
 ordinary *adj* /'ɔːdnəri/  
 outburst *n* /'aʊtbɜːst/  
 overdrawn *adj* /,ʊʊvər 'drɒn/  
 passer-by *n* /pæsərbaɪ/  
 penniless *adj* /'penɪləs/  
 phone in *v* /,foʊn 'ɪn/  
 prison *n* /'prɪzn/  
 protect *v* /prə'tekt/  
 punishment *n* /'pʌnɪʃmənt/  
 purpose *n* /'pɜːpəs/  
 pursue *v* /pə'su/  
 receipt *n* /ri'siːt/  
 register *v* /'redʒɪstər/  
 rehabilitate *v* /rɪə'bɪləteɪt/  
 release *v* /ri'lis/

relieved *adj* /rɪ'lɪvd/  
 restorative justice *n* /rɪ'stɔːrətɪv  
 dʒʌstəs/  
 rude *adj* /ruːd/  
 scruffy *adj* /'skrʌfi/  
 shop-lift *v* /'ʃɒplɪft/  
 social worker *n* /soʊʃl wɜːkər/  
 stitch *n* /stɪtʃ/  
 stop dead *v* /stɒp dɛd/  
 storm off *v* /stɔːm ɒf/  
 stuff *v* /stʌf/  
 stunned *adj* /stʌnd/  
 suspect *v* /sə'spekt/  
 temperature *n* /'temprətʃər/  
 theft *n* /θɛft/  
 timid *adj* /tɪməd/  
 tremble *v* /'treɪbl/  
 urban *adj* /'ɜːbən/  
 VAT *n* /,viː ɛɪ 'tiː/  
 victim *n* /'vɪktəm/  
 violence *n* /'vaɪələns/



## UNIT 10

addict *n* /'ædɪkt/  
 appear *v* /ə'pɪr/  
 architecture *n* /'ɑːrkə,tɛktʃər/  
 basically *adv* /'beɪsɪkli/  
 bronze *adj* /brɒnz/  
 calculation *n* /kælkjə'leɪʃn/  
 capacity *n* /kə'pæsəti/  
 chat *v* /tʃæt/  
 code *n* /kood/  
 commerce *n* /'kɒmərs/  
 complex *adj* /'kɒm'pleks/  
 congestion *n* /kən'dʒestʃən/  
 daily *adv* /'deɪli/  
 device *n* /drɪ'vaɪs/  
 diagnose *v* /daɪəg'noʊs/  
 digital *adj* /dɪdʒətl/  
 discourage *v* /dɪs'kɜːrɪdʒ/  
 distinctive *adj* /dɪs'tɪŋktɪv/  
 efficient *adj* /ɪ'fɪʃnt/  
 error *n* /'erər/  
 ethnic group *n* /eθnɪk grʊp/  
 feature *n* /'fi:tʃər/  
 figure out *v* /'fɪgʃər aʊt/  
 forum *n* /'fɔːrəm/  
 fountain *n* /'faʊntn/  
 generate *v* /'dʒenəreɪt/  
 gossip *v* /gɒsəp/  
 group chat *n* /grʊp tʃæt/  
 handcuffs *pl n* /'hændkʌfs/  
 headlight *n* /'hedlaɪt/  
 headphones *pl n* /'hedfoʊnz/  
 headquarters *pl n* /hedkwɔːtərz/  
 headway *n* /'hedweɪ/  
 influence *n* /'ɪnfluəns/  
 innovative *adj* /ɪ'nəveɪtɪv/  
 major *adj* /'meɪdʒə(r)/  
 metropolis *n* /mə'trɔːpəlɪs/  
 moderate *v* /'mɔːdəreɪt/  
 nickname *n* /'nɪkneɪm/  
 operate *v* /'ɒpəreɪt/  
 pacesetter *n* /'peɪsɪsetər/  
 perfectly *adv* /'pɜːfɪktli/  
 post *v* /poʊst/  
 poster *n* /'poʊstər/  
 print *v* /prɪnt/  
 programmable *adj* /'prɒɡræməbl/  
 remote *n* /rɪ'moot/  
 research *n* /'rɪsɜːtʃ/  
 resource *n* /'rɪsɜːs/  
 sharp *adj* /ʃɜːp/  
 silicon *n* /'sɪlɪkən/  
 skateboarding *n* /skeɪtbɔːrdɪŋ/  
 skyline *n* /'skaɪlɪn/  
 slide *n* /slaɪd/  
 stage *n* /steɪdʒ/  
 stick *v* /stɪk/  
 sticky *adj* /'stɪki/  
 streaming *adj* /'striːmɪŋ/  
 surface *n* /'sɜːfəs/  
 surgeon *n* /'sɜːdʒən/  
 traffic jam *n* /'træfɪk ,dʒæm/  
 transistor *n* /træn'zɪstər/  
 treat *v* /triːt/  
 tweet *v* /twɪt/

wastewater *n* /'weɪstwɔːtər/  
 wool *n* /wʊl/





## UNIT 11

acquaintance *n* /ə'kweɪntns/  
 afford *v* /ə'fɔːd/  
 agitated *adj* /'ædʒə'teɪtəd/  
 anniversary *n* /æ'nɪ'vɜːsəri/  
 apparently *adv* /ə'pærəntli/  
 available *adj* /ə'veɪləbl/  
 battery *n* /'bætəri/  
 bird-brained *adj* /'bɜːd-breɪnd/  
 break out of *v* /breɪk 'aʊt əv/  
 break up *v* /breɪk 'ʌp/  
 bruise *n* /bruːz/  
 candlestick *n* /'kændlstɪk/  
 chimpanzee *n* /tʃɪmpə'niːz/  
 clue *n* /kluː/  
 come up with *v* /kʌm 'ʌp wɪð/  
 cricket *n* /'krɪkət/  
 crow *n* /kroʊ/  
 culprit *n* /'kʌlpɪt/  
 dehydrate *v* /dɪhaɪ'dreɪt/  
 dot *n* /dɒt/  
 dump *v* /dʌmp/  
 eat out *v* /ɪt 'aʊt/  
 eat up *v* /ɪt 'ʌp/  
 elementary *adj* /ɛlə'mentəri/  
 eyesight *n* /'aɪsaɪt/  
 fall out *v* /fɔːl 'aʊt/  
 feather *n* /'feðə/  
 gamble *v* /'gæmbəl/  
 have around *v* /həv ə'raʊnd/  
 hopefully *adv* /'hoʊpflɪ/  
 identical *adj* /aɪ'dentɪkl/  
 impatiently *adv* /ɪm'peɪʃntli/  
 intruder *n* /ɪn'trudə/  
 investigation *n* /ɪn'vestə'geɪʃn/  
 irritably *adv* /ɪ'reɪəblɪ/  
 jelly *n* /'dʒeli/  
 lecture *n* /'lektʃər/  
 liar *n* /'laɪə(r)/  
 lightning *n* /'laɪtnɪŋ/  
 lightning conductor *n* /'laɪtnɪŋ  
 kən'dʌktər/  
 long jump *n* /'lɒŋ dʒʌmp/  
 look like *v* /'lʊk ,laɪk/  
 lottery *n* /'lɒtəri/  
 lump *n* /lʌmp/  
 make sth up *v* /meɪk ... ʌp/  
 make up (w sb) *v* /meɪk ʌp .../  
 mimic *v* /'mɪmɪk/  
 motive *n* /'moʊtɪv/  
 naturally *adv* /'nætʃrəli/  
 No kidding! /, nou 'kɪdɪŋ/  
 obviously *adv* /'ɒbvɪəsli/  
 on tiptoe /ən tɪptʊ/  
 optical illusion *n* /ɒptɪkl ɪ'luzn/  
 oversleep *v* /oʊvər'sliːp/  
 parrot *n* /'pærət/  
 personally *adv* /pə'sɒnəli/  
 presumably *adv* /prɪ'zʉməbli/  
 promote *v* /prə'moʊt/  
 radar *n* /'reɪdər/  
 really *adv* /'rɪli/  
 reflect *v* /rɪ'flekt/  
 refuse *v* /rɪ'fjuːz/  
 responsible *adj* /rɪ'spənsəbl/  
 save up *v* /seɪv 'ʌp/  
 scandal *n* /'skændl/  
 shrink *v* /ʃrɪŋk/  
 skyscraper *n* /'skaɪskreɪpər/  
 snowflake *n* /'snəʊfleɪk/  
 sole *n* /soʊl/  
 solve *v* /sɒlv/  
 sort out *v* /sɔːt 'aʊt/  
 spare *v* /spɛr/  
 spike *n* /spaɪk/  
 strike *v* /straɪk/  
 suspicious *adj* /sə'spɪʃəs/  
 take up *v* /teɪk 'ʌp/  
 threshold *n* /θreʃhoʊld/  
 to be honest /tə bi ənəst/  
 translation *n* /trænz'leɪʃn/  
 trick *n* /trɪk/  
 tutor *n* /tʊtər/  
 undoubtedly *adv* /ʌn'daʊtədlɪ/  
 unplug *v* /ʌn'plʌg/  
 work out *v* /wɜːk 'aʊt/  
 work sth out *v* /wɜːk ... 'aʊt/  
 wobbly *adj* /'wɒbli/  
 zillions *pl n* /'zɪljənz/



## UNIT 12

absurd *adj* /əb'sɜːd/  
 accuse *v* /ə'kyuz/  
 adapt *v* /ə'dæpt/  
 adolescent *adj* /ædə'sesnt/  
 agnostic *n* /æg'nastɪk/  
 alienate *v* /'eɪljəneɪt/  
 angle *n* /'æŋɡl/  
 auction *n* /'ɔːkʃn/  
 bid *n* /bɪd/  
 bulk *n* /bʌlk/  
 charge *v* /tʃɑːdʒ/  
 clinic *n* /'klɪnɪk/  
 concept *n* /'kɒnsɛpt/  
 conditions *pl n* /kən'dɪʃnz/  
 contradict *v* /kəntrə'dɪkt/  
 contrary to *adj* /kəntrəri tu/  
 convention *n* /kən'venʃn/  
 descended from *v* /dɪ'sendɪd frəm/  
 disorder *n* /dɪs'ɔːdə/  
 elect *v* /ɪ'lekt/  
 election *n* /ɪ'lekʃn/  
 encourage *v* /ɪn'kʊrɪdʒ/  
 equality *n* /ɪ'kwɒləti/  
 evolve *v* /ɪ'vɒlv/  
 ex- /eks/  
 existence *n* /ɪg'zɪstəns/  
 expert *n* /'ekspɜːt/  
 gossip *v* /'ɡɒsɪp/  
 healer *n* /'hɪlə/  
 heresy *n* /'herəsi/  
 heretical *adj* /herətɪkl/  
 highs and lows *pl n* /haɪz ənd  
 loʊz/  
 hip *n* /hɪp/  
 hurl *v* /hɜːl/  
 illegal *adj* /ɪ'liːɡl/  
 in the public eye /ɪn ðə ,pʌblɪk 'aɪ/  
 incapable *adj* /ɪn'keɪpəbl/  
 indifferent *adj* /ɪn'dɪfrənt/  
 individually *adv* /ɪndə'vɪdʒuəli/  
 influential *adj* /ɪnflu'ɛnʃl/  
 insoluble *adj* /ɪn'sɒljəbl/  
 irresponsible *adj* /rɪ'spənsəbl/  
 ketchup *n* /'ketʃəp/  
 lawmaker *n* /'lɔːmeɪkər/  
 mediocre *adj* /mɪdi'əʊkər/  
 meditate *v* /'medəteɪt/  
 mesmerize *v* /'mɛzməraɪz/  
 method *n* /'meθəd/  
 migraine *n* /maɪgreɪn/  
 motivation *n* /moʊtə'veɪʃn/  
 natural selection *n* /nætʃərəl  
 sə'lekʃn/  
 notion *n* /noʊʃn/  
 observe *v* /əb'zɜːv/  
 opponent *n* /ə'pɒnənt/  
 organization *n* /,ɔːrgənə'zeɪʃn/  
 originate *v* /ə'ɪdʒəneɪt/  
 password *n* /'pæsवर्ड/  
 persuade *v* /pə'sweɪd/  
 planet *n* /'plænət/  
 presenter *n* /prezəntər/  
 process *n* /'prases/  
 prominent *adj* /'prəːmɪnənt/  
 promotion *n* /prə'moʊʃn/  
 protest *v* /'prəʊtest/  
 put forward *v* /pʊt fɔːwɜːd/  
 rain down *v* /reɪn 'daʊn/  
 rational *adj* /'ræʃənəl/  
 recommend *v* /rekə'mend/  
 recording studio *n* /rɪ'kɔːdɪŋ  
 stʉdiəʊ/  
 remind *v* /rɪ'maɪnd/  
 reputation *n* /repyə'teɪʃn/  
 reverse *v* /rɪ'vɜːs/  
 rhythm *n* /'rɪðəm/  
 right *n* /raɪt/  
 right-wing *adj* /raɪt'wɪŋ/  
 rights *n* /raɪts/  
 riot *n* /'raɪət/  
 rotate *v* /roʊteɪt/  
 sell-out *n* /sel-aʊt/  
 sensational *adj* /sen'seɪʃnəl/  
 shake *v* /ʃeɪk/  
 significance *n* /sɪg'nɪfəkəns/  
 simply *adv* /sɪmpli/  
 species *n* /'spɪʃɪz/  
 spill *v* /spɪl/  
 standstill *n* /stændstɪl/  
 struggle *n* /'strʌɡl/  
 suffrage *n* /sʌfrɪdʒ/  
 telescope *n* /telə'skəʊp/  
 theory *n* /'θɪri/  
 threat *n* /θret/  
 unaware *adj* /ʌnə'weɪ/  
 undermine *v* /ʌndə'maɪn/  
 unverifiable *adj* /ʌn'verɪfaɪəbl/



# Verb Patterns

Verbs + -ing	
adore can't stand don't mind enjoy finish imagine loathe	doing swimming cooking

## Note

We often use the verb *go* + -ing for sports and activities.

*I go swimming every day.*

*I go shopping on weekends.*

Verbs + preposition + -ing	
give up look forward to succeed in think of	doing

Verbs + to + infinitive	
afford agree choose dare decide expect forget help hope learn manage mean need offer plan promise refuse seem want would hate would like would love would prefer	to do to come to cook

## Notes

- 1 *Help* and *dare* can be used without *to*.  
*We helped clean up the kitchen.*  
*They didn't dare disagree with him.*
- 2 *Have to* for obligation.  
*I have to wear a uniform.*
- 3 *Used to* for past habits.  
*I used to exercise, but I don't anymore.*

Verbs + sb + to + infinitive		
advise allow ask beg encourage expect force help invite need order persuade remind tell want warn would like	me him them someone	to do to go to come

## Note

*Help* can be used without *to*.

*I helped him do the dishes.*

Verbs + sb + infinitive (no to)		
help let make	her us	do

## Notes

- 1 *To* is used with *make* in the passive.  
*We were made to work hard.*
- 2 *Let* cannot be used in the passive. *Allowed* *to* is used instead.  
*She was allowed to leave.*

Verbs + -ing or to + infinitive (with little or no change in meaning)	
begin continue hate like love prefer start	doing to do

Verbs + -ing or to + infinitive (with a change in meaning)	
remember stop try	doing to do

## Notes

- 1 *I remember mailing the letter.*  
(= I have a memory now of a past action: mailing the letter.)  
*I remembered to mail the letter.*  
(= I reminded myself to mail the letter. I didn't forget.)
- 2 *I stopped drinking coffee.*  
(= I gave up the habit.)  
*I stopped to drink a coffee.*  
(= I stopped doing something else in order to have a cup of coffee.)
- 3 *I tried to sleep.*  
(= I wanted to sleep, but it was difficult.)  
*I tried counting sheep and drinking a glass of warm milk.*  
(= These were possible ways of getting to sleep.)



# Irregular Verbs

irLanguage.com

# Phonetic Symbols

Base form	Past form	Past participle	Base form	Past form	Past participle
be	was/were	been	leave	left	left
beat	beat	beaten	lend	lent	lent
become	became	become	let	let	let
begin	began	begun	lie	lay	lain
bend	bent	bent	light	lighted/lit	lighted/lit
bite	bit	bitten	lose	lost	lost
blow	blew	blown	make	made	made
break	broke	broken	mean	meant	meant
bring	brought	brought	meet	met	met
build	built	built	must	had to	had to
buy	bought	bought	pay	paid	paid
can	could	been able	put	put	put
catch	caught	caught	read /rid/	read /red/	read /red/
choose	chose	chosen	ride	rode	ridden
come	came	come	ring	rang	rung
cost	cost	cost	rise	rose	risen
cut	cut	cut	run	ran	run
dig	dug	dug	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
dream	dreamed	dreamed	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	set	set	set
drive	drove	driven	shake	shook	shaken
eat	ate	eaten	shine	shone	shone
fall	fell	fallen	shoot	shot	shot
feed	fed	fed	show	showed	shown
feel	felt	felt	shut	shut	shut
fight	fought	fought	sing	sang	sung
find	found	found	sink	sank	sunk
fit	fit	fit	sit	sat	sat
fly	flew	flown	sleep	slept	slept
forget	forgot	forgotten	slide	slid	slid
forgive	forgave	forgiven	speak	spoke	spoken
freeze	froze	frozen	spend	spent	spent
get	got	got	spoil	spoiled	spoiled
give	gave	given	spread	spread	spread
go	went	been/gone	stand	stood	stood
grow	grew	grown	steal	stole	stolen
hang	hanged/hung	hanged/hung	stick	stuck	stuck
have	had	had	swim	swam	swum
hear	heard	heard	take	took	taken
hide	hid	hidden	teach	taught	taught
hit	hit	hit	tear	tore	torn
hold	held	held	tell	told	told
hurt	hurt	hurt	think	thought	thought
keep	kept	kept	throw	threw	thrown
kneel	knelt	knelt	understand	understood	understood
know	knew	known	wake	woke	woken
lay	laid	laid	wear	wore	worn
lead	led	led	win	won	won
learn	learned	learned	write	wrote	written

Consonants			
1	/p/	as in	<b>pen</b> /pɛn/
2	/b/	as in	<b>big</b> /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	<b>tea</b> /ti/
4	/d/	as in	<b>do</b> /du/
5	/k/	as in	<b>cat</b> /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	<b>go</b> /goʊ/
7	/f/	as in	<b>five</b> /faɪv/
8	/v/	as in	<b>very</b> /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	<b>son</b> /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	<b>zoo</b> /zu/
11	/l/	as in	<b>live</b> /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	<b>my</b> /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	<b>near</b> /nɪr/
14	/h/	as in	<b>happy</b> /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	<b>red</b> /red/
16	/y/	as in	<b>yes</b> /yes/
17	/w/	as in	<b>want</b> /wʌnt/
18	/θ/	as in	<b>thanks</b> /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	<b>the</b> /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	<b>she</b> /ʃi/
21	/ʒ/	as in	<b>television</b> /'tɛləvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	<b>child</b> /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	<b>Japan</b> /dʒə'pæn/
24	/ŋ/	as in	<b>English</b> /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

Vowels			
25	/i/	as in	<b>see</b> /si/
26	/ɪ/	as in	<b>his</b> /hɪz/
27	/e/	as in	<b>ten</b> /tɛn/
28	/æ/	as in	<b>stamp</b> /stæmp/
29	/ɑ/	as in	<b>father</b> /'faðər/
30	/ɔ/	as in	<b>saw</b> /sɔ/
31	/ɒ/	as in	<b>hot</b> /hɒt/
32	/ʊ/	as in	<b>book</b> /bʊk/
33	/u/	as in	<b>you</b> /yu/
34	/ʌ/	as in	<b>sun</b> /sʌn/
35	/ə/	as in	<b>about</b> /ə'baʊt/
36	/ɛɪ/	as in	<b>name</b> /neɪm/
37	/aɪ/	as in	<b>my</b> /maɪ/
38	/ɔɪ/	as in	<b>boy</b> /bɔɪ/
39	/aʊ/	as in	<b>how</b> /haʊ/
40	/oʊ/	as in	<b>go</b> /goʊ/
41	/ər/	as in	<b>bird</b> /bɜrd/
42	/ɪr/	as in	<b>near</b> /nɪr/
43	/ɛr/	as in	<b>hair</b> /hɛr/
44	/ɑr/	as in	<b>car</b> /kɑr/
45	/ɔr/	as in	<b>more</b> /mɔr/
46	/ʊr/	as in	<b>tour</b> /tʊr/